BIOT 70: INTRODUCTION TO BIOTECHNOLOGY - LECTURES



Emalee MacKenzie
Irvine Valley College

LibreTexts™

Biot 70: Introduction to Biotechnology - Lectures

Emalee MacKenzie

Irvine Valley College

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 10/23/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Introduction to Biotechnology

2: Biology as a Science

2.1: Biology as a Science

2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science

2.3: The Scientific Method

2.4: Two Types of Science

3: Chemistry of Life

3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds

3.2: Chemical Bonds

3.3: Carbon

3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules

3.5: Water

3.6: Acids and Bases

3.7: Redox Reactions

3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes

3.9: Macromolecules

3.9.1: Carbohydrates

3.9.2: Lipids

3.9.3: Proteins

3.9.3.1: Enzymes

3.9.4: Nucleic Acids

3.9.4.1: ATP

4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

4.1: Shared Features

4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells

4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells

4.4: Prokaryotic Cells

4.5: Simalarities and Differences

5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome

5.1: Genomes

5.2: Genes

5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization

5.2.2: Gene Expression

5.3: Epigenome

6: DNA Replication

6.1: DNA Replication

6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell

7: DNA to Protein

7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription

7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription

7.3: Eukaryotic Translation

7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation

7.5: Transcription Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

7.6: Translation Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

8: Cell Reproduction

8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction

8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction

8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis

8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis

8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability

9: Metabolism

9.1: Aerobic Respiration

9.1.1: Glycolysis

9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle

9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain

9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation

9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences

9.2: Cellular Energy

9.3: Anaerobic Respiration

9.4: Fermentation

9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation

9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation

9.5: Lipid Catabolism

9.6: Protein Catabolism

9.7: Respiration Summary

10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology

10.1: Transgenic Animals

10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals

11: Systems Biotechnology

11.1: Computer Generated Models

11.2: Cell Culture

11.3: Cloning

11.4: Bioprinting
11.5: BioBricks
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action

12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
12.2: Transformation
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action

13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
13.1.4: Cell Therapies

13.2: Biopharmacy
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability

13.3: Pharmacogenomics
13.4: Nanomedicine
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action

14: Environmental Biotechnology
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
14.2: Biofuels
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action

15: Agricultural Biotechnology
15.1: Fermentation
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
15.4: Gene Guns

15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
15.6: Antisense Technology
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
15.8: Edible Vaccines
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action

16: Bioethics

16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
16.5: Careers in Bioethics
16.6: Bioethics in Action

17: About this Book

17.1: About the Author
17.2: How to Use this Book
17.3: References and Disclosures

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Detailed Licensing (1)

This page titled Introduction to Biotechnology - Lecture is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

1: Introduction to Biotechnology

Biotechnology (the use of living organisms, cells, or biological systems to develop useful products and technologies) is a broad and rapidly growing field that combines biology with technology to address real-world challenges. Biotechnology is used to develop medicines, improve food production, create more sustainable manufacturing processes, and protect the environment. By connecting scientific discovery to practical applications, biotechnology plays a vital role in healthcare, agriculture, industry, and environmental science.

Although biotechnology is often associated with advanced laboratories and high-tech equipment, humans have practiced simple forms of biotechnology for thousands of years. The use of yeast to make bread rise, bacteria to ferment milk into yogurt, and microorganisms to produce wine and beer are all early examples. Modern biotechnology builds on these practices by using an understanding of DNA (the molecule that stores genetic information) to identify useful genes and develop new products and technologies. These advances have created a wide variety of careers throughout the biotechnology industry. Although daily responsibilities vary, they all apply bacterial biology to develop products and solutions that benefit society.

Systems Biotechnology

Systems biotechnology is a branch of biotechnology that studies how all parts of a biological system work together. Instead of focusing on a single gene, protein, or pathway, systems biotechnology examines the interactions among genes, proteins, cells, and environmental factors to understand how living organisms function as complete systems. Scientists use advanced technologies, large datasets, and computer modeling to analyze these complex biological interactions. Systems biotechnology is used to improve the development of medicines, increase the efficiency of industrial microorganisms, enhance crop production, and support personalized medicine. This field combines biology, computer science, mathematics, and engineering to solve complex biological problems and develop innovative biotechnology applications. As technology continues to advance, systems biotechnology is playing an increasingly important role in understanding life processes and improving human health, agriculture, and environmental sustainability.

Bacterial Biotechnology

Bacterial biotechnology uses bacteria as tools to produce useful products, study biology, and solve practical problems. Bacteria are engineered to make enzymes, pharmaceuticals (including insulin and vaccines), biofuels, and specialty chemicals through recombinant DNA and metabolic pathway optimization. They power industrial fermentation, enable bioremediation of pollutants, and serve as probiotics or delivery vehicles for therapeutics. Molecular tools developed from bacteria—restriction enzymes, CRISPR systems, and plasmid vectors—are foundational to modern genetic engineering. Key considerations include strain selection, culture and scale-up, containment and biosafety, and regulatory and ethical oversight. Because bacteria are fast-growing and genetically tractable, they remain central to research, industry, and emerging synthetic biology applications.

Medical Biotechnology

Medical biotechnology focuses on improving human health through the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disease. Biotechnology is essential in vaccine development, where biological systems are used to safely stimulate immune responses without causing disease. Other medical applications include gene therapies designed to treat inherited disorders, tissue engineering for regenerative medicine, and biologic drugs made from living cells rather than chemical synthesis. Many cancer treatments, autoimmune therapies, and hormone-based medications are products of medical biotechnology. Diagnostic biotechnology is focused on detecting diseases, infections, and genetic conditions accurately and early. Many modern diagnostic tests rely on biomarkers (measurable biological molecules that indicate a normal or abnormal process) found in blood, saliva, or other body fluids. Biopharmacy, or biopharmaceutical biotechnology, focuses on drugs produced using living cells. These medications, often called biologics, include vaccines, monoclonal antibodies, and hormone therapies. Unlike traditional drugs made through chemical synthesis, biologics are grown in controlled biological systems.Biopharmaceutical manufacturing relies heavily on biotechnology technicians to maintain sterile environments, monitor cell cultures, and ensure product quality. This area represents one of the fastest-growing sectors in biotechnology.Examples include pregnancy tests, rapid COVID-19 tests, and laboratory-based tests that identify bacterial or viral infections. Diagnostic biotechnology is also essential in genetic screening, where DNA-based tests help identify inherited conditions or guide personalized treatment decisions.

Food Biotechnology

Food biotechnology uses living organisms, biological systems, or their products to produce, process, and improve food. It includes traditional methods, such as fermentation for making bread, yogurt, cheese, and fermented beverages, as well as modern techniques like genetic engineering, enzyme technology, and microbial biotechnology. These approaches improve food quality, safety, nutrition, and sustainability.

Food biotechnology is used to increase crop yields, improve resistance to pests and diseases, enhance nutritional value, extend shelf life, and improve food processing. It also helps detect contaminants and pathogens, making the food supply safer. As the global population grows, food biotechnology plays an essential role in providing a safe, nutritious, and sustainable food supply while reducing environmental impacts.

Environmental Biotechnology

Environmental biotechnology uses living organisms, biological systems, and biological processes to protect the environment and promote sustainable resource management. It combines microbiology, molecular biology, ecology, chemistry, and engineering to address challenges such as wastewater treatment, waste management, pollution control, renewable energy production, greenhouse gas reduction, and environmental monitoring. Microorganisms—including bacteria, archaea, fungi, and algae—play a central role by breaking down pollutants, recycling nutrients, and maintaining healthy ecosystems.

Agricultural Biotechnology

Agricultural biotechnology uses living organisms, biological systems, and modern molecular techniques to improve crop and livestock production while promoting sustainable agriculture. It combines genetics, molecular biology, microbiology, plant science, and bioengineering to develop crops with higher yields, improved nutritional value, and greater resistance to pests, diseases, and environmental stresses such as drought and salinity. Agricultural biotechnology also includes the use of genetically modified organisms (GMOs), gene editing, marker-assisted breeding, and beneficial microorganisms to improve soil health, reduce the need for chemical pesticides and fertilizers, and enhance the efficiency and sustainability of food production.

Bioethics

Bioethics examines the moral, legal, and social issues from advances in biology and biotechnology, focusing on respect for persons, doing good, avoiding harm, and fairness. It guides consent, privacy, genetic therapies, biosafety, data use, and policymaking, requiring transparent oversight and public input. Ongoing dialogue and adaptive governance are needed to balance innovation with protection of people and the environment.

Attribution: ***Introduction to Biotechnology - Basics and Applications*** by BioTech Whisperer, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rWAioRA9qHc**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1: Introduction to Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

2: BIOLOGY AS A SCIENCE

Biotechnology (the application of biological knowledge and techniques to develop products and technologies that improve human life and the environment) takes the principles discovered through biological research and applies them in practical, often innovative, ways. Many of the biological topics discussed in everyday news are directly tied to biotechnology. For example, outbreaks of food borne illness caused by bacteria such as *Escherichia coli O103* or non-Typhoidal *Salmonella enteritidis* have driven the development of biotechnological tools for food safety. These tools include rapid DNA-based detection methods, genetically engineered crops with improved resistance to contamination, and improved processing techniques that reduce microbial growth. Each of these advances relies on biological knowledge of microorganisms, gene function, and cellular processes.

In medicine, the relationship between biology and biotechnology is especially interwoven. Biological research into how cells grow, divide, and communicate has led to biotechnological applications such as diagnostic tests, vaccines, and targeted therapies. Efforts to treat diseases such as AIDS, Alzheimer's disease, and cancer increasingly depend on biotechnology tools that analyze genes, manipulate cells, or produce therapeutic proteins. For instance, understanding the biology of the immune system has made it possible to design biologically based drugs that help the body recognize and destroy diseased cells while leaving healthy cells alone.

Environmental and global challenges also highlight this connection. Biological studies of ecosystems and climate interactions inform biotechnological approaches aimed at sustainability. Biotechnology is used to develop biofuels, engineer microorganisms that break down pollutants, and modify crops to require fewer resources such as water or chemical fertilizers. These applications require an understanding of core biological concepts such as metabolism, adaptation, and interactions between organisms and their environment.

Overall, biology supplies the knowledge base, while biotechnology applies that knowledge to real-world problems. A foundation in biology not only explains how life works but can open doors to careers that apply biological principles to healthcare, agriculture, environmental protection, and industry. In this way, biology and biotechnology work together to address many of the most pressing scientific and societal challenges of the modern world.

2.1: Biology as a Science

2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science

2.3: The Scientific Method

2.4: Two Types of Science

This page titled 2: Biology as a Science is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

2.1: Biology as a Science

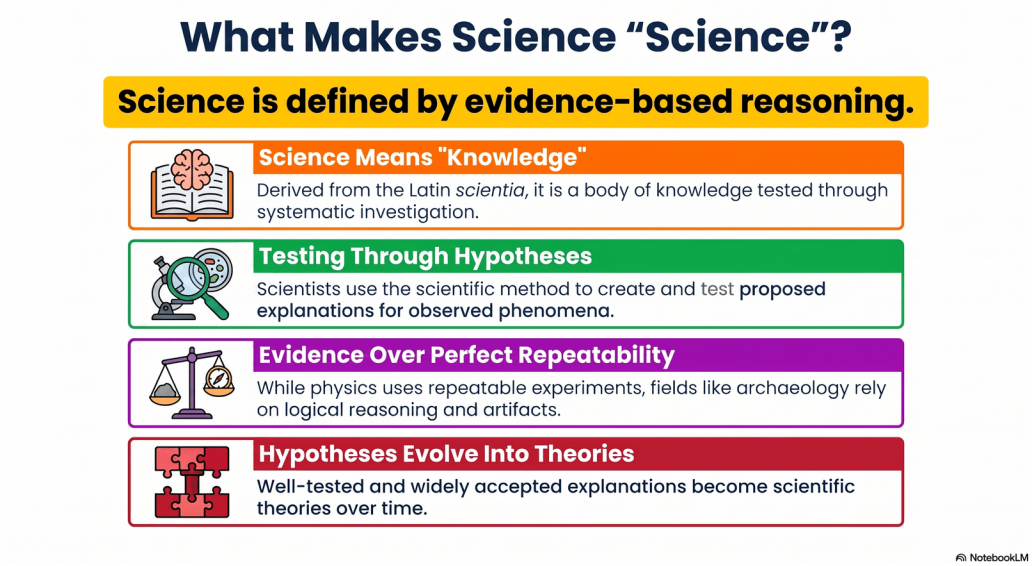
Science (from the Latin *scientia*, meaning “knowledge”) can be defined as a body of knowledge that seeks to describe general truths or explain how natural laws operate, particularly when that knowledge is acquired and tested through systematic investigation. Central to this definition is the use of the **scientific method** (a structured approach to research that relies on observation, experimentation, and analysis to answer questions about the natural world).

The scientific method plays a critical role in many scientific fields, including biology. Although the specific steps of the scientific method will be examined in more detail later, one of the most important features of the scientific method is the testing of **hypotheses** (proposed, testable explanations for observed events or phenomena). Hypotheses are evaluated through careful observation and, when possible, repeatable experiments. Repetition allows scientists to confirm results and reduce the influence of chance or bias, strengthening confidence in their conclusions.

However, while the scientific method is a defining feature of science, it is not sufficient on its own to determine what qualifies as a scientific discipline. In fields such as physics and chemistry, controlled and repeatable experiments are often straightforward to design. In contrast, disciplines such as archaeology, psychology, and geology face limitations that make controlled repetition difficult or even impossible. For example, scientists cannot recreate ancient civilizations or rerun geological events that occurred millions of years ago. Despite these challenges, such fields are still considered sciences because they rely on evidence-based reasoning and hypothesis testing. In archaeology, for instance, researchers may hypothesize that an ancient culture existed based on the discovery of artifacts such as pottery. Additional hypotheses about that culture’s technology, social structure, or trade practices can then be evaluated as new evidence is uncovered.

Over time, hypotheses that are consistently supported by evidence develop into a **theory** (a well-tested and widely accepted explanation for a set of observations or natural phenomena).

Overall, science is best defined not solely by the ability to perform repeatable experiments, but by a shared goal: to understand the nature of the universe through observation, evidence, and logical reasoning. Biology fits squarely within this framework, as it seeks to explain the patterns, processes, and principles that govern life on Earth.



*Attribution: "What Makes Science 'Science?'" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA***

Attribution: Content Inspired by: 1.1.2: The Science of Biology is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

This page titled 2.1: Biology as a Science is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

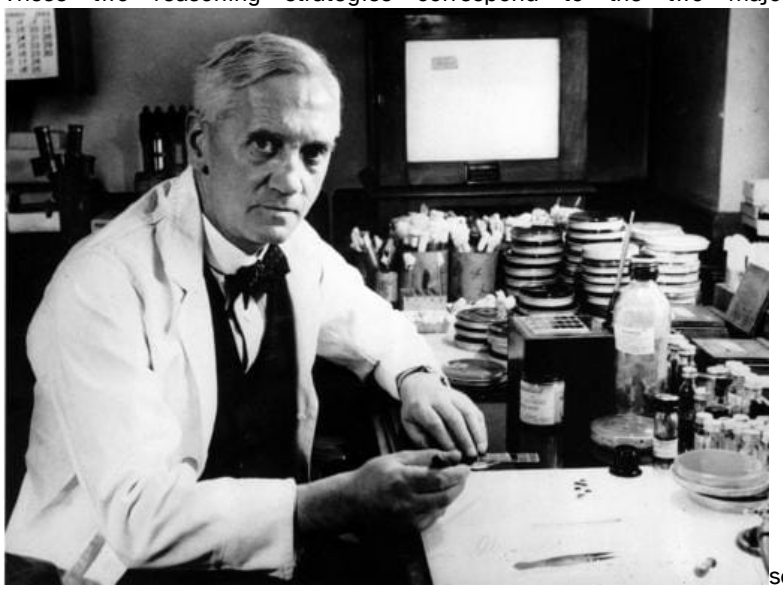
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science

All forms of science share a common underlying goal: the pursuit of knowledge. Curiosity about the natural world and a desire to understand how it functions drive scientific inquiry. To transform curiosity into reliable knowledge, scientists rely on structured ways of thinking and analyzing evidence. Two primary forms of logical reasoning are used across scientific disciplines: **inductive reasoning** (drawing general conclusions from specific observations) and **deductive reasoning** (using general principles to predict specific outcomes).

Inductive reasoning is most often associated with descriptive science and plays a central role in biology. In this approach, scientists begin by observing natural phenomena and carefully recording their findings. The data collected may be qualitative, such as descriptive notes or images, or quantitative, such as numerical measurements. By examining large amounts of data, scientists look for patterns and relationships that allow them to make broader inferences. These inferences, or inductions, are grounded in repeated observation rather than assumption. For example, in studies of brain function, researchers may observe patterns of brain activity while individuals engage in a specific task, such as viewing images of food. Certain brain regions consistently show increased activity during this task because active cells absorb greater amounts of **radioactive tracers** (molecules used in imaging studies to visualize metabolic activity). By comparing results across many individuals, scientists can infer which areas of the brain are involved in responding to that stimulus.

Deductive reasoning, by contrast, is the foundation of hypothesis-based science. This form of logic moves from the general to the specific. Scientists begin with an established principle or model and then generate predictions that can be tested. If the predictions are supported by evidence, confidence in the underlying principle increases. Research on climate change provides a clear example. If a general principle predicts that rising temperatures influence ecosystems, scientists can deduce that warming in a particular region should alter the distribution of plant and animal species. Observational and experimental data are then used to evaluate whether those predicted changes occur.

These two reasoning strategies correspond to the two major pathways of scientific investigation: descriptive



science and hypothesis-based science. Descriptive science emphasizes observation, exploration, and documentation, often using inductive reasoning to identify patterns in nature. Hypothesis-based science focuses on testing specific explanations using deductive reasoning. In practice, however, the distinction between these approaches is rarely absolute. Most scientific studies incorporate elements of both, with observations leading to questions and questions guiding further testing.

An example that demonstrates the relationship between descriptive science and hypothesis-based science is the discovery of antibiotics (a substance that kills or inhibits the growth of bacteria) by Alexander Fleming. Fleming noticed that bacterial colonies did not grow in areas surrounding a mold contaminant (an unintended microorganism that accidentally enters a laboratory sample) on a culture plate. This initial observation led him to hypothesize that the mold was producing an antibiotic. Subsequent hypothesis-based experiments confirmed this idea and ultimately led to the identification and development of the first antibiotic - penicillin. This example highlights how careful observation can lead to testable hypotheses and, through

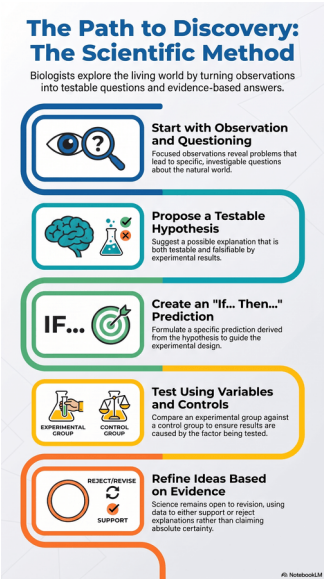
systematic experimentation, result in transformative advances in medicine and biotechnology.

Attribution:12.1A: Origins of Antimicrobial Drugs is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.
Attribution: Inspired by: 1.1.2: The Science of Biology is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

This page titled 2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

2.3: The Scientific Method

Biologists study the living world by asking questions and seeking evidence-based answers.



This systematic approach, known as the scientific method, is shared across many scientific disciplines. The scientific process typically begins with an observation, which often reveals a problem that needs explanation. That observation leads to a focused question that can be investigated. For example, a biologist might observe that plants growing near a river appear taller and greener than the same **species** (a group of similar organisms that share common characteristics and can interbreed to produce fertile offspring) growing farther away. This observation raises a scientific question, such as, “Why do plants closer to the river grow larger than those farther from the water source?” Framing the problem as a question allows the scientist to develop hypotheses and apply the scientific method to determine which factors influence plant growth.

Proposing a Hypothesis

Recall that a hypothesis is a suggested explanation that can be tested. When addressing a scientific question, it is often possible to propose more than one hypothesis. For example, consider the observation that plants growing closer to a river appear taller and greener than the same species growing farther away. One hypothesis might be that plants near the river grow larger because they have greater access to water. Another possible hypothesis is that plants near the river receive more nutrient-rich soil due to periodic flooding.

After selecting a hypothesis, a scientist can make a prediction. A prediction is closely related to a hypothesis but is usually phrased in an “if…then…” format. For instance, a prediction based on the first hypothesis might be, “If plants closer to the river grow larger because of increased water availability, then providing additional water to plants farther from the river should increase their growth.”

Testing a Hypothesis

For a hypothesis to be scientifically valid, it must be testable and falsifiable, meaning that experimental results must be capable of disproving it. Science does not claim to prove ideas with absolute certainty; instead, scientific explanations remain open to revision as new evidence emerges. This willingness to reject ideas that are not supported by evidence is a defining feature of science. Explanations that rely on supernatural causes, for example, are not considered scientific because they cannot be tested or falsified.

To test a hypothesis, a researcher designs one or more experiments intended to evaluate possible explanations. Each experiment includes variables (factors that can change during an experiment) and controls (conditions that remain unchanged and provide a basis for comparison). The control group is identical to the experimental group except that it does not receive the treatment or condition being tested. If differences are observed between the two groups, those differences can be attributed to the variable

being tested rather than to outside influences.

In the plant growth example, a researcher might test the first hypothesis by supplying additional water to plants growing farther from the river while keeping all other conditions the same. If these plants begin to grow taller and greener, the hypothesis gains support. If no change occurs, the hypothesis may be rejected. To test the second hypothesis, the researcher could analyze soil nutrient levels at varying distances from the river. If nutrient levels do not differ, that hypothesis may also be rejected. Importantly, rejecting one hypothesis does not automatically confirm another; it simply eliminates an explanation that is inconsistent with the data.

While the plant example is grounded in natural observation, some experiments allow for clearer control of variables. In hypothesis-based science, researchers often use deductive reasoning, in which specific predictions are derived from general principles. In contrast, inductive reasoning occurs when scientists draw general conclusions from repeated specific observations. Most scientific investigations rely on both forms of reasoning, using observation to generate questions and experiments to test predictions.

In recent years, hypothesis testing has expanded through the rapid growth of large biological databases. The use of computer algorithms and statistical tools to analyze these data, often referred to as **in silico research** (research conducted using computer simulations and data analysis rather than physical experiments), has become increasingly important. This trend is creating strong demand for professionals with expertise in both biology and computer science, highlighting an emerging and promising career pathway within biotechnology.

The scientific method may appear rigid, but in practice it is flexible. Although scientists often follow a general sequence, experiments frequently lead to unexpected results, revised approaches, or entirely new questions. Scientific inquiry rarely moves in a straight line; instead, scientists continually analyze data, draw inferences, and identify patterns as research progresses. The scientific method is best viewed as a guiding framework rather than a strict set of rules, and its logical approach can be applied to solving both scientific and everyday problems.

Attribution:"Scientific Method" diagram. AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under ***CC BY-NC-SA***

Attritribution: Inspired by: 1.1.2: The Science of Biology is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

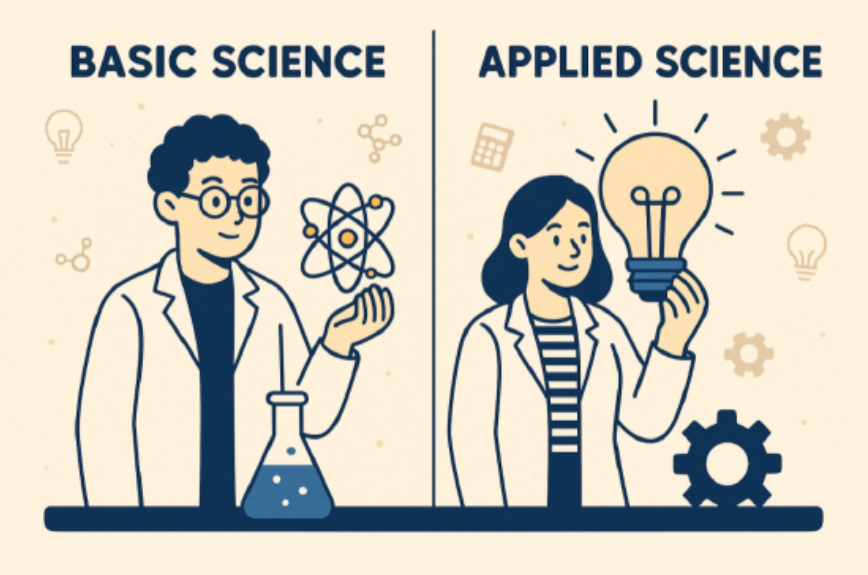
This page titled 2.3: The Scientific Method is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

2.4: Two Types of Science

For decades, scientists and policymakers have debated the relative value of different types of scientific research. Should science focus primarily on expanding knowledge, even if there is no immediate practical use, or should it concentrate on solving specific problems that directly improve human life? This discussion highlights the distinction between two closely related approaches: basic science and applied science.

Basic science (sometimes called pure science) is driven by curiosity and a desire to understand how the natural world works. Its primary goal is to generate new knowledge rather than to develop a product or service with immediate practical value. Researchers engaged in basic science may study fundamental biological processes without knowing how, or if, their findings will eventually be applied. Nevertheless, discoveries that arise from basic science often become the foundation for major technological advances.

In contrast, **applied science** (often referred to as technology) uses scientific knowledge to address specific, real-world problems. The goals of applied science are typically well defined, such as improving crop productivity, developing medical treatments, or restoring damaged ecosystems. In this type of research, scientists work toward practical outcomes that can be implemented in healthcare, industry, agriculture, or environmental management.



Some people view applied science as more “useful” than basic science and question the value of research conducted solely to gain knowledge. However, the history of science clearly shows that many of today’s most impactful technologies originated from basic research. In practice, applied science depends heavily on the discoveries generated by basic science. While it is true that many urgent problems require immediate solutions, those solutions are often only possible because of decades of earlier foundational research.

An example of this relationship is the development of mRNA vaccines. Long before the COVID-19 pandemic, basic science researchers were studying how cells produce proteins from messenger RNA and how the immune system recognizes foreign molecules. This foundational knowledge made it possible for applied scientists to rapidly design and produce mRNA-based vaccines when an urgent global health need arose. Without prior basic research on molecular biology and immunology, this applied technology would not have been feasible.

Another modern example is the rise of CRISPR-based gene editing technologies. Basic research on bacterial systems revealed how certain microorganisms defend themselves against viral infections by cutting foreign DNA with specific enzymes. This discovery, originally pursued to understand microbial biology, later enabled applied scientists to adapt the system for precise gene editing. Today, CRISPR technology is being explored for applications ranging from treating genetic disorders to improving agricultural crops.

Not all scientific discoveries result from carefully planned research. Some advances occur through **serendipity** (the occurrence of a fortunate discovery by chance). A clear example is the development of microwave cooking. Percy Spencer noticed that a candy bar in his pocket melted while he was working near radar equipment. Rather than ignoring this unexpected result, Spencer investigated its cause, which ultimately led to the invention of the microwave oven. This example illustrates how chance observations can lead to important innovations when they are paired with careful attention and scientific curiosity.

Attribution: AI-generated using ChatGPT Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

Attribution: Inspired by: 1.1.2: The Science of Biology is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

This page titled 2.4: Two Types of Science is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3: CHEMISTRY OF LIFE

Life is built from matter, and all matter is governed by the rules of chemistry. The **chemistry of life** (the study of how chemical substances and reactions make biological processes possible) explains how atoms combine to form molecules that support growth, energy use, reproduction, and homeostasis. Living organisms are composed primarily of a small set of elements, including carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur, which interact through chemical bonds to create the molecules necessary for life.

The structure and function of biological molecules depend on how atoms are bonded and how molecules interact with one another. Chemical reactions constantly build, break down, and rearrange these molecules, allowing cells to obtain energy, maintain organization, and respond to their environment. Understanding the chemistry of life provides a foundation for studying biology, biotechnology, and health-related sciences.

3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds

3.2: Chemical Bonds

3.3: Carbon

3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules

3.5: Water

3.6: Acids and Bases

3.7: Redox Reactions

3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes

3.9: Macromolecules

3.9.1: Carbohydrates

3.9.2: Lipids

3.9.3: Proteins

3.9.3.1: Enzymes

3.9.4: Nucleic Acids

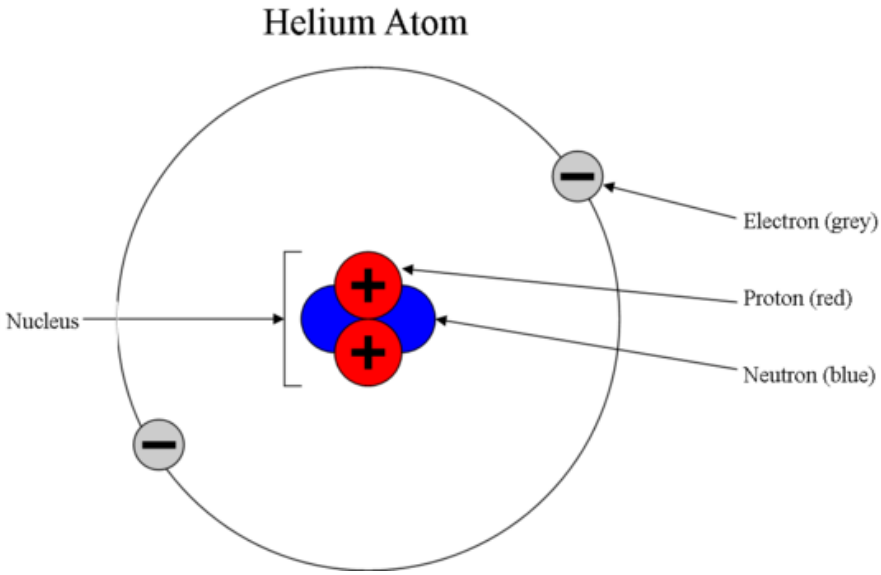
3.9.4.1: ATP

This page titled 3: Chemistry of Life is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds

label the Atoms and Elements

An **element** (a pure substance made of only one type of atom) is a basic form of matter that cannot be broken down into simpler substances by chemical means. Each element is defined by the number of **protons** (positively charged particles) in the nucleus of its atoms, known as the atomic number. All atoms of the same element have the same number of protons, which gives that element its unique chemical properties. Elements can exist as single atoms, such as helium, or they can bond with other elements to form compounds, such as hydrogen and oxygen combining to form water. There are a limited number of naturally occurring elements, and together they serve as the fundamental building blocks of all matter in the living and nonliving world. An element is defined by having only one type of atom, and helium fits this definition because all helium atoms contain the same number of protons (two). An **atom** refers to a single particle of that element. A single particle of helium is called a **helium atom**, while helium as a substance is referred to as an **element**.

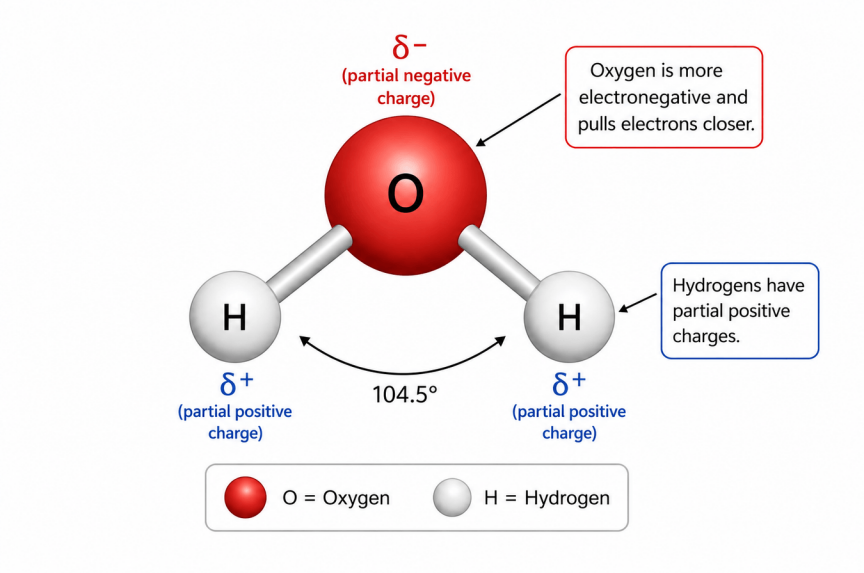


An atom is electrically neutral when it contains equal numbers of protons and electrons, since the positive and negative charges balance one another. If an atom gains or loses electrons, this balance is disrupted and the atom becomes an **ion** (an atom with a net electrical charge). Atoms that gain electrons carry a negative charge, while those that lose electrons carry a positive charge.

Electrons are held near the nucleus because the negatively charged electrons are attracted to the positively charged protons by the **electromagnetic force** (the force responsible for attraction between opposite electrical charges and repulsion between like charges). This same force causes protons within the nucleus to repel one another because they share the same positive charge. However, the nucleus remains stable because protons and neutrons are bound together by the **nuclear force** (a very strong, short-range force that holds particles together within the nucleus). This force is stronger than the electromagnetic repulsion between protons, allowing the nucleus to remain intact.

Compounds

A **compound** (a substance formed when two or more different elements are chemically combined in fixed proportions) has a consistent composition, meaning its elements are always present in the same ratio. In living organisms, the smallest unit of most compounds is a **molecule** (a group of atoms held together by chemical bonds). Water is a common example. Each water molecule contains one oxygen atom and two hydrogen atoms, a relationship expressed by the chemical formula H_2O. Although water molecules can be illustrated using different models, each representation describes the same structure: one oxygen atom bonded to two hydrogen atoms.



Attribution: https://chem.libretexts.org/Bookshel...omic_Particles
Attribution:Diagram of Water molecule AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.2: Chemical Bonds

All matter is made of atoms, but atoms rarely exist on their own. Instead, they are held together by **chemical bonds** (the attractive forces that link atoms into molecules and compounds). Chemical bonds form because atoms tend to be more stable when their outermost electrons are arranged in certain ways, often by gaining, losing, or sharing electrons. In biological systems, chemical bonds are essential because they determine the structure and behavior of molecules such as water, proteins, and DNA.

Covalent Bonds

A **covalent bond** (a bond formed when atoms share electrons) occurs when atoms have similar electronegativities and neither atom strongly pulls electrons away from the other. Covalent bonds are very common in living organisms because they create stable molecules with specific shapes.For example, a water molecule (H_2O) forms when an oxygen atom shares electrons with two hydrogen atoms. Covalent bonds can be single, double, or triple depending on how many pairs of electrons are shared, as seen in molecules such as oxygen (O_2) or nitrogen (N_2).

YouTube Video

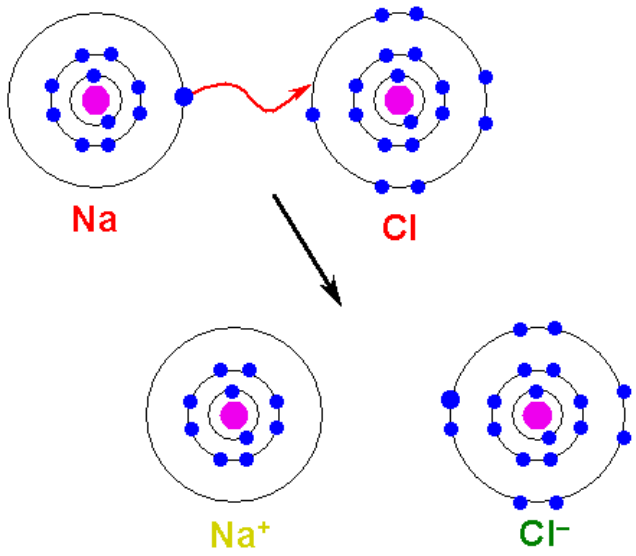
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Ionic Bonds

An **ionic bond** (a bond formed by the transfer of one or more electrons from one atom to another) occurs when one atom loses electrons and becomes positively charged, while another gains electrons and becomes negatively charged. The opposite charges attract each other, holding the atoms together. Ionic bonds are typically formed between metals and nonmetals.

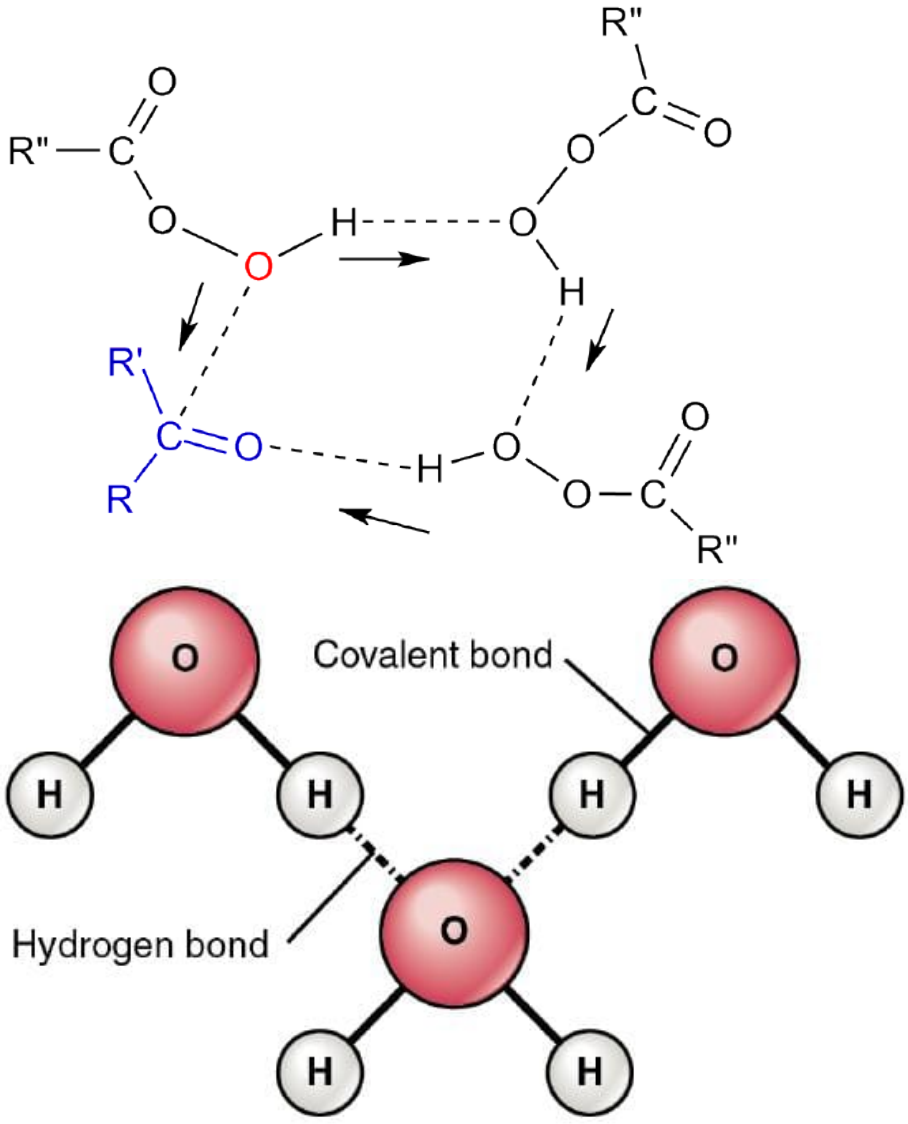
A common example is sodium chloride (NaCl), or table salt. Sodium loses an electron to chlorine, forming sodium ions (Na^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-). Although ionic bonds are strong, they often dissolve easily in water because water molecules can separate the charged ions.



Hydrogen Bonds

A **hydrogen bond** (a weak attraction between a partially positive hydrogen atom and a partially negative atom such as oxygen or nitrogen) is not a true bond within a molecule but an attraction between molecules or different parts of the same molecule. Hydrogen bonds are much weaker than ionic or covalent bonds, but they are extremely important in biology.

For instance, hydrogen bonds form between water molecules, giving water its unique properties such as cohesion and high heat capacity. They also help hold together the two strands of DNA and maintain the three-dimensional shape of proteins.

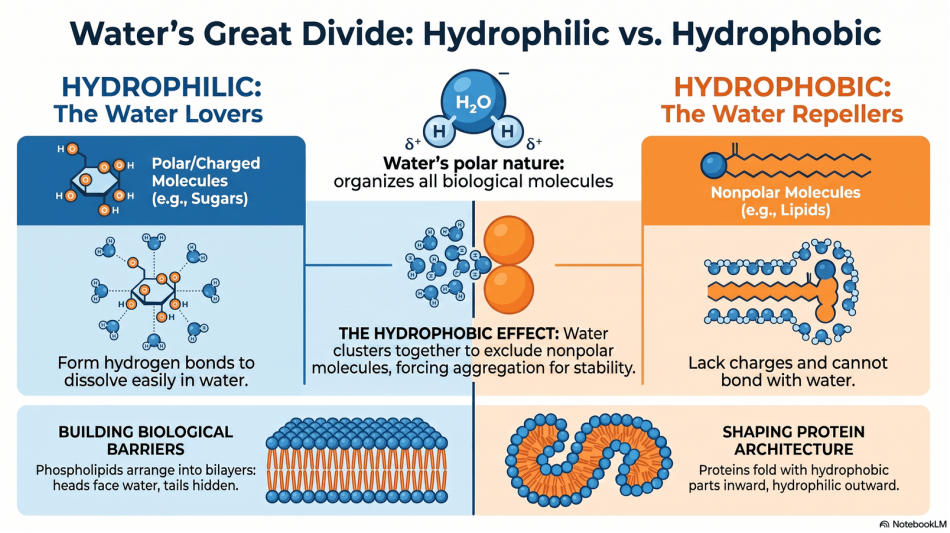


A **hydrophobic** molecule (a molecule that repels or does not interact favorably with water) tends to be nonpolar and composed mainly of carbon and hydrogen atoms, such as in lipids or hydrocarbons. In contrast, a **hydrophilic** molecule (a molecule that readily interacts with or dissolves in water) is typically polar or charged, containing functional groups (see section 3.4) like hydroxyl or amino groups that can form bonds with water molecules.

Water's polar nature drives these interactions. Each water molecule has a partial negative charge on its oxygen atom and partial positive charges on its hydrogen atoms, allowing it to form hydrogen bonds (weak attractions between a hydrogen atom and an electronegative atom such as oxygen or nitrogen). Hydrophilic molecules mix easily with water because their charges or dipoles can participate in hydrogen bonding. For instance, sugars and amino acids dissolve readily, forming hydration shells as water molecules surround and stabilize them.

Hydrophobic molecules, by contrast, disrupt the hydrogen-bonding network of water. To minimize this disturbance, water molecules cluster together and exclude nonpolar molecules, causing the hydrophobic substances to aggregate. This phenomenon, known as the hydrophobic effect (the tendency of nonpolar molecules to associate in aqueous environments), is not due to attraction between hydrophobic molecules but rather to the increased stability of the surrounding water when they are clustered together.

These interactions play a central role in biological organization. The folding of proteins (large biomolecules composed of amino acid chains) depends critically on the balance between hydrophobic and hydrophilic residues: hydrophobic side chains usually fold inward, away from water, while hydrophilic residues face outward toward the aqueous environment. Similarly, cell membranes form when phospholipids (molecules with hydrophilic heads and hydrophobic tails) spontaneously arrange into bilayers, creating a stable barrier between the cell's interior and its surroundings.



Attributions:
***Covalent Bonding* by Bozeman Science, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Mo4Vfqt5v2A. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.**
Shafei at Arabic Wikipedia, Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons
OpenStax College, CC BY 3.0 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0>, via Wikimedia Commons Tomasz Dolinowski, Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons
Water's great Divide: AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 3.2: Chemical Bonds is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.3: Carbon

Life is built from carbon-based molecules that provide the structural framework and carry out the chemical processes necessary for all living organisms. Carbon's central role in biology stems from its unique chemical properties. Because carbon has four electrons in its outer shell, it can form up to four **covalent bonds** (strong chemical bonds formed when atoms share electrons) with a wide variety of atoms, including other carbon atoms. These stable carbon–carbon bonds allow carbon to form long chains, rings, and branched structures that serve as the backbone of many biological molecules. This versatility gives rise to the enormous diversity of **macromolecules** (large, complex molecules essential to cellular structure and function) found in living organisms.

The carbon backbone provides a stable framework, but the chemical properties of a molecule are determined primarily by the reactive groups attached to it. These groups, known as **functional groups** (specific groupings of atoms that confer characteristic chemical properties to a molecule), influence a molecule's reactivity, solubility, shape, and biological function. Small differences in functional groups can dramatically alter how a molecule behaves and interacts within cells. The most common functional groups found in biological molecules are described below.

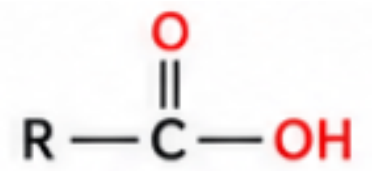
Alcohols

Alcohols are organic compounds that contain a hydroxyl group (–OH) bonded to a carbon atom. Hydroxyl groups are found in carbohydrates such as glucose, glycerol in fats and phospholipids, and the amino acid serine, where they increase water solubility and participate in chemical reactions.



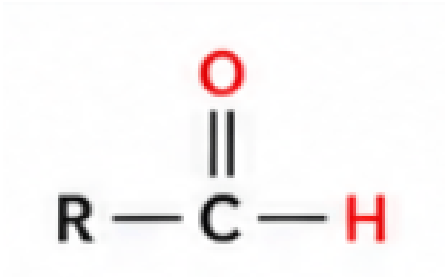
Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids are organic compounds that contain a carboxyl group (–COOH). This functional group is found in fatty acids, which are the building blocks of fats and membrane lipids, and in amino acids, where it participates in the formation of proteins.



Aldehydes

Aldehydes are organic compounds that contain a terminal carbonyl group (–CHO). Examples include glucose, the primary sugar used by cells for energy, and retinal, a vitamin A derivative that plays a critical role in vision.



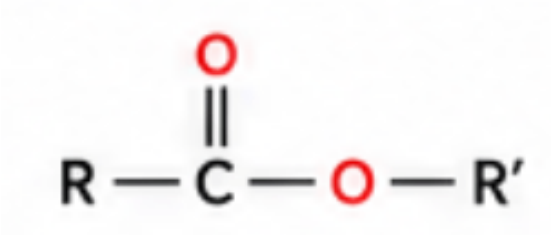
Ethers

Ethers are organic compounds in which an oxygen atom is bonded to two carbon atoms (R–O–R′). Examples include the glycosidic bonds that link glucose molecules in starch, glycogen, and cellulose, as well as diethyl ether, a common laboratory solvent and historical anesthetic.



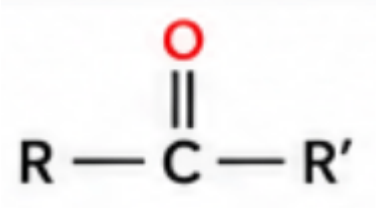
Esters

Esters are organic compounds formed when a carboxylic acid reacts with an alcohol. They are commonly found in triglycerides (fats and oils), waxes, and many naturally occurring compounds, where they contribute to energy storage and biological structure.



Ketones

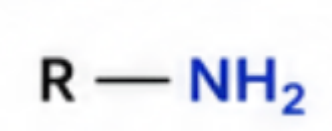
Ketones are organic compounds that contain a carbonyl group (C=O) bonded to two carbon atoms. They are found in many biological molecules, including ketose sugars such as fructose, and serve important roles in metabolism and energy production.



Amines

Amines are organic compounds that contain an amino functional group (–NH_2, –NHR, or –NR_2). They are basic molecules that readily accept hydrogen ions (H^+) and play important roles in amino acids, proteins, neurotransmitters, and many biological molecules.

- Many neurotransmitters:
  - dopamine
  - histamine



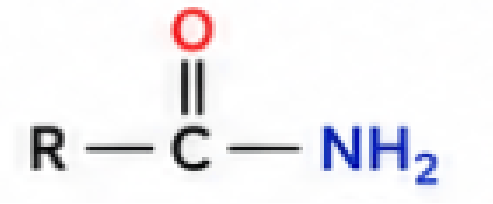
Methyl

The methyl functional group ($-CH_3$) is a nonpolar group consisting of one carbon atom bonded to three hydrogen atoms. Although it is relatively unreactive, the addition of methyl groups can influence the shape, activity, and function of biological molecules. Methyl groups are important in gene regulation through DNA methylation and can alter protein function and gene expression.



Amides

Amides are organic molecules containing a carbonyl group (-C=O) attached to a nitrogen atom. The **peptide bond** between the amino acids linked in a polypeptide is also called an **amide bond**.



Functional groups are specific arrangements of atoms within molecules that influence their chemical properties and reactivity.
They are key to the structure and function of the major classes of biomolecules.

Functional Group	Structure (General Formula)	Properties / Characteristics	Found In (Examples)	Example in a Biomolecule
Alcohols (Hydroxyl) (–OH)	R — O — H (e.g., ethanol) CH_3-CH_2-O-H	• Polar; can form hydrogen bonds • Increases solubility in water • Important in metabolism and signaling	Alcohols in carbohydrates, small molecules, and lipids (e.g., ethanol, glycerol)	Glycerol (a lipid)
Aldehydes (–CHO)	R—C(=O)—H (e.g., acetaldehyde) $CH_3-C(=O)-H$	• Polar • More reactive than ketones • Common in sugars and metabolic intermediates	Aldehydes in sugars and other biomolecules (e.g., glucose)	Glucose (an aldose sugar)
Ketones (Carbonyl) (>C=O)	R—C(=O)—R′ (e.g., acetone) $CH_3-C(=O)-CH_3$	• Polar • Key in energy transfer and molecular recognition	Ketones in sugars and other biomolecules (e.g., fructose)	Fructose (a ketose sugar)
Carboxyl (Carboxylic Acid) (–COOH)	R—C(=O)—OH (e.g., acetic acid) $CH_3-C(=O)-OH$	• Acidic; donates H^+ • Important in metabolism and protein structure	Amino acids, fatty acids, and organic acids (e.g., alanine)	Alanine (an amino acid)
Amino ($–NH_2$)	R — NH_2 (e.g., methylamine) CH_3-NH_2	• Basic; accepts H^+ • Essential in amino acids and nucleic acids	Amino acids and biogenic amines (e.g., lysine)	Lysine (an amino acid)
Ethers (–O–)	R — O — R′ (e.g., dimethyl ether) CH_3-O-CH_3	• Polar; do not donate hydrogen bonds • Relatively unreactive • Increase lipid solubility	Linkages in some lipids and natural products (e.g., phytochemicals)	Ether linkage in a membrane lipid (plasmalogen)
Esters (–COOR)	R—C(=O)—O—R′ (e.g., ethyl acetate) $CH_3-C(=O)-O-CH_2CH_3$	• Often nonpolar; pleasant odors • Hydrolyzed by esterases in cells • Important in energy storage	Triglycerides (fats and oils), waxes, and some metabolites	Ester linkages in a triglyceride (fat)
Amides (–CONH–)	R—C(=O)—NH_2 (e.g., acetamide) $CH_3-C(=O)-NH_2$	• Polar; can form hydrogen bonds • Stabilizes protein structure • Less reactive than esters	Peptide bonds in proteins and many other biomolecules	Peptide bond in proteins
Methyl ($–CH_3$)	R — CH_3 (e.g., methane) CH_3-H	• Nonpolar • Affects gene expression and protein function	DNA methylation, some proteins and metabolites (e.g., 5–methylcytosine)	5–Methylcytosine (DNA base)

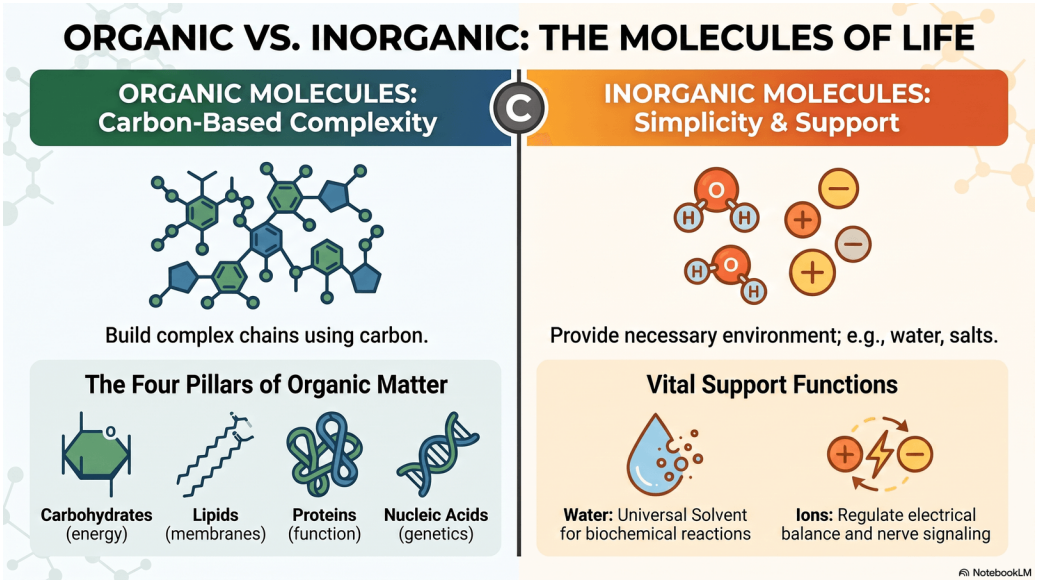
R and R′ represent the rest of the molecule. Colors highlight key atoms in each functional group. ● Oxygen (O) ● Nitrogen (N) ● Carbon in CH_3

Attribution: AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 3.3: Carbon is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules

All living organisms are composed of a complex mixture of organic and inorganic molecules, each playing distinct roles in sustaining life. The distinction between them lies primarily in their chemical composition and the types of bonds they form. **Organic molecules** (molecules containing carbon atoms covalently bonded to hydrogen and often to oxygen, nitrogen, or other elements) form the structural and functional foundation of living systems. Carbon's ability to form four covalent bonds allows it to create long chains, branched structures, and rings, providing immense diversity and stability to biological compounds. By contrast, **inorganic molecules** (molecules that generally do not contain carbon-hydrogen bonds and are not produced by living organisms, though exceptions exist) include substances such as water, salts, acids, and bases, all of which are vital for biological processes despite not forming complex carbon-based frameworks.



Water, the most abundant inorganic molecule in cells, plays a central role as a solvent (a substance that dissolves other molecules) and as a medium for biochemical reactions. Its polar nature allows it to stabilize ions and other charged species, facilitating the transport of nutrients, gases, and waste. Inorganic ions such as sodium, potassium, calcium, and chloride contribute to maintaining electrical balance, regulating fluid movement, and enabling nerve signaling and enzyme activity. These relatively simple inorganic molecules and ions thus provide an essential environmental context for the chemistry of life.

Organic molecules, on the other hand, serve as the building blocks and energy sources of living matter. Carbohydrates (organic compounds composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, often serving as energy sources or structural materials) provide immediate energy through sugars such as glucose and contribute to cell structure through polysaccharides like cellulose. Lipids (a diverse group of hydrophobic organic molecules including fats, oils, and phospholipids) store energy, form cellular membranes, and act as signaling molecules. Proteins (large organic molecules made of amino acids linked by peptide bonds) perform most of the cell's structural, enzymatic, and regulatory functions. Nucleic acids (long chains of nucleotides containing a sugar, phosphate, and nitrogenous base) store and transmit genetic information in DNA and RNA.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Organic vs Inorganic Molecules of Life AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

Difference Between Organic and Inorganic Compounds by Afzaal Chemist, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=W2Ia69q6fnw**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.5: Water

Water is essential to life as we know it and is one of the most abundant and biologically important molecules on Earth. In humans, water accounts for approximately 60–70 percent of body mass, reflecting its central role in maintaining cellular structure, transporting substances, and supporting metabolic reactions. Without water, the chemical reactions required for growth, energy production, and reproduction could not occur, making life impossible in its absence.

Water's importance arises from its unique chemical properties. The **polarity** (uneven distribution of electrical charge within a molecule) of the water molecule results from the unequal sharing of electrons between oxygen and hydrogen atoms. This polarity allows water molecules to form **hydrogen bonds** (weak attractions between partially charged atoms) with one another and with other polar molecules. These interactions give water physical and chemical characteristics that are directly tied to biological function. Life is thought to have originated in a watery environment, and today nearly all cellular chemistry and metabolism take place within the aqueous cytoplasm of cells, where water provides a medium for molecules to interact.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

One remarkable feature of water is that it naturally exists on Earth in all three physical states: solid, liquid, and gas. Liquid water provides the environment in which biochemical reactions occur and allows substances to be transported within and between cells. Solid water, or ice, is less dense than liquid water and therefore floats. This property insulates bodies of water in cold environments, preventing them from freezing solid and allowing aquatic life to survive beneath the ice. Water in its gaseous state, water vapor, plays an important role in the water cycle and in regulating climate by transferring heat through the atmosphere.

Several additional properties make water especially well suited to support life. Water has a high heat capacity, meaning it can absorb or release large amounts of heat with only small changes in temperature. This helps stabilize body temperatures in organisms and moderates environmental temperature fluctuations. Water also has a high heat of vaporization, allowing organisms to cool themselves through processes such as sweating or transpiration.

Water is an excellent solvent for many polar and ionic substances, enabling nutrients, ions, and waste products to dissolve and move efficiently within cells and throughout organisms. Its cohesive properties, caused by hydrogen bonding between water molecules, allow water to form continuous columns, while its adhesive properties enable interaction with other surfaces. These characteristics are especially important for the movement of water through plant tissues.

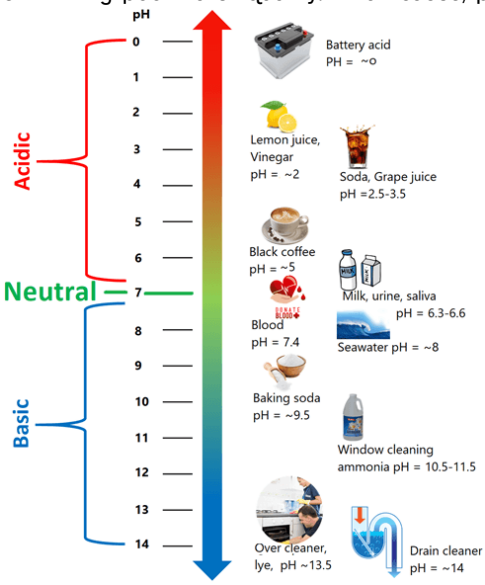
Finally, water can dissociate into hydrogen and hydroxide ions, a property that underlies the concept of pH. Maintaining a stable pH is essential for enzyme activity and cellular function, as even small pH changes can disrupt biological processes. Together, water's chemical properties and its ability to exist in different physical states explain why it is indispensable for the structure, function, and stability of living systems.

Attribution: *Importance of Water for Life* by Khan Academy, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fxlMABxU7zU**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 3.5: Water is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.6: Acids and Bases

The **pH** (a measure of the acidity or basicity of a solution) reflects the concentration of hydrogen ions present in that solution. In everyday settings, pH is commonly measured using litmus paper or pH paper (filter paper treated with dyes that change color in response to pH). These tools are used in classrooms, laboratories, and practical applications such as monitoring swimming pool water quality. In all cases, pH measurements indicate the concentration of hydrogen ions (H^+) in a solution.



Hydrogen ions are present even in pure water. A small fraction of water molecules undergo **dissociation** (the separation of a molecule into ions), producing equal numbers of hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions (OH^-). Hydroxide ions remain dispersed in solution through hydrogen bonding with surrounding water molecules. Hydrogen ions, however, do not remain free for long; they quickly associate with un-ionized water molecules to form **hydronium ions** (H_3O^+). For simplicity, scientists conventionally refer to these ions as hydrogen ions when discussing pH.

In pure water, the concentration of hydrogen ions is 1×10^{-7} moles per liter. A **mole** (a unit used to express the amount of a substance) represents 6.02×10^{23} particles, a value known as Avogadro's number. The pH scale is calculated as the negative base-10 logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration. For pure water, the logarithm of 1×10^{-7} is –7, and taking the negative of this value yields a pH of 7.0. A pH of 7 is considered neutral, and many biological systems, including human blood and the interior of cells, are maintained close to this value.

Non-neutral pH values occur when acids or bases dissolve in water and alter hydrogen ion concentration. An **acid** (a substance that increases hydrogen ion concentration in solution) lowers pH, while a **base** (a substance that decreases hydrogen ion concentration, often by releasing hydroxide ions or binding hydrogen ions) raises pH. Because the pH scale is logarithmic, each one-unit change in pH represents a tenfold change in hydrogen ion concentration. As a result, solutions with high hydrogen ion concentrations have low pH values, whereas solutions with low hydrogen ion concentrations have high pH values.

The strength of an acid or base depends on how readily it dissociates in water. Strong acids, such as hydrochloric acid, release hydrogen ions almost completely, producing very low pH values. Weak acids, such as those found in vinegar or tomato juice, release hydrogen ions only partially. Similarly, strong bases, such as sodium hydroxide, readily increase hydroxide ion concentration and raise pH, while weak bases cause smaller changes. Seawater, for example, is slightly basic, with a pH near 8.0, a range to which marine organisms have adapted.

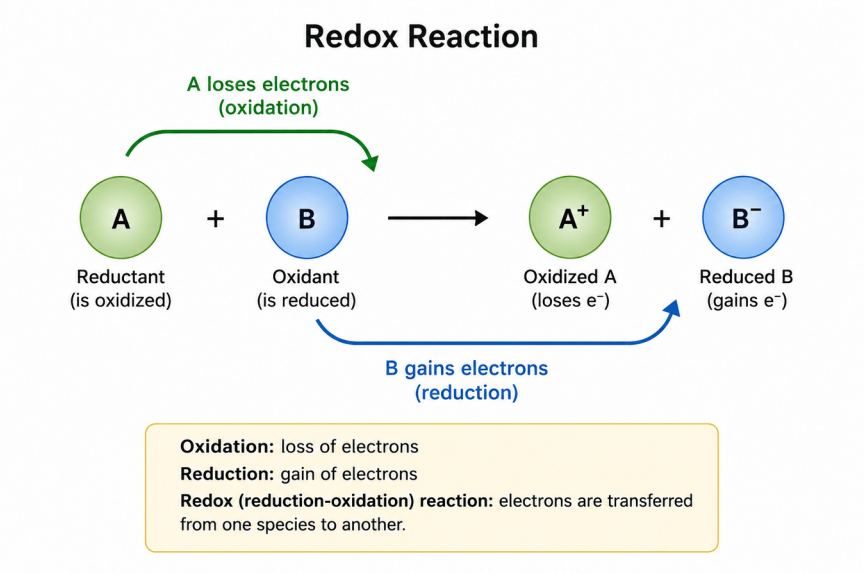
The pH scale ranges from 0 to 14. Values below 7.0 are acidic, values above 7.0 are basic (or alkaline), and a pH of 7.0 is neutral. Extreme pH values are generally inhospitable to life. Most cells function within a narrow pH range, with the pH inside human cells near 6.8 and blood maintained at approximately 7.4. An important exception is the stomach, where the pH ranges from 1 to 2. This highly acidic environment aids digestion but damages stomach lining cells, which are continuously replaced. Scientists estimate that the human stomach lining is completely renewed every seven to ten days.

Aribution: 6.6: The pH is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Muhammad Arif Malik.

This page titled 3.6: Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.7: Redox Reactions

Energy production within a cell depends on many coordinated chemical pathways, most of which involve paired **oxidation–reduction reactions** (reactions in which electrons are transferred between molecules). In an oxidation reaction, an atom or molecule loses one or more electrons. In a reduction reaction, another atom or molecule gains those electrons. Because oxidation and reduction occur simultaneously, these paired reactions are collectively called **redox reactions**.



Electrons and Energy

When a molecule loses an electron and is oxidized, its potential energy decreases. However, electrons do not exist freely within the cell. Instead, the electron—often transferred along with a proton as part of a hydrogen atom—is immediately accepted by another molecule, reducing it. As a result, potential energy is transferred from the oxidized compound to the reduced compound.

This movement of electrons is central to cellular energy metabolism because much of the energy used by cells is stored in high-energy electrons. By transferring energy in the form of electrons between molecules, cells can release and capture energy gradually, in controlled steps, rather than in a single, damaging burst. As energy is extracted from food molecules, it is the movement of electrons through metabolic pathways that ultimately powers cellular processes.

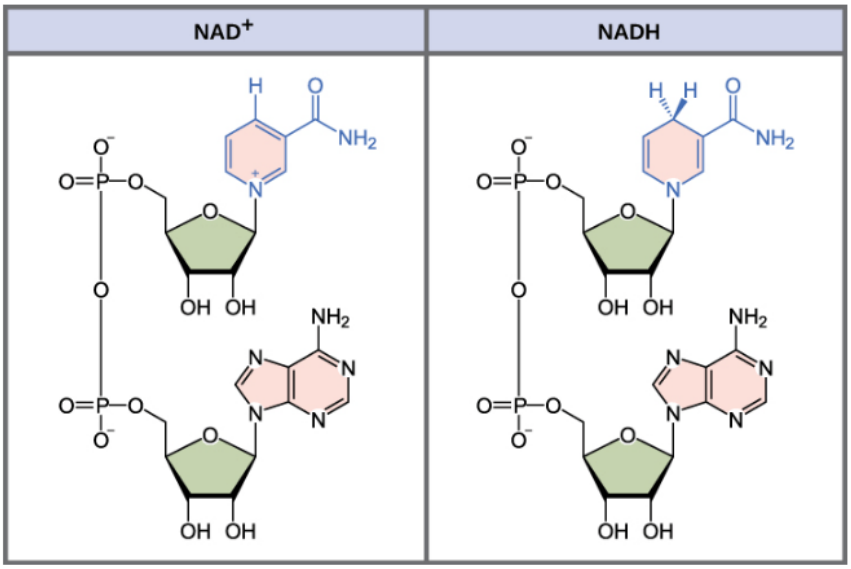
Electron Carriers

Cells rely on specialized molecules known as **electron carriers** (compounds that temporarily bind and transport high-energy electrons during metabolic reactions) to shuttle electrons between reactions. Most electron carriers are derived from B vitamins and are structurally related to nucleotides. These molecules can readily alternate between oxidized and reduced forms, making them ideal for transferring electrons.

One of the most important electron carriers is **NAD+** (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) (an electron carrier derived from vitamin B_3, niacin). NAD+ is the oxidized form of the molecule. When it accepts two electrons and a proton, it becomes **NADH**, its reduced form. In general, molecules that carry added hydrogen atoms are considered reduced, which is why NADH represents the higher-energy form.

NAD+ accepts electrons from organic molecules according to a general reaction in which the organic molecule is oxidized and NAD+ is reduced to NADH. A molecule that donates electrons is called a **reducing agent**, while a molecule that accepts electrons is called an **oxidizing agent**. In this process, the organic molecule acts as the reducing agent, and NAD+ acts as the oxidizing

agent.



Another important electron carrier is **FAD** (flavin adenine dinucleotide), derived from vitamin B_2 (riboflavin). Its oxidized form, FAD, is reduced to **$FADH_2$** when it gains electrons and protons. Both NAD♢ and FAD play major roles in extracting energy from sugars during cellular respiration.

A related molecule, **NADP♢** (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate), contains an additional phosphate group. While NAD♢ and FAD are primarily involved in energy-releasing pathways, NADP♢ is most commonly used in anabolic reactions, including photosynthesis and biosynthetic pathways.

Together, these electron carriers allow cells to efficiently capture, transport, and use energy, forming the foundation of cellular respiration and metabolic energy flow.

Attributions:
"Redox" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"NAD+/NADH AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 3.7: Redox Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes

Transport across cell membranes is essential for maintaining the internal environment of a cell and allowing communication with its surroundings. The cell membrane (a selectively permeable barrier composed mainly of lipids and proteins) controls the entry and exit of substances, ensuring that nutrients, gases, and waste move in a regulated way. Because the membrane is selectively permeable (allowing some molecules to pass more easily than others), cells employ several transport mechanisms depending on the size, charge, and concentration of the substance involved.

Passive Transport

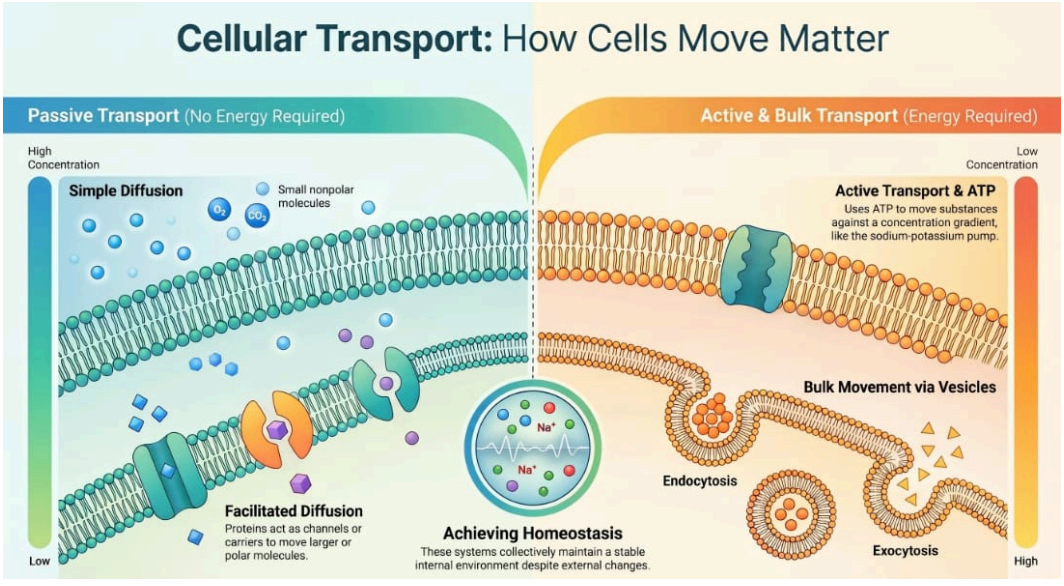
The simplest form of movement is **passive transport** (movement of molecules across the membrane without energy input). In **diffusion** (the net movement of particles from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration), small nonpolar molecules like oxygen and carbon dioxide can cross directly through the phospholipid bilayer (a double layer of lipid molecules with hydrophilic heads and hydrophobic tails). Larger or polar molecules, however, require assistance through **facilitated diffusion** (passive movement using membrane proteins). These proteins may take the form of channel proteins (tunnels that allow specific ions or water to pass through) or carrier proteins (proteins that bind a specific molecule and change shape to move it across).

Active Transport

When movement must occur against a concentration gradient, cells rely on **active transport** (transport requiring energy, usually from ATP). One well-known example is the sodium-potassium pump (a membrane protein that moves sodium ions out and potassium ions in, maintaining electrical and chemical gradients crucial for nerve and muscle function). Active transport enables cells to accumulate substances in higher concentrations than exist in their surroundings, supporting functions like nutrient uptake and waste removal.

Some substances are too large even for transport proteins and require bulk movement mechanisms. **Endocytosis** (the process of engulfing materials by forming vesicles from the cell membrane) allows cells to take in liquids or large particles; its reverse, **exocytosis** (the process of vesicles fusing with the cell membrane to expel materials), is used to release substances such as hormones or neurotransmitters. These processes depend heavily on the dynamic nature of the membrane, which constantly rearranges its structure to accommodate cellular activity.

Together, these transport systems maintain homeostasis (a stable internal environment), allowing cells to adjust to changing external conditions, communicate through signaling molecules, and support the complex biochemical pathways that sustain life.



Osmosis

Osmosis is the passive movement of water molecules across a semipermeable membrane from a region of lower solute concentration to a region of higher solute concentration, with the aim of equalizing solute concentrations on both sides of the membrane (a type of diffusion driven by water potential differences). This process is fundamental to cellular function because cells are surrounded by membranes that regulate which substances can pass through, and water movement helps maintain proper cell volume and shape.

In biological systems, solutions are described using three related terms that describe the relative concentrations of solutes outside versus inside the cell. When the external solution has a lower solute concentration than the cytoplasm, water tends to move into the cell, causing it to swell; this kind of external environment is referred to as a **hypotonic** solution (a solution that has a lower solute concentration than the inside of the cell). Conversely, when the external solution has a solute concentration similar to that inside the cell, water moves in and out at roughly the same rate, and the cell remains stable in size; such an environment is called an **isotonic** solution (a solution that has the same solute concentration as the inside of the cell). When the external solution has a higher solute concentration than the cell interior, water tends to exit the cell, leading to shrinkage or plasmolysis in plant cells and to a reduced volume in animal cells; this situation is described as a **hypertonic** solution (a solution that has a higher solute concentration than the inside of the cell).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:

How Cells Move Matter AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

Osmosis Animation and Experiments by BioMan Biology, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BDDqY7IZhxQ**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9: MACROMOLECULES

Introduction to Macromolecules

All living organisms are built from a relatively small set of chemical components that are organized into larger, more complex structures. Among the most important of these structures are **macromolecules** (large, complex molecules formed by the bonding of smaller chemical units). Macromolecules are essential to life because they provide cells with structure, store and transfer information, supply energy, and carry out the chemical reactions necessary for survival.

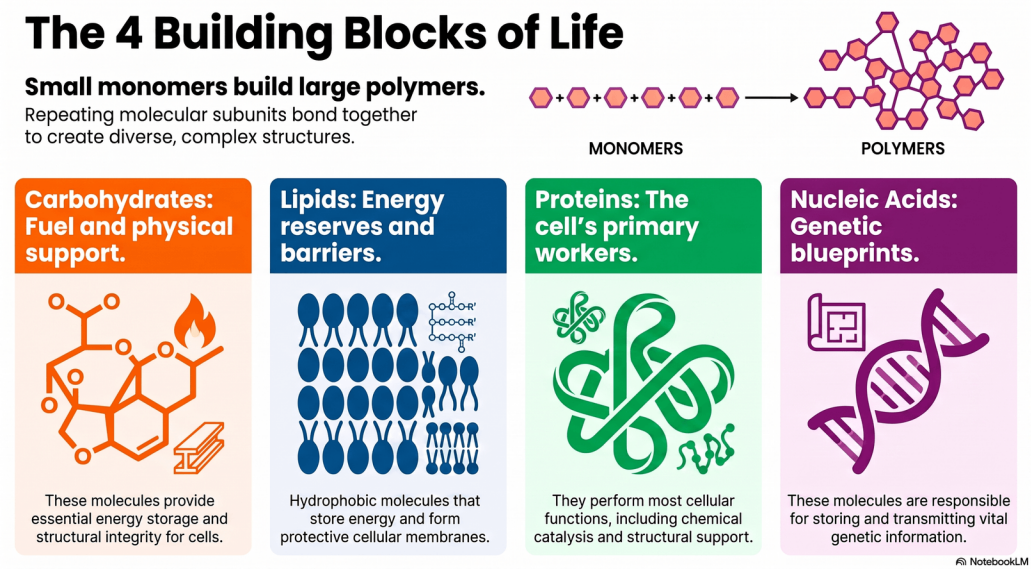
Macromolecules into four major groups: **carbohydrates** (molecules primarily involved in energy storage and structural support), **lipids** (hydrophobic molecules that store energy and form cellular membranes), **proteins** (polymers that perform most cellular functions, including catalysis and structural support), and **nucleic acids** (molecules that store and transmit genetic information). Each class plays a distinct but interconnected role in maintaining cellular organization and supporting life processes.

Most biological macromolecules are constructed from repeating smaller units called **monomers** (small molecular subunits that can join together). When monomers bond together through chemical reactions, they form **polymers** (large molecules composed of many repeating subunits). The specific sequence and arrangement of these subunits determine a macromolecule's structure and function, allowing for enormous diversity from a limited set of building blocks.

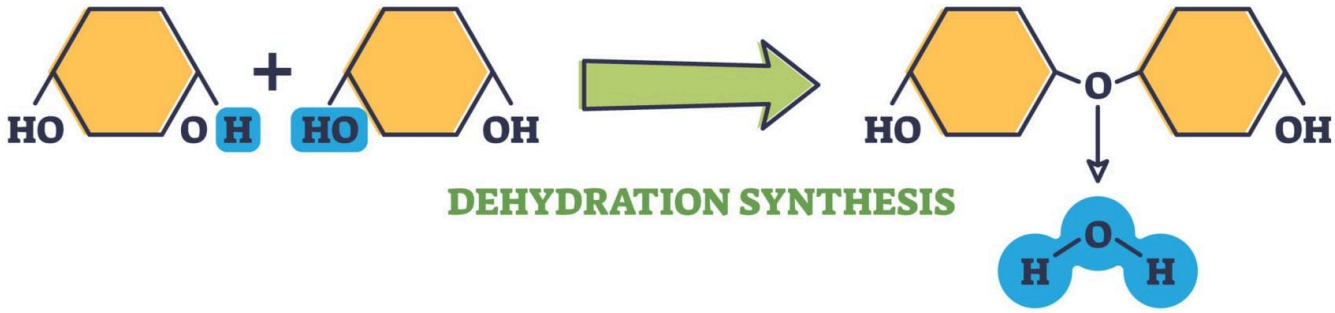
All living organisms are built from a relatively small set of chemical components that are organized into larger, more complex structures. Among the most important of these structures are **macromolecules** (large, complex molecules formed by the bonding of smaller chemical units). Macromolecules are essential to life because they provide cells with structure, store and transfer information, supply energy, and carry out the chemical reactions necessary for survival.

Macromolecules into four major groups: **carbohydrates** (molecules primarily involved in energy storage and structural support), **lipids** (hydrophobic molecules that store energy and form cellular membranes), **proteins** (polymers that perform most cellular functions, including catalysis and structural support), and **nucleic acids** (molecules that store and transmit genetic information). Each class plays a distinct but interconnected role in maintaining cellular organization and supporting life processes.

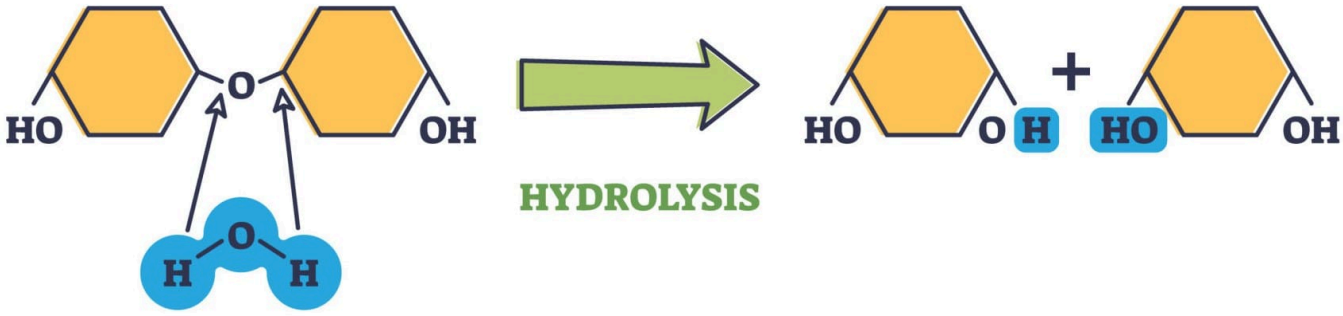
Most biological macromolecules are constructed from repeating smaller units called **monomers** (small molecular subunits that can join together). When monomers bond together through chemical reactions, they form **polymers** (large molecules composed of many repeating subunits). The specific sequence and arrangement of these subunits determine a macromolecule's structure and function, allowing for enormous diversity from a limited set of building blocks.



Most monomers are joined together by dehydration reactions.



The majority of monomers are released from polymers through hydration reactions.



Understanding the characteristics of the four classes of macromolecules is fundamental to biology and biotechnology. At the cellular level, macromolecules interact to form various cellular component such as membranes, enzymes, and genetic material. At the applied level, knowledge of macromolecular structure and function and how they interact in biological systems is fundamental to the development of technologies such as drug design, genetic engineering, vaccine development, and diagnostic testing. As you explore each class of macromolecule in more detail, you will see how their chemical properties directly influence biological function and how small molecular changes can have significant effects on living systems.

Attributions:

All images are AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

3.9.1: Carbohydrates

3.9.2: Lipids

3.9.3: Proteins

3.9.3.1: Enzymes

3.9.4: Nucleic Acids

3.9.4.1: ATP

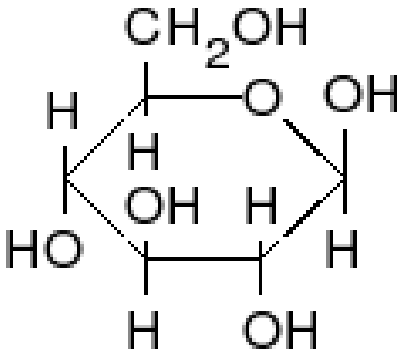
This page titled 3.9: Macromolecules is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9.1: Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates (organic molecules composed primarily of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, often in a ratio of one carbon atom to two hydrogen atoms to one oxygen atom) are one of the four major classes of biological macromolecules. They play essential roles in energy transfer, energy storage, and structural support in living organisms. Carbohydrates range in size from simple sugars to large, complex polymers.

The basic building blocks of carbohydrates are **monosaccharides** (single sugar units). Examples include glucose, fructose, and galactose. Monosaccharides can be used directly by cells as an energy source or linked together to form larger carbohydrate molecules.

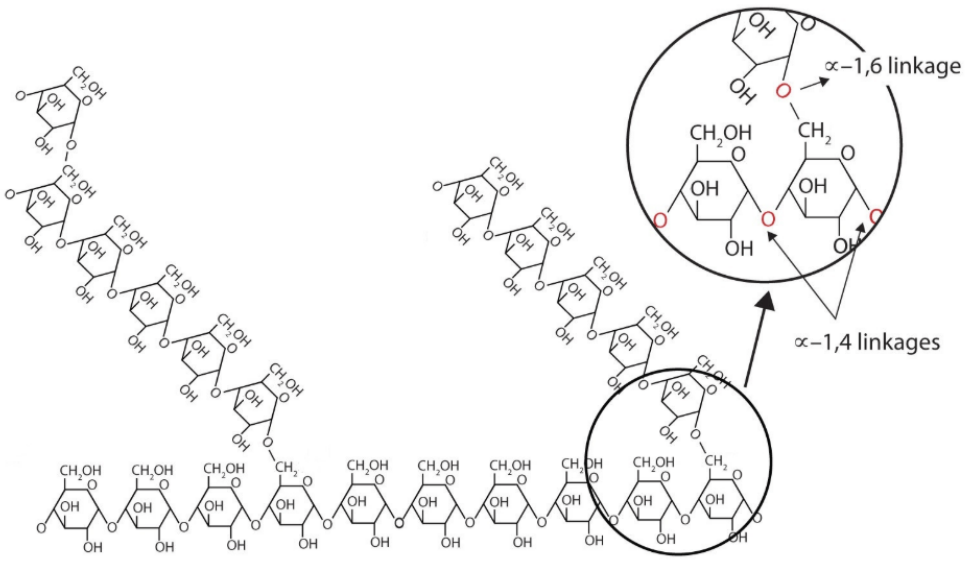
Glucose



Monosaccharides are joined together by **dehydration synthesis** (a chemical reaction in which a water molecule is removed to form a covalent bond). During this process, a hydrogen atom is removed from one monosaccharide and a hydroxyl group (—OH) is removed from another, producing water and forming a **glycosidic bond** (a covalent bond that links sugar molecules together). Repeating this process allows many monosaccharides to join into long chains, forming disaccharides and polysaccharides.

Carbohydrate polymers are broken apart by **hydrolysis** (a chemical reaction in which water is added to break a covalent bond). In hydrolysis, the addition of water splits the glycosidic bond, releasing individual monosaccharides that cells can then use for energy or other metabolic processes. Dehydration synthesis and hydrolysis are opposite reactions and together allow organisms to build and break down carbohydrates as needed.

Larger carbohydrates, known as **polysaccharides**, serve important biological functions. Starch in plants and glycogen in animals store glucose for later use, while cellulose provides structural support in plant cell walls. Although these polysaccharides are all composed of glucose monomers, differences in the type of glycosidic bonds and the arrangement of the monomers result in distinct structures and functions.



Because carbohydrates are generally **hydrophilic**, they interact easily with water and are well suited for transport and short-term energy storage. Their ability to be rapidly assembled and broken down makes carbohydrates central to cellular metabolism and energy balance.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Wikimuzg, CC BY-SA 3.0 <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>, via Wikimedia Commons
https://chem.libretexts.org/Bookshel..._and_Cellulose
Carbohydrates by Bozeman Science, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_zm_DyD6FJ0**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

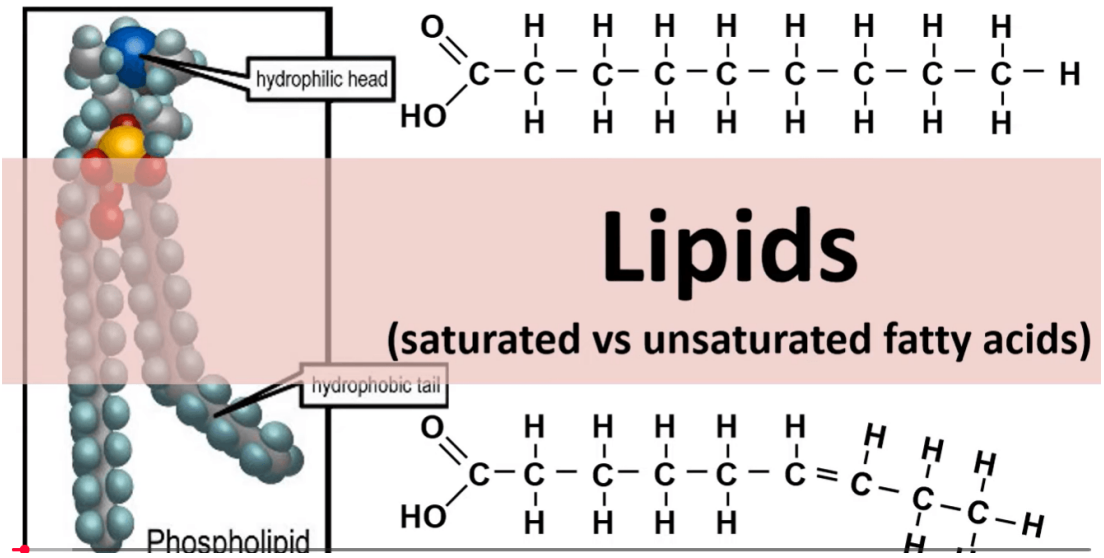
This page titled 3.9.1: Carbohydrates is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9.2: Lipids

Lipids (a diverse group of largely hydrophobic biological molecules) are one of the four major classes of macromolecules. Unlike carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acids, lipids are not polymers made from repeating monomers. Instead, they share the common property of being insoluble or poorly soluble in water. Lipids play critical roles in long-term energy storage, membrane structure, insulation, signaling, and hormone production.

The most familiar lipids are **fats** and **oils**, which are primarily used for long-term energy storage. Both fats and oils are composed of **fatty acids** (long hydrocarbon chains with a terminal carboxyl group) attached to a glycerol backbone. When three fatty acids bond to glycerol, they form a triglyceride. Fats are typically solid at room temperature, while oils are liquid. This difference is largely due to the structure of the fatty acids they contain.

Fatty acids may be **saturated** (containing no carbon–carbon double bonds) or **unsaturated** (containing one or more double bonds). Saturated fatty acids pack tightly together, resulting in solid fats such as butter. Unsaturated fatty acids have bends in their structure caused by double bonds, preventing tight packing and resulting in oils such as olive oil. A special category of unsaturated fats, known as **trans fats** (unsaturated fats with hydrogen atoms arranged in a trans configuration), are often produced artificially during food processing. Trans fats pack more tightly than typical unsaturated fats and have been associated with negative health effects, including increased risk of cardiovascular disease.



Some unsaturated fatty acids are classified as **omega fatty acids**, which are defined by the position of the first double bond relative to the end of the carbon chain. **Omega-3** and **omega-6 fatty acids** are especially important in human health, playing roles in inflammation regulation, brain function, and cardiovascular health. Because the human body cannot synthesize certain omega fatty acids, they are considered essential nutrients and must be obtained through the diet.

Another major class of lipids is **phospholipids** (lipids containing a phosphate group). Phospholipids consist of a glycerol backbone, two fatty acids, and a phosphate-containing head group. This structure makes phospholipids **amphipathic** (having both hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions). As a result, phospholipids spontaneously form bilayers in aqueous environments, creating the structural foundation of cell membranes. These membranes act as selective barriers, regulating what enters and leaves the cell.

Steroids (lipids with a characteristic four-ring carbon structure) represent another important lipid category. Unlike fats and phospholipids, steroids do not contain fatty acid chains. Instead, their rigid ring structure allows them to function as signaling molecules and structural components of membranes. Cholesterol is a well-known steroid that helps regulate membrane fluidity and serves as a precursor for other steroids, including sex hormones and certain signaling molecules.

Together, lipids are essential for maintaining cellular structure, storing energy efficiently, transmitting signals, and supporting

overall organismal health. Their structural diversity allows them to perform a wide range of biological functions that are critical to life.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
https://www.youtube.com/live/DTzrlJ5...p=desktop&t=3s
Lipids by Bozeman Science, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VGHD9e3yRIU**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 3.9.2: Lipids is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9.3: PROTEINS

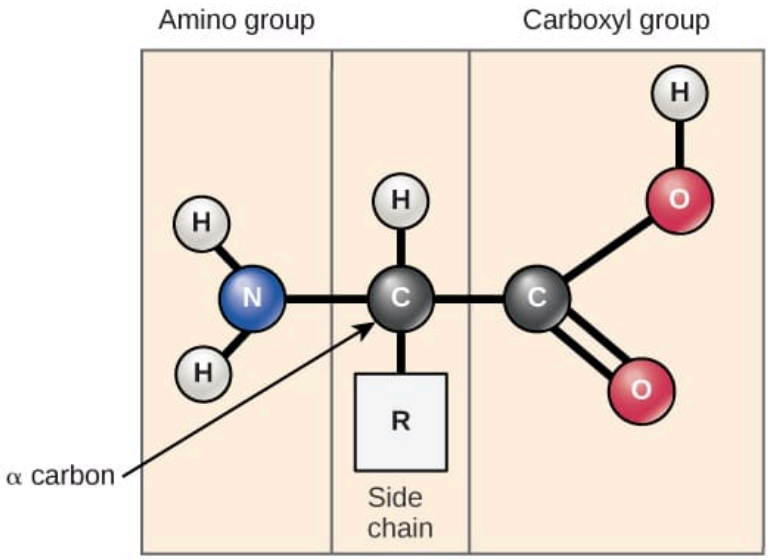
Proteins are large, complex molecules that power almost every function in living cells. They help cells and organisms move, as in muscles and in tiny hair-like structures called cilia and flagella. Most enzymes, which speed up chemical reactions, are proteins (though some RNA molecules also do this). The shape of cells and the surrounding matrix is mainly built from proteins, such as collagen; plants and many microbes rely more on carbohydrates like cellulose for support, but these carbohydrates are made with the help Atof enzymes. Proteins also carry substances in body fluids and act as receptors that detect signals like hormones. They are essential nutrients for animals that eat other organisms. Transcription factors—proteins that switch genes on and off—help guide how cells develop and how they respond to signals. In short, proteins form the very basis of life.

Amino Acids are the Building Blocks of Proteins

The building block of a protein is the **amino acid** (Figure). The name "amino acid" is derived from the fact that they contain an amine group and a carboxyl acid group in their basic structure. Each amino acid consists of a central carbon atom, also known as the **alpha (α) carbon**, bonded to the following:

1. a **carboxyl group (COOH)** that will donate protons when the amino acid is in an aqueous solution
2. an **amino group (NH2)** that will receive proteins from the environment
3. a **hydrogen atom**
4. a **"side chain" or "R group"** that distinguishes one amino acid from another. For each amino acid, the R group (or side chain) is different.

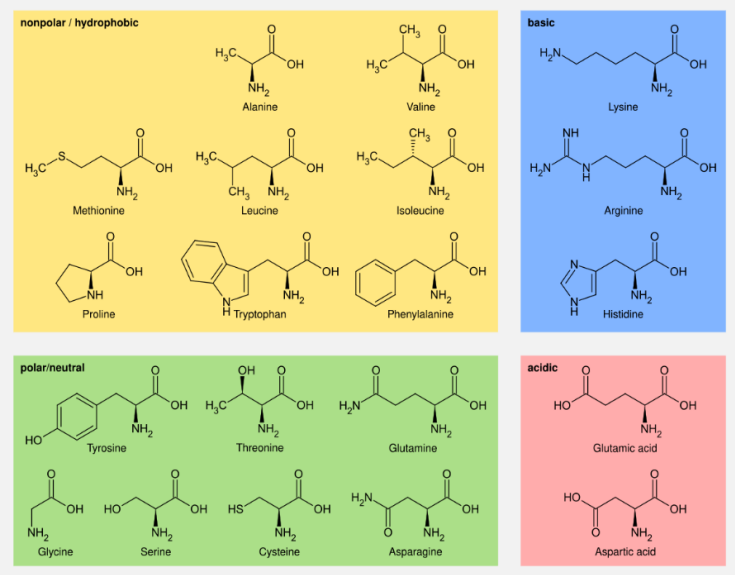
All proteins are made up using the same 20 types of amino acids arranged in a unique sequence according to the genetic code. When in an aqueous environment, the amino acid has a slightly positively charged end (the amine group) and a slightly negatively charged end (the carboxyl group). However, it is the R group that determines the overall physical and chemical characteristic of the amino acid. Amino acids can represented by a single upper case letter or a three-letter abbreviation. For example, valine is known by the letter V or the three-letter symbol val.



Based on the R chain, amino acids are classified into the following groups;

- **non-polar (hydrophobic)** - have side chains that are non-polar and uncharged;
  amino acids such as valine and leucine
- **polar (hydrophilic) -** have side chains that are polar and uncharged; amino acids such as serine, threonine, arginine, glutamine
- **electrically charged acidic** - have side chains that are positively charged at physiological pH; amino acids glutamic acid and aspartic acid
- **electrically charged basic** have side chains that are negatively charged at physiological pH; amino acids histidine, lysine,

arginine

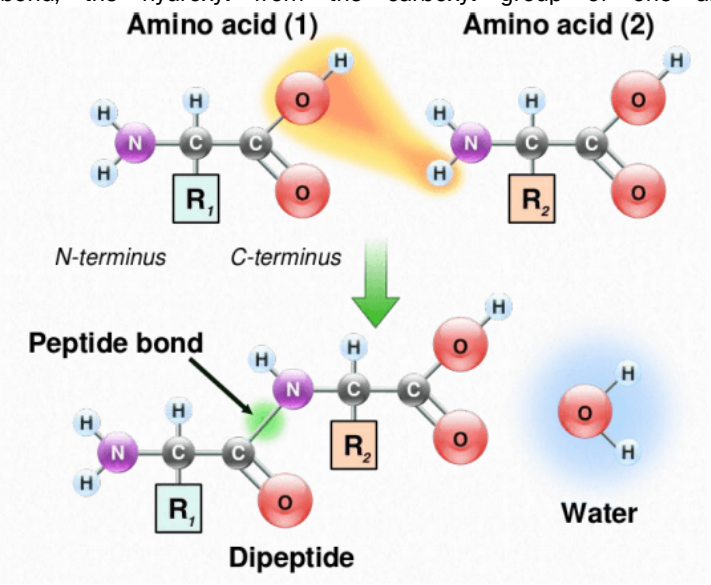


Essential	Non-Essential
Histidine	Alanine
Isoleucine	Arginine
Leucine	Asparagine
Lysine	Aspartic acid
Methionine	Cysteine
Phenylalanine	Glutamic acid
Threonine	Glutamine
Tryptophan	Glycine
Valine	Proline
	Selenocysteine
	Serine
	Tyrosine

Table 2.1 - Essential and non-essential amino acids

Protein Formation

Individual amino acids are linked together through a covalent bond called a **peptide bond.** Formation of the peptide bond results in the production of a water molecule and is referred to as a **dehydration synthesis reaction**. To form a peptide bond, the hydroxyl from the carboxyl group of one amino acid and the hydrogen from the amino group

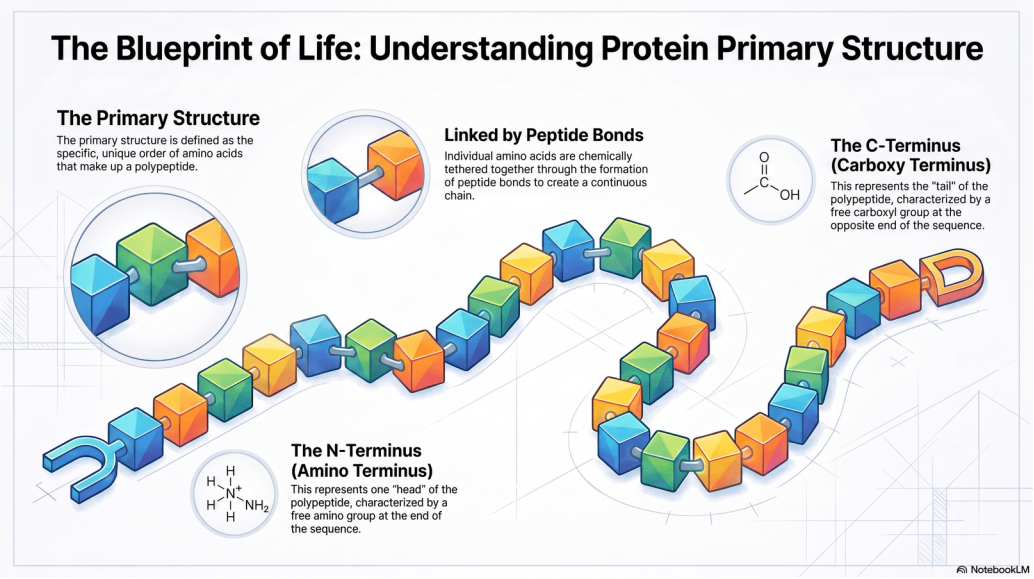


of the incoming amino acid combine, forming a molecule of water (Figure). The joining of two amino acids through a peptide bond produces a **dipeptide**. The joining of three amino acids produces a **tripeptide**. Joining from 4 to 9 amino acids results in a **peptide**. Joining more than 10 amino acids produces a **polypeptide**. A polypeptide can be relatively small (e.g. about 50 amino acids) or could be comprised of thousands of amino acids. While the terms polypeptide and protein are sometimes used interchangeably, a polypeptide is technically a polymer of amino acids, whereas the term protein is used for a polypeptide or polypeptides that have been folded into a unique three-dimensional structure. In addition, after protein synthesis (i.e. translation), most proteins have been modified through **post-translational modifications** of the polypeptide chain. They may undergo cleavage, phosphorylation, or may require the addition of other chemical groups. Only after these modifications and folding is complete is the protein functional.

The shape of a protein is critical to its function. For example, an enzyme binds a substrate at a site known as the active site. If the shape of the active site is altered because of changes in protein structure, the enzyme may be unable to bind to the substrate.

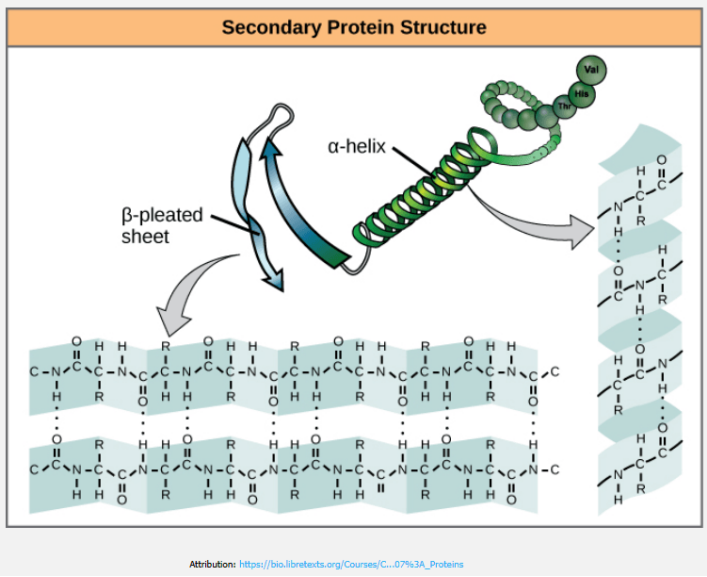
Protein structure is described using four levels of conformation:

1. **primary** - the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide strand
2. **secondary** - results in regions of alpha-helical coils and beta-pleated sheets
3. **tertiary** - the 3D shape of the protein
4. **quaternary** - produced through the interaction between more than two polypeptide chains



Primary Structure

The **primary structure** of a protein is the specific order of amino acids found in the polypeptide. These amino acids are linked together via peptide bonds. Each polypeptide has a free amino group at one end. This end is called the **N terminus**, or the **amino terminus.** The other end of the polypeptide has a free carboxyl group, which is known as the **C terminus**, or the **carboxy terminus**. The unique sequence found in the primary structure is determined by the gene encoding the protein. A change in the gene's DNA sequence may lead to a change in the amino acid sequence of the protein. A change in just one amino acid in the primary structure can ultimately affect the protein's overall structure and function. A change in just one amino acid in the primary structure can either change the function of the protein entirely or have no effect at all. Depends on where in the primary structure the change occurs. Sickle cell anemia is a disease caused by a single amino acid change in the primary structure of a hemoglobin polypeptide.

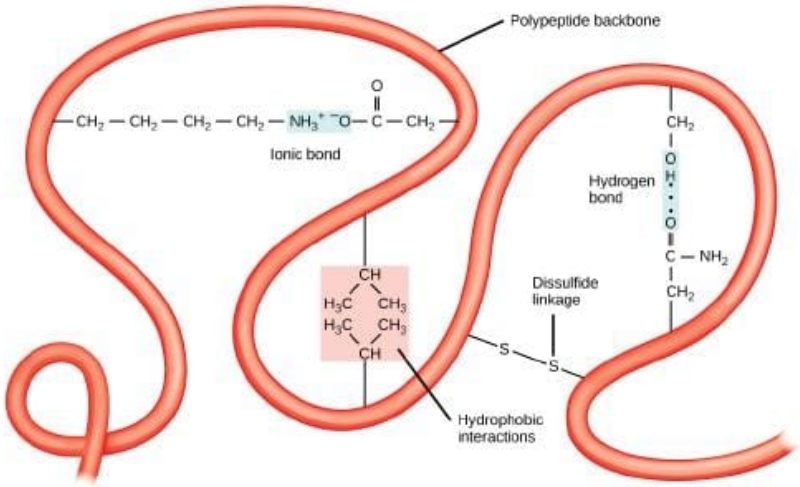


Secondary Structure

Local folding of the polypeptide in certain regions gives rise to the **secondary structure** of the protein. The most common secondary structures in proteins are the **α-helix** and **β-pleated** sheet (Figure). An α-helix coils like a spring and is produced when a hydrogen bond forms between the oxygen atom in the carbonyl group (C=O) of one amino acid and a hydrogen atom (H) in the amide (N=H) group of another amino acid that is four amino acids farther along the chain. Every helical turn in an α-helix has 3.6 amino acids. The R groups (the variant groups) of the polypeptide protrude out from the α-helix chain. In the β-pleated sheet, sections of the polypeptide lie top of one another together and form "pleats". These pleats are formed by hydrogen bonding between the carbonyl group in one section of the polypeptide and the amide groups of another section lying adjacent to it. The R groups extend above and below the folds of the pleat.

Tertiary Structure

Proteins have different shapes; some proteins are globular whereas others are fibrous in nature. The folding of the protein into a specific 3-dimensional shape produces its **tertiary structure**. Tertiary structure is primarily due to *interactions between the R groups of the amino acids* that make up the protein.



The R group interactions that contribute to tertiary structure include:

1. **hydrogen bonding**
2. **ionic bonding** - form between basic and acidic R groups.
3. **hydrophobic interactions** - occur between non-polar, hydrophobic R groups; hydrophobic interactions result in the positioning of hydrophobic amino acids in the interior of the protein, leaving hydrophilic amino acids on the outside to interact with surrounding water molecules.

Disulfide bonds - occur between the sulfur atoms of cysteine amino acids in the presence of oxygen; stabilizes the 3D structure of the protein.

All of these interactions combined together determine the final tertiary structure (i.e. the three-dimensional shape) of the protein.

Protein shape is critical to its function. When a protein loses its tertiary structure, it may no longer be functional.

Some proteins are formed from several polypeptides, also known as **subunits**, and the interaction of these subunits is the **quaternary structure** of the protein. Weak interactions between the subunits, such as hydrogen bonds, help to stabilize the overall structure.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

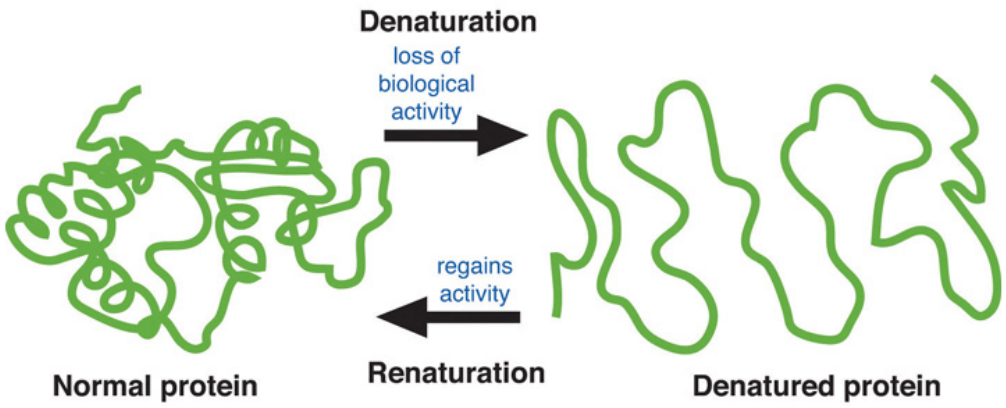
Protein Denaturation

The function of a protein is determined by its shape. The shape of a protein is determined by its primary structure(sequence of amino acids). The sequence of amino acids in a protein is determined by the sequence of nucleotides in the gene (DNA) encoding it. The function of a protein (except when it is serving as food) is absolutely dependent on its three-dimensional structure. A number of agents can disrupt this structure thus **denaturing** the protein.

- changes in pH (alters electrostatic interactions between charged amino acids)
- changes in salt concentration (does the same)
- changes in temperature (higher temperatures reduce the strength of hydrogen bonds)
- presence of reducing agents (break S-S bonds between cysteines)

None of these agents breaks **peptide bonds**, so the primary structure of a protein remains intact when it is denatured. When a protein is denatured, it loses its function.

Often when a protein has been **gently** denatured and then is returned to normal physiological conditions of temperature, pH, salt concentration, etc., it spontaneously regains its function (e.g. enzymatic activity or ability to bind its antigen). This tells us the protein has spontaneously resumed its native three-dimensional shape. Its ability to do so is **intrinsic**; no outside agent was needed to get it to refold properly.



Attributions:
Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C...07%3A_Proteins Attribution:: 10.4: Structure and Function - Amino Acids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kevin Ahern, Indira Rajagopal, & Taralyn Tan.

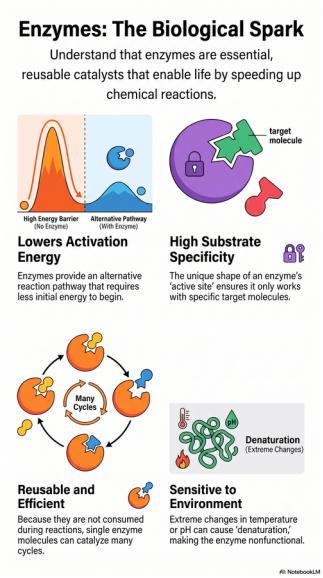
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C...07%3A_Proteins Attribution:: 10.4: Structure and Function - Amino Acids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kevin Ahern, Indira Rajagopal, & Taralyn Tan.
2.5.4: Amino Acids is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Boundless (now LumenLearning) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.
2.11: Rules of Protein Structure by John W. Kimball is licensed CC BY 3.0. Original source: https://www.biology-pages.info/.
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C...07%3A_Proteins
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C...07%3A_Proteins Attribution:: 10.4: Structure and Function - Amino Acids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kevin Ahern, Indira Rajagopal, & Taralyn Tan.
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C...07%3A_Proteins
10.4: Structure and Function - Amino Acids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Kevin Ahern, Indira Rajagopal, & Taralyn Tan.

3.9.3.1: Enzymes

This page titled 3.9.3: Proteins is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9.3.1: Enzymes

Cells carry out thousands of chemical reactions every second in order to survive, grow, and respond to their environment. Under normal cellular conditions, many of these reactions would occur far too slowly to support life. **Enzymes** (biological catalysts that speed up chemical reactions without being consumed) make life possible by dramatically increasing reaction rates while maintaining precise control over cellular chemistry.



Enzymes function by lowering the activation energy required for a chemical reaction to occur. Activation energy is the initial energy input needed to start a reaction. By stabilizing intermediate states or properly orienting reactant molecules, enzymes provide an alternative reaction pathway that requires less energy. Importantly, enzymes do not change the overall energy released by a reaction or alter the final products; they simply allow reactions to occur more efficiently.

Each enzyme is highly specific for its substrate, the molecule on which it acts. This specificity arises from the structure of the enzyme's active site, a region whose shape and chemical properties complement those of the substrate. When the substrate binds to the active site, an enzyme–substrate complex forms, bringing reactants together in an optimal orientation and facilitating their conversion into products.

Enzymes are essential components of metabolism because they organize individual chemical reactions into coordinated metabolic pathways. By controlling enzyme activity, cells regulate the rate and direction of metabolic processes, ensuring efficient use of energy and resources.

Properties of Enzymes

Enzymes share several defining properties that make them uniquely suited for biological systems and biotechnology applications.

One key property is efficiency. Enzymes are not consumed during reactions, meaning a single enzyme molecule can catalyze many reaction cycles. This reusability allows cells to maintain high metabolic activity without continuously synthesizing new enzymes.

Another important property is specificity. Most enzymes catalyze only one reaction or a narrow range of closely related reactions. This high specificity prevents unwanted side reactions and allows cells to maintain tight control over complex metabolic networks.

Enzyme activity is also highly dependent on environmental conditions. Temperature, pH, and substrate concentration all influence enzyme performance. Each enzyme has optimal conditions under which it functions most efficiently. Conditions outside this range can reduce activity or cause denaturation, a process in which the enzyme loses its three-dimensional structure and becomes nonfunctional.

Enzyme activity is subject to regulation within the cell. Cells can increase or decrease enzymatic activity through inhibitors,

activators, or by altering the amount of enzyme produced. This level of control allows metabolic pathways to be adjusted rapidly in response to changes in nutrient availability, energy demand, or environmental stress.

Enzyme mode of action

The Lock-and-Key Model

The **lock-and-key model** (a model describing enzyme–substrate specificity in which the substrate fits exactly into the enzyme's active site) explains how enzymes recognize and bind to their specific substrates. In this model, the enzyme's active site has a fixed shape that is complementary to the shape of its substrate, much like a key fits into a specific lock.

The Induced-Fit Model

The **induced-fit model** (a model of enzyme action in which the active site changes shape upon substrate binding) explains enzyme–substrate interactions as a dynamic process rather than a rigid one. In this model, the enzyme's active site is not a perfect match for the substrate when they first encounter each other. Instead, initial binding of the substrate triggers a conformational change in the enzyme that improves the fit.

As the substrate binds, the enzyme adjusts its shape so that the active site more closely surrounds the substrate. This change positions the substrate in an optimal orientation, places stress on specific chemical bonds, and stabilizes intermediate states of the reaction. These effects lower the activation energy required for the reaction to proceed, increasing the reaction rate.

The induced-fit model better reflects how most enzymes function in living cells. It explains how enzymes achieve both specificity and efficiency while remaining flexible enough to accommodate slight variations in substrate structure. This flexibility is especially important in complex metabolic pathways, where precise control of reaction rates is essential.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Regulation of Enzyme Activity

Enzymes can be regulated in ways that either enhance or reduce their activity, allowing cells to precisely control metabolic processes. A variety of molecules influence enzyme function, and multiple regulatory mechanisms exist to adjust reaction rates in response to cellular needs and environmental conditions.

One common mechanism is **competitive inhibition** (a type of enzyme inhibition in which an inhibitor competes with the substrate for binding at the active site). In this case, the inhibitor closely resembles the substrate and temporarily occupies the active site, preventing substrate binding and slowing the reaction. Increasing the concentration of substrate can reduce the effect of competitive inhibition.

Another mechanism is **noncompetitive inhibition** (a form of inhibition in which an inhibitor binds to a site other than the active site). These inhibitors bind to an **allosteric site** (a regulatory region distinct from the active site), causing a change in the enzyme's shape that reduces its catalytic efficiency. Because the substrate does not compete for the same binding site, increasing substrate concentration does not overcome noncompetitive inhibition.

Some enzymes are regulated through **allosteric regulation** (control of enzyme activity through binding of regulatory molecules at sites other than the active site). Many allosterically regulated enzymes consist of multiple protein subunits. When an allosteric inhibitor binds, it induces a conformational change that alters all active sites, reducing their affinity for the substrate. In contrast,

allosteric activators bind to regulatory sites and promote conformational changes that increase substrate affinity and enhance enzyme activity. These mechanisms allow cells to rapidly and coordinately regulate entire metabolic pathways.

Many enzymes also require helper molecules to function properly. These helpers promote the correct enzyme structure and enable catalysis. **Cofactors** (inorganic ions required for enzyme activity) include metal ions such as magnesium (Mg^{2+}), potassium (K^{+}), and zinc (Zn^{2+}). For example, the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, which plays a role in carbon dioxide transport and pH regulation, requires zinc to function efficiently.

Coenzymes (organic, carbon-based molecules required for enzyme activity) are often derived from dietary vitamins. For instance, **NAD+** (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide), derived from niacin (vitamin B_3), and **FAD (flavin adenine dinucleotide)**, derived from riboflavin (vitamin B_2), serve as electron carriers in metabolic reactions.

Because enzyme activity depends on the availability of appropriate cofactors and coenzymes, metabolism is closely linked to nutrient availability. Maintaining proper levels of these molecules is essential for optimizing enzyme performance, metabolic efficiency, and product yield.

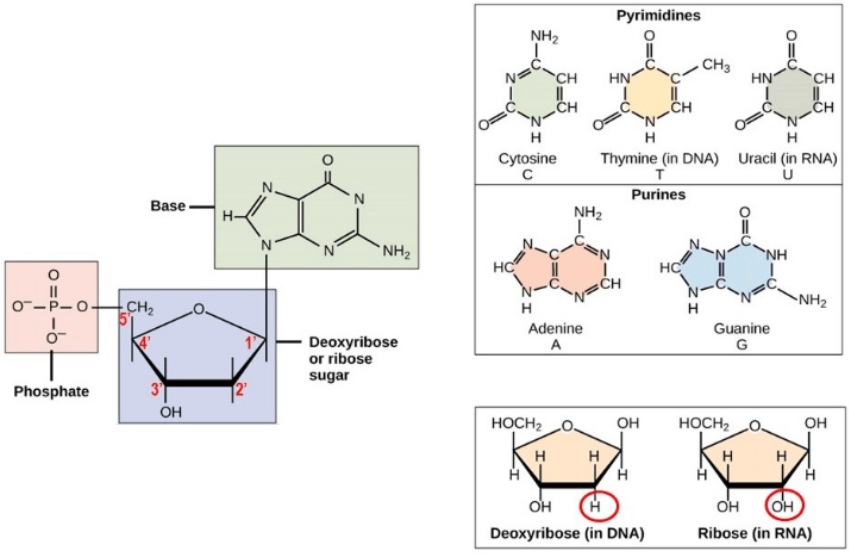
Attributions:
"Enzymes: The Biological Spark" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
“Enzymes,” by Bozeman Science, YouTube video, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ok9esggzN18. YouTube Standard License. No modifications were made.

This page titled 3.9.3.1: Enzymes is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

3.9.4: NUCLEIC ACIDS

Nucleic acids (macromolecules that store, transmit, and help express genetic information) are essential to all forms of life. They provide the instructions that guide cell structure, function, growth, and reproduction. The two main types of nucleic acids are DNA and RNA, each playing a distinct but interconnected role in heredity and protein production.

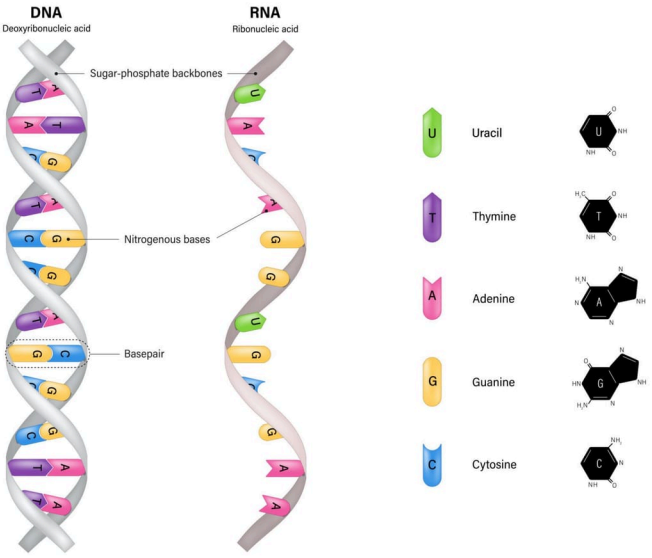
The monomers of nucleic acids are **nucleotides** (small molecules composed of three parts: a five-carbon sugar, a phosphate group, and a nitrogenous base). There are five common nitrogenous bases found in nucleic acids: adenine, guanine, cytosine, thymine, and uracil. DNA contains adenine, guanine, cytosine, and thymine, while RNA contains adenine, guanine, cytosine, and uracil. The sugar component also differs: DNA contains deoxyribose, whereas RNA contains ribose.



Nucleotides are joined together by **dehydration synthesis** (a chemical reaction in which a water molecule is removed) to form **phosphodiester bonds** (covalent bonds that link the sugar of one nucleotide to the phosphate group of the next). This bonding creates a sugar-phosphate backbone, producing a **polynucleotide** (a long chain of nucleotides). The sequence of nitrogenous bases along this backbone encodes genetic information.

Nucleic acids can be broken down into individual nucleotides through **hydrolysis** (a chemical reaction in which water is added to break a covalent bond). This process allows cells to recycle nucleotides for the synthesis of new nucleic acids or other molecules.

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) is the primary genetic material in most organisms. It typically exists as a double-stranded molecule arranged in a double helix, with complementary base pairing between strands. DNA stores long-term genetic information, such as instructions for making proteins. RNA (ribonucleic acid), in contrast, is usually single stranded and plays an active role in gene expression. Examples include messenger RNA, which carries instructions from DNA to the ribosome; transfer RNA, which delivers amino acids during protein synthesis; and ribosomal RNA, which forms part of the ribosome itself.



Together, nucleic acids ensure that genetic information is accurately stored, transmitted, and translated into functional molecules. Their precise structure and sequence make them central to heredity, cellular regulation, and biotechnology applications such as genetic testing, gene therapy, and DNA sequencing.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/C..._Nucleic_Acids
AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
Nucleic Acids by Bozeman Science, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NNASRkIU5Fw**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

3.9.4.1: ATP

This page titled 3.9.4: Nucleic Acids is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

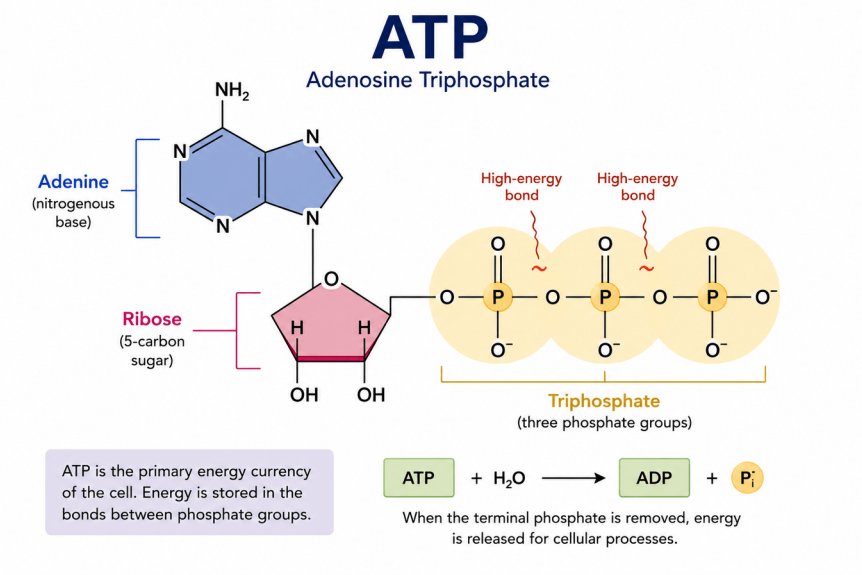
3.9.4.1: ATP

ATP (adenosine triphosphate) is a small and relatively simple molecule, yet the chemical bonds it contains store energy that can be released rapidly to perform cellular work. For this reason, **ATP** (a small molecule that serves as the primary energy currency of the cell) is often compared to money in an economy. Just as money is exchanged to obtain goods and services, cells rely on ATP to power the energy-requiring reactions necessary for growth, maintenance, and production. Nearly all cellular processes relevant to biotechnology depend directly on ATP.

Cells cannot safely store large amounts of free energy, as excess energy would be released as heat and disrupt normal cellular function. Instead, energy is stored in a stable and controlled form within ATP molecules. In this way, ATP functions similarly to a rechargeable battery, holding energy until it is needed for cellular work.

When ATP is broken down through the removal of its terminal phosphate group, energy is released. ATP is converted into **ADP** (adenosine diphosphate) (a lower-energy molecule formed when one phosphate group is removed from ATP) and an inorganic phosphate. The released energy is often coupled to cellular reactions by transferring the phosphate group to another molecule, activating it and enabling biochemical processes to proceed. Through this mechanism, ATP powers essential functions such as biosynthesis, active transport across membranes, and mechanical work within the cell.

ATP is not stored in large quantities but is continuously regenerated. Energy released during catabolic reactions, including cellular respiration and fermentation, is used to reform ATP from ADP. This ongoing ATP–ADP cycle allows cells to efficiently adjust to changing metabolic demands while maintaining energy balance.



ATP and Biotechnology Applications

For biotechnologist, ATP availability is a critical determinant of cellular performance and productivity. The rate at which a cell can generate and recycle ATP often limits growth rate and product formation. As a result, industrial fermentation systems are designed to optimize ATP production in order to support high cell densities and maximize yields of products such as enzymes, pharmaceuticals, and biofuels. Understanding ATP cycling is therefore central to fermentation design and metabolic engineering.

Attribution: "ATP" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 3.9.4.1: ATP is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4: EUKARYOTIC AND PROKARYOTIC CELLS

The cell is the basic unit of life and the foundation of all biological systems. All living organisms, from single-celled bacteria to complex multicellular plants and animals, rely on cellular processes to survive, grow, and reproduce. Cells are the smallest units capable of carrying out the chemical reactions that sustain life, making them the primary focus of biotechnology.

This principle is captured in **cell theory** (a foundational principle stating that all living organisms are composed of cells, the cell is the basic unit of structure and function, and all cells arise from preexisting cells). Cell theory explains how life is organized and perpetuated and provides the biological framework that allows scientists to grow, modify, and apply cells for practical purposes.

Although all organisms are made of cells, cells differ in structure and complexity. Based on these differences, cells are classified as **prokaryotic cells** (cells that lack a membrane-bound nucleus and organelles) or **eukaryotic cells** (cells that contain a membrane-bound nucleus and specialized organelles). These structural distinctions are critical in biotechnology because they influence how cells are engineered, cultured, and used to produce products such as pharmaceuticals, enzymes, vaccines, and biofuels

4.1: Shared Features

4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells

4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells

4.4: Prokaryotic Cells

4.5: Simalarities and Differences

This page titled 4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4.1: Shared Features

Shared Features of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells share several fundamental characteristics that reflect their common biological origins and define cellular life. All cells are enclosed by a **plasma membrane** (a selectively permeable barrier that separates the internal contents of the cell from the external environment), which is essential for maintaining homeostasis. The plasma membrane is primarily composed of **phospholipids** (amphipathic molecules with hydrophilic heads and hydrophobic tails) arranged in a bilayer that forms the basic structural framework of the membrane. Embedded within this bilayer are **proteins** (molecules that perform functions such as transport, signaling, and enzymatic activity), which give the membrane its selective permeability. Many membranes also contain **carbohydrates** (short sugar chains attached to lipids or proteins) that are involved in cell recognition and communication.

Both cell types contain **cytoplasm** (the semi-fluid interior of the cell where metabolic reactions occur), providing a medium for enzymes, nutrients, and cellular structures to interact. Within the cytoplasm are **ribosomes** (molecular complexes responsible for protein synthesis), which are essential in all cells for producing the proteins required for growth and function.

In addition, all cells store genetic information in the form of **DNA** (deoxyribonucleic acid, the molecule that carries hereditary instructions). This genetic material directs cellular structure, metabolism, and reproduction. Although the organization of DNA differs between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, its role is universal.

Finally, both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells carry out essential life processes, including metabolism, growth, and reproduction. They require energy and raw materials and must respond to changes in their environment. These shared characteristics form the foundation of cellular biology and provide a unifying framework for understanding both simple and complex cells.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

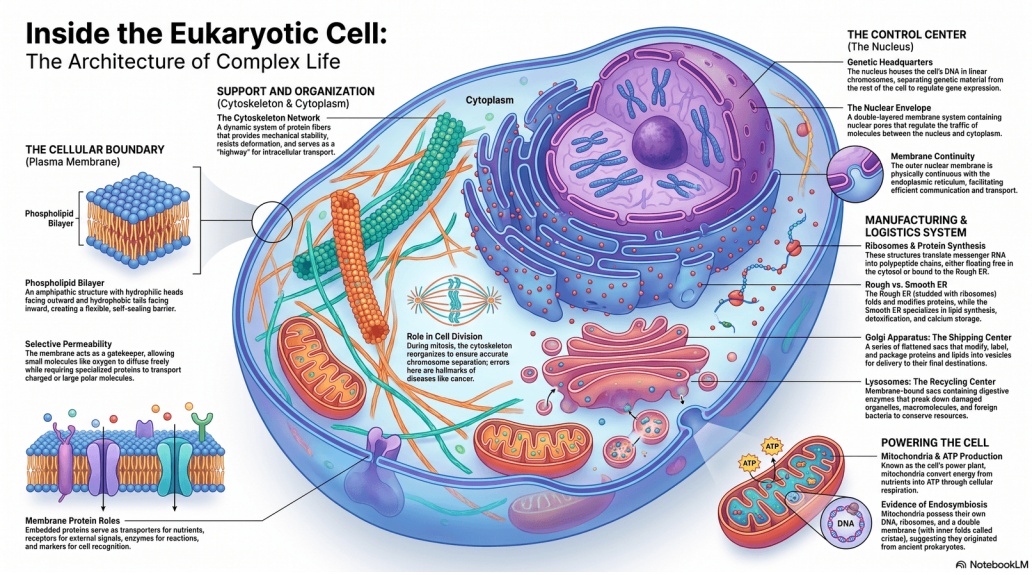
Attribution: *Prokaryotic Cell Vs Eukaryotic Cells || Difference Between Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cell* by Bio Scholar, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=a1jFo1bocYQ**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 4.1: Shared Features is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells

Eukaryotic Cells

Eukaryotic cells are larger and more complex than prokaryotic cells. They are found in animals, plants, fungi, and protists and are defined by the presence of internal, membrane-bound compartments that allow cellular processes to be organized and regulated efficiently. Each component of a eukaryotic cell has a specialized function, and together these structures support the higher levels of complexity seen in multicellular life.



The Plasma Membrane

The plasma membrane (also referred to as the cell membrane) is primarily composed of phospholipids. Each phospholipid has two chemically distinct regions: a phosphate-containing head that is hydrophilic and interacts with water, and fatty acid tails that are hydrophobic and repel water. Because it contains both regions, a phospholipid is described as **amphipathic**.Because of these properties, phospholipids naturally arrange themselves into a **phospholipid bilayer** (a double layer of phospholipids with hydrophilic heads facing outward and hydrophobic tails facing inward). In this arrangement, the hydrophilic heads interact with the watery environments inside and outside the cell, while the hydrophobic tails face each other, forming a barrier that blocks most water-soluble substances from freely crossing the plasma membrane.

This phospholipid bilayer structure is essential for cellular life. It creates a flexible yet stable boundary that separates the internal environment of the cell from the external environment. The membrane is often described as “fluid” because phospholipids can move laterally within the layer, allowing the membrane to bend, self-seal, and change shape as the cell grows, divides, or transports materials.

The hydrophobic interior of the phospholipid bilayer makes the plasma membrane selectively permeable. Small, nonpolar molecules such as oxygen and carbon dioxide can diffuse through the membrane easily, while charged or large polar molecules require specialized transport proteins. This selectivity allows the cell to control its internal composition, maintain homeostasis, and respond to environmental changes.

In addition to phospholipids various proteins are embedded in the plasma membrane. Proteins play essential roles in maintaining cell function and communication with the environment. Some membrane proteins act as **transport proteins** (molecules that move specific substances into or out of the cell), allowing ions, nutrients, and waste products to cross the membrane. Others function as **receptors** (proteins that bind signaling molecules), enabling cells to detect and respond to external signals. Membrane proteins also serve as **enzymes** (proteins that speed up chemical reactions), anchors that help maintain cell shape, and markers used in **cell recognition** (the ability of cells to identify and interact with one another). Together, the phospholipid bilayer and its associated proteins give the plasma membrane selective permeability, allowing the cell to regulate its internal environment.

Cytoplasm
The cytoplasm (the region of the cell between the plasma membrane and the nucleus) includes the cytosol and all membrane-bound organelles. The cytosol is a water-rich environment containing enzymes, ions, and metabolites that support many biochemical reactions.

Rather than being an unstructured space, the cytoplasm is highly organized (cytoskeleton) Organelles are positioned strategically, and molecules are transported efficiently between them. This organization allows eukaryotic cells to perform many processes simultaneously, such as metabolism, signaling, and intracellular transport, without interference.

Cytoskeleton
The cytoskeleton is an internal network of protein fibers that gives the eukaryotic cell its shape, organization, and ability to move and divide. Rather than being a rigid framework, the cytoskeleton is a dynamic and constantly changing system that responds to the needs of the cell. It provides both structural support and functional pathways that allow the cell to operate efficiently. One of the most important roles of the cytoskeleton is maintaining cell shape and mechanical stability. Cells experience physical forces from their environment and from neighboring cells, and the cytoskeleton helps resist deformation while still allowing flexibility. This balance is especially important in tissues such as muscle, skin, and blood, where cells must withstand repeated stress without breaking.

The cytoskeleton is also essential for intracellular organization. Organelles are not randomly distributed within the cytoplasm; instead, they are positioned and anchored with the help of cytoskeletal elements. This organization ensures that cellular processes occur in the correct locations and that materials can be transported efficiently between different parts of the cell. Beyond structure and transport, the cytoskeleton plays a central role in Mitosis (cell division). During mitosis, cytoskeletal elements reorganize dramatically to ensure accurate chromosome separation and proper cell splitting. Errors in cytoskeletal function during division can lead to abnormal cell division, which is a hallmark of cancer and other diseases.

The cytoskeleton is also involved in cell signaling and communication. Changes in cytoskeletal organization can transmit signals from the cell surface to the nucleus, influencing gene expression and cell behavior. This integration of structure and signaling allows cells to respond quickly to environmental cues.

In biotechnology and biomedical research, the cytoskeleton is an important area of study. Many drugs target cytoskeletal components to stop rapidly dividing cells, such as cancer cells. In tissue engineering, understanding cytoskeletal dynamics helps scientists design scaffolds that guide cell growth and organization.

Nucleus
The nucleus is a membrane-bound organelle that houses the cell's genetic material (DNA) and is one of the defining features of eukaryotic cells. The DNA in the nucleus is organized into multiple linear chromosomes, allowing for sophisticated regulation of gene expression. The nucleus separates the DNA from the rest of the cellular components.

The terms **nucleus**, **nuclear envelope**, and **nuclear membrane** are closely related but refer to different levels of structure.

The **nucleus** is a membrane-bound organelle that contains the cell's genetic material and serves as the control center for gene expression and DNA replication.

The **nuclear envelope** is the double-layered membrane system that surrounds the nucleus and separates its contents from the cytoplasm. It consists of two phospholipid bilayers and includes **nuclear pores** (protein complexes that regulate the movement of molecules between the nucleus and cytoplasm).

The **nuclear membrane** refers to the individual membranes that make up the nuclear envelope. Specifically, it can describe either the inner nuclear membrane or the outer nuclear membrane. The outer nuclear membrane is continuous with the endoplasmic reticulum, while the inner nuclear membrane interacts with proteins that help organize and support the DNA.

In summary, the nucleus is the organelle, the nuclear envelope is the double membrane surrounding it, and the nuclear membrane refers to each of the two membrane layers that form the envelope.

Mitochondria
Mitochondria (organelles responsible for energy production) generate ATP through cellular respiration. They convert energy stored in carbohydrates, fats, and proteins into a form the cell can use to perform work, such as active transport, biosynthesis, and movement.

Each mitochondrion has a double membrane. The outer membrane encloses the organelle, while the inner membrane is folded into cristae, increasing surface area for energy-producing reactions. Mitochondria contain their own DNA and ribosomes, supporting the idea that they originated from ancient prokaryotic cells through endosymbiosis. In addition to energy production, mitochondria play roles in metabolism, signaling, and programmed cell death.

Endoplasmic Reticulum
The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is an extensive membrane network involved in synthesis and transport of proteins. The ER is continuous with the outer nuclear envelope which spans much of the cytoplasm. The rough endoplasmic reticulum rER is covered with ribosomes and is responsible for synthesizing proteins that will be secreted out of the cell, inserted into cellular membranes, or delivered to other organelles. As proteins synthesized by ribosomes attached to the ER membrane move through the ER they begin folding into their correct shapes and undergo early chemical modifications.

The smooth endoplasmic reticulum (sER) lacks ribosomes and specializes in lipid and steroid synthesis, detoxification of harmful substances, and storage of calcium ions. In liver cells, smooth ER enzymes help process drugs and toxins, while in muscle cells, calcium storage is essential for muscle contraction.

Golgi Apparatus
The Golgi apparatus (a series of flattened membrane sacs) functions as the cell's modification, sorting, and shipping center. Proteins and lipids produced in the ER are transported to the Golgi, where they are chemically modified, labeled, and packaged into vesicles.

The Golgi ensures that each molecule reaches its correct destination, such as the plasma membrane, lysosomes, or outside the cell. This precise targeting system is critical for secretion, membrane maintenance, and communication between cells.

Ribosomes
Ribosomes (structures responsible for protein synthesis) are found free in the cytoplasm or attached to the rough endoplasmic reticulum. Ribosomes translate messenger RNA into polypeptide chains, which then fold into functional proteins. Free ribosomes typically produce proteins used within the cytoplasm, while bound ribosomes synthesize proteins destined for secretion or embodied in membranes. Because proteins carry out most cellular functions, ribosomes are essential to all living cells.

Lysosomes
Lysosomes (membrane-bound organelles containing digestive enzymes) serve as the recycling centers of the cell. They break down damaged organelles, worn-out macromolecules, and foreign particles such as bacteria. By recycling these materials, lysosomes conserve resources and help maintain cellular health. They also play important roles in immune responses and programmed cell death, processes that are essential for development and disease prevention.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:

AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
Animal Cell Structure ans Function by biologyexam4u.com, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zVFVoOEOhcw. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

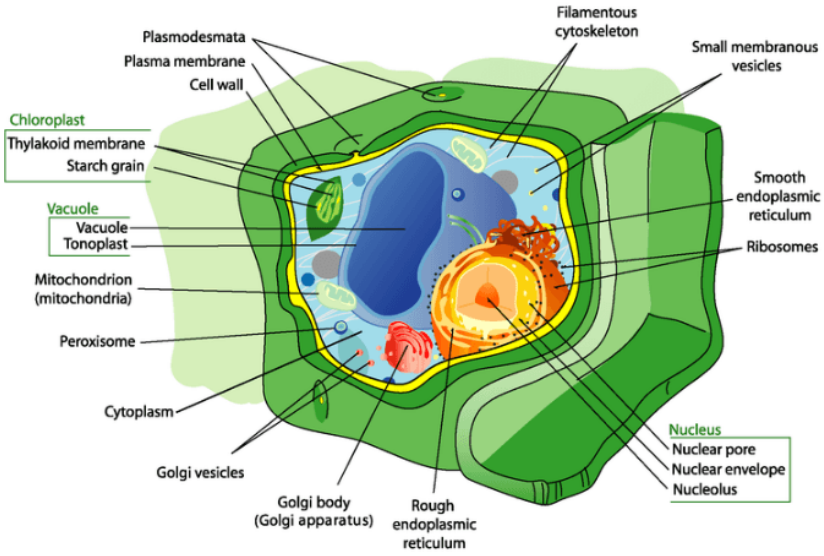
This page titled 4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4.3: Eukaryotic Plant Cells

Plant cells are eukaryotic and have many of the structures found in animal cells.

- Plasma membrane
- Nucleus and nucleolus
- Mitochondria
- Ribosomes
- Endoplasmic reticulum
- Golgi apparatus
- Peroxisomes (the crystal in the electron micrograph is enclosed within a peroxisome)
- Microtubules

Plant cells differ from animal cells as they lack centrioles and intermediate filament; they also do not have plastids and a cell wall and large vacuoles.



Plasmids

Chloroplasts are the most familiar plastids. They are usually disk-shaped and about 5-8 µm in diameter and 2-4 µm thick. A typical plant cell has 20-40 of them. Chloroplasts are green because they contain chlorophylls — the pigments that harvest the light used in photosynthesis. Chloroplasts are probably the descendants of cyanobacteria that took up residence in the ancestor of the plants. Plant cells that are not engaged in photosynthesis also have plastids that serve other functions such as storing starch (when they are called **leucoplasts**) and storing the carotenoids that give flowers and fruits their color (when they are called **chromoplasts**)

The Cell Wall

The rigid cell wall of plants is made of fibrils of cellulose embedded in a matrix of several other kinds of polymers such as pectin and lignin. The linear nature of cellulose molecules and the many opportunities for side-to-side intermolecular hydrogen bonding provide just what one would want to build long and stiff fibrils.

- **Primary cell walls:** The cell walls of parenchyma and meristems are uniform in thickness and are primary cell walls. Although each cell appears encased within a box, in fact primary cell walls are perforated permitting plasmodesmata to connect adjacent cells.

- **Secondary cell walls:** The cells of sclerenchyma, collenchyma and xylem have secondary deposits of lignified cellulose which provide mechanical strength to the tissue.

Vacuoles

Vacuoles are enclosed by a single membrane. Young plant cells often contain many small vacuoles, but as the cells mature, these unite to form a large **central vacuole**. Vacuoles serve several functions such as:

- storing foods (e.g., proteins in seeds)
- storing wastes
- storing malic acid in CAM plants
- storing various ions (e.g., calcium, sodium, iron) which, among other functions, helps to
- maintain turgor in the cell.

Plant cells avoid bursting in hypotonic surroundings by their strong cell walls. These allow the build-up of **turgor** within the cell. Loss of turgor causes wilting.

Plasmolysis

When a freshwater (or terrestrial) plant is placed in sea water, its cells quickly lose turgor and the plant wilts. This is because sea water is hypertonic to the cytoplasm. As water diffuses from the cytoplasm into the sea water, the cells shrink — drawing their plasma membrane away from the cell wall.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

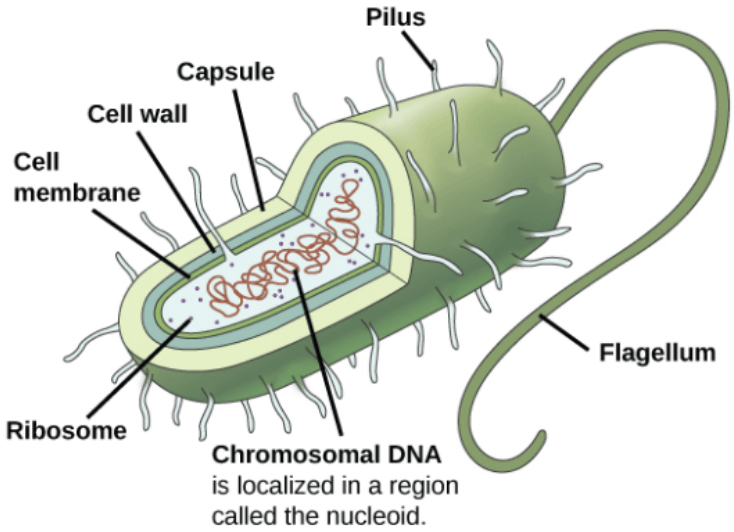
Attributions:
4.2.7: Plant Cells is shared under a CC BY 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by John W. Kimball via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.16: Plant Cells by John W. Kimball is licensed CC BY 3.0. Original source: https://www.biology-pages.info/.

This page titled 4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4.4: Prokaryotic Cells

Prokaryotic cells are the simplest cellular forms capable of independent life. They are exceptionally efficient and adaptable making them well suited for biotechnology applications. Their structure reflects an evolutionary design that emphasizes survival, rapid growth, and flexibility rather than complexity. Each component of a prokaryotic cell plays a specific and interconnected role that allows the cell to carry out all the characteristics of life, even without the internal compartments found in eukaryotic cells.



External Layers

Plasma Membrane
The plasma membrane (a selectively permeable membrane that regulates the movement of substances into and out of the cell) is essential for maintaining internal stability. Nutrients such as sugars, amino acids, and ions pass through the membrane using specific transport proteins, while waste products are removed to prevent toxic buildup. In prokaryotic cells, the plasma membrane has an additional critical role in energy production. Because prokaryotes lack mitochondria, the membrane contains enzymes and electron transport proteins that generate ATP, the cell's main energy source. This makes the plasma membrane central to both metabolism and survival.

While all bacteria have a plasma membrane, the structures located outside of it vary widely among species. These differences reflect how bacteria adapt to different environments, interact with hosts, and survive stress.

Cell Wall
Surrounding the plasma membrane is the cell wall (a rigid structure that provides shape and mechanical strength). For most bacteria, the cell wall is composed of peptidoglycan (a rigid polymer composed of repeating sugars and short peptides). Peptidoglycan prevents the cell from bursting due to osmotic pressure, which occurs when water moves into the cell from a lower-salt environment. The cell wall also helps determine cell shape, such as spherical, rod-shaped, or spiral forms. Differences in cell wall structure influence how bacteria respond to environmental stress and are important in medical treatment, as many antibiotics target cell wall synthesis.

Capsule
Additional surface structures vary from species to species. Some bacteria possess a capsule, which is a sticky outer coating made of polysaccharides or proteins. Capsules can help bacteria avoid immune defenses, resist dehydration, and attach to surfaces, but many bacteria do not have capsules at all.

Flagella

Flagella are long, whip-like structures that allow some bacteria to move toward favorable conditions or away from harmful environments. Not all bacteria are motile, and many species completely lack flagella. Among bacteria that do have flagella, the number and arrangement of these structures can differ.

Pili or **fimbriae**
Pili or fimbriae are short, hair-like projections that help bacteria attach to surfaces or to other cells. Certain pili are involved in the transfer of genetic material between bacteria, while others function mainly in attachment. As with other surface features, pili are present in some bacteria and absent in others.

Outer membrane
Some bacteria also have an outer membrane, an additional membrane located outside the cell wall. This feature is characteristic of certain bacterial groups and can influence antibiotic resistance and interactions with the immune system.

Internal Features

Cytoplasm
The cytoplasm (the semi-fluid interior of the cell enclosed by the plasma membrane) is where most cellular processes take place. It contains water, enzymes, nutrients, and dissolved molecules necessary for metabolism. Because prokaryotic cells lack membrane-bound organelles such as mitochondria, all metabolic pathways—including energy production, biosynthesis of cellular components, and protein synthesis—occur directly in the cytoplasm or plasma membrane.

This organization allows enzymes and substrates to remain in close proximity, increasing the efficiency of chemical reactions. As a result, prokaryotic cells can grow and reproduce rapidly when conditions are favorable. The cytoplasm also contains structural elements that help organize the cell's internal components, even in the absence of organelles.

Cytoskeleton
Much simpler than the cytoskeleton found in eukaryotic cells. The bacterial cytoskeleton is made up of protein filaments that help maintain cell shape, organize internal components, and assist with cell division. Although bacterial cytoskeletal proteins are smaller and less complex, they are essential for proper cell structure and function, and their discovery changed the earlier belief that prokaryotic cells lacked internal organization.

Nucleoid
The region of a prokaryotic cell where the cell's DNA is located. Unlike the nucleus in eukaryotic cells, the nucleoid is not surrounded by a membrane. Instead, it is an irregularly shaped area within the cytoplasm.

DNA
The is typically a single, circular chromosome that carries the instructions needed for cellular structure, metabolism, reproduction, and response to environmental changes.

Plasmid
In addition to the chromosome, many prokaryotic cells contain plasmids (small, circular DNA molecules separate from the main chromosome). Plasmids often carry genes that provide survival advantages, such as resistance to antibiotics, tolerance to toxins, or the ability to metabolize unusual nutrients. These plasmids can be transferred between cells, allowing beneficial traits to spread rapidly through a population. This ability to share genetic information is a key factor in the adaptability and evolutionary success of prokaryotic organisms.

Ribosomes
All prokaryotic cells contain ribosomes (molecular structures responsible for protein synthesis). Prokaryotic ribosomes are smaller than those found in eukaryotic cells, but they are highly efficient. Prokaryotic ribosomes are described as 70S ribosomes, which are composed of a 50S large subunit and a 30S small subunit. These ribosomes are found free in the cytoplasm and are responsible for translating messenger RNA directly as it is produced. Ribosomes translate genetic instructions into proteins, which carry out nearly all cellular functions. Proteins act as enzymes, structural components, transporters, and regulatory molecules. The differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes are important in medicine, as many antibiotics specifically target bacterial ribosomes without affecting human cells. This selective targeting helps eliminate bacterial infections while minimizing harm to the host.

Inclusions
Prokaryotic cells often contain inclusions (internal storage granules that store excess nutrients such as carbon, phosphorus, or

sulfur). These storage structures allow cells to survive when external nutrient supplies are limited. By storing resources during times of abundance, prokaryotic cells can maintain metabolism and growth during unfavorable conditions.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

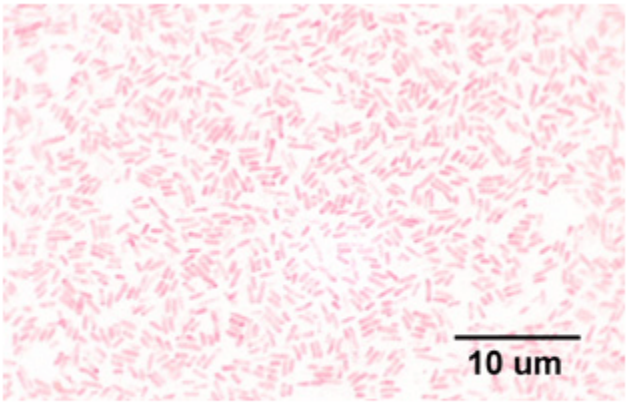
View this YouTube Video online

Examples of Biotechnology Applications of Prokaryotic Cells

Prokaryotic cells are widely used in biotechnology because they grow quickly, are easy to culture, and can be genetically manipulated. Two of the most important and well-studied prokaryotic organisms in biotechnology are *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. Although both are bacteria, they are used in very different ways based on their biological characteristics and relevance to human health.

Escherichia coli (E. coli)

Escherichia coli is a rod-shaped bacterium commonly found in the intestines of humans and other animals. Most strains are harmless and play a role in digestion and vitamin production, although some strains can cause illness. *E. coli* is one of the most widely studied prokaryotic cells and is a cornerstone of biotechnology. Its rapid growth and well-understood genetics make it an ideal organism for producing proteins such as insulin, enzymes, and vaccines.



Attribution:https://med.libretexts.org/Courses/V...cherichia_coli

Escherichia coli is one of the most widely used organisms in biotechnology and molecular biology. Its genetics are well understood, it grows rapidly under laboratory conditions, and it can be easily engineered to produce useful biological products.

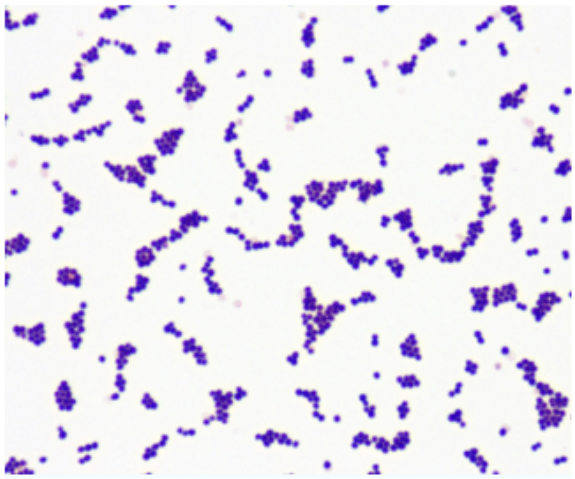
One of the most important applications of *E. coli* is **recombinant protein production** (the use of genetically engineered cells to produce proteins from another organism). Scientists can insert a human gene, such as the gene for insulin, into *E. coli*. The bacterial cells then use their normal cellular machinery to produce large quantities of human insulin, which can be purified and used to treat people with diabetes. This approach is also used to produce growth hormones, enzymes, and components of vaccines.

E. coli is also widely used in **genetic engineering and research**. It serves as a model organism for studying DNA replication, gene regulation, and protein expression. In teaching and research laboratories, *E. coli* is often used to practice techniques such as plasmid transformation, gene cloning, and DNA sequencing. These skills form the foundation of many biotechnology careers.

In industrial biotechnology, *E. coli* is used to produce enzymes for applications such as food processing, biofuel production, and waste treatment. Its fast growth rate and ability to be genetically optimized make it a cost-effective biological factory.

Staphylococcus aureus

Staphylococcus aureus is a spherical bacterium that commonly grows in clusters. It is part of the normal microbiota on



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/Learning_...Labs_II/01%3A_

human skin and in the nasal passages, but it can cause infections if it enters the body through cuts or wounds. This organism is frequently studied in medical microbiology because of its ability to develop antibiotic resistance. Studying *S. aureus* helps scientists understand bacterial pathogenesis, immune responses, and the importance of ethical antibiotic use.

Unlike *E. coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus* is not typically used as a production organism because it can cause disease. Instead, it plays an important role in biotechnology through research, testing, and medical applications.

One major use of *S. aureus* is in **antibiotic development and testing**. Because this bacterium is known for developing antibiotic resistance, it is commonly used in laboratories to evaluate the effectiveness of new antimicrobial drugs. By studying how *S. aureus* responds to antibiotics, scientists can identify new treatment strategies and better understand resistance mechanisms.

S. aureus is also used in **vaccine and immune system research**. Scientists study its surface proteins and toxins to understand how the bacterium interacts with the human immune system. This research supports the development of vaccines and immune-based therapies designed to prevent or reduce severe infections.

In biotechnology research, components produced by *S. aureus*, such as specific enzymes and proteins, are used as tools in molecular biology. For example, certain proteins derived from *S. aureus* are used in laboratory techniques that study antibody binding and immune responses.

Atributions:
https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv...karyotic_Cells

This page titled 4.4: Prokaryotic Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

4.5: Simalarities and Differences

All cells share fundamental features—a plasma membrane, cytoplasm, DNA, and ribosomes—but differ in their internal organization. Prokaryotic cells lack a nucleus and membrane-bound organelles, whereas plant and animal cells are eukaryotic and contain specialized organelles. Plant cells are distinguished by the presence of a cellulose cell wall, chloroplasts, and a large central vacuole, while animal cells lack a cell wall and chloroplasts but typically contain lysosomes and exhibit greater diversity in cell shape.

Characteristic	Prokaryotic Cells	Eukaryotic Plant Cells	Eukaryotic Animal Cells
Domain	Bacteria and Archaea	Eukarya	Eukarya
Typical Size	0.1–5 µm	10–100 µm	10–100 µm
Nucleus	No; DNA is located in a nucleoid region	Yes	Yes
DNA	Single circular chromosome; may contain plasmids	Multiple linear chromosomes	Multiple linear chromosomes
Membrane-Bound Organelles	Absent	Present	Present
Cell Membrane	Present	Present	Present
Cell Wall	Usually present; composed of peptidoglycan (bacteria) or other polymers (archaea)	Present; composed primarily of cellulose	Absent
Cytoplasm	Present	Present	Present
Ribosomes	70S	80S	80S
Mitochondria	Absent	Present	Present
Chloroplasts	Absent	Present (photosynthetic cells)	Absent
Endoplasmic Reticulum	Absent	Present	Present
Golgi Apparatus	Absent	Present	Present
Lysosomes	Absent	Rare; functions often performed by the central vacuole	Present
Vacuoles	Generally absent or very small	One large central vacuole	Small, numerous vacuoles if present
Cytoskeleton	Simple	Complex	Complex
Flagella	May be present; simple structure	Rare (found in some plant sperm cells)	May be present; complex structure in some cells
Cilia	Absent	Rare	Common on certain specialized cells
Cell Shape	Usually spherical, rod-shaped, or spiral	Typically rectangular or box-like	Variable; often rounded or irregular
Method of Cell Division	Binary fission	Mitosis and meiosis	Mitosis and meiosis
Energy Production	Plasma membrane	Mitochondria and chloroplasts	Mitochondria
Photosynthesis	Some species	Yes (in photosynthetic cells)	No

Characteristic	Prokaryotic Cells	Eukaryotic Plant Cells	Eukaryotic Animal Cells
Storage Molecules	Glycogen, polyphosphate, lipid granules	Starch	Glycogen
Examples	*Escherichia coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus*	Leaf cells, root cells	Muscle cells, neurons, epithelial cells

Key similarities

Feature	Prokaryotic Cells	Plant Cells	Animal Cells
Plasma membrane	✓	✓	✓
Cytoplasm	✓	✓	✓
DNA	✓	✓	✓
Ribosomes	✓	✓	✓
Ability to reproduce	✓	✓	✓
Carry out metabolism	✓	✓	✓
Respond to the environment	✓	✓	✓

Attributions:
AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College.

This page titled 4.5: Simalarities and Differences is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5: GENES, GENOMES AND THE EPIGENOME

Introduction to Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome

Genes are the fundamental units of biological information. They determine inherited traits, guide cellular function, and provide the instructions necessary for life. At their core, genes are segments of DNA that contain the coded information required to build functional molecules within the cell.

Genes are arranged along chromosomes and, collectively, form an organism's genome. The epigenome adds an additional layer of regulation by controlling how genetic information is used within a cell. While the genome provides the instructions, the epigenome determines when, where, and how strongly those instructions are expressed.

In biotechnology, understanding genes is foundational. By studying gene structure, regulation, and function, scientists can manipulate genetic information to produce therapeutic proteins, engineer crops with improved traits, design diagnostic tools, and develop gene-based treatments. Genes therefore represent not only the blueprint of life but also the foundation of modern biotechnology.

5.1: Genomes

5.2: Genes

5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization

5.2.2: Gene Expression

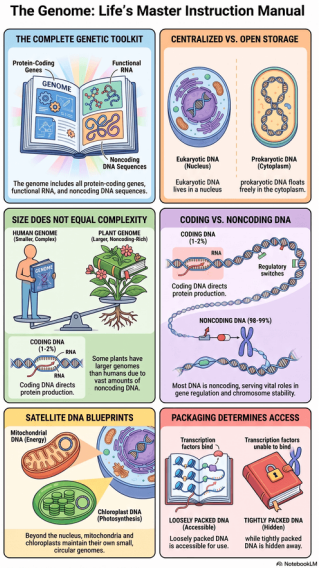
5.3: Epigenome

This page titled 5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5.1: Genomes

Genomes: The Complete Set of Genetic Information

While a gene is a specific segment of DNA that contains instructions for a functional product, a genome represents the entire collection of genetic material within an organism. If a gene can be thought of as a single recipe, the genome is the complete cookbook. Understanding genomes allows scientists to study how genes work together, how organisms develop and evolve, and how genetic variation influences traits and health.



What Is a Genome?

A **genome** (the complete set of genetic material in an organism, including all genes and noncoding DNA) contains all of the DNA required to build and maintain that organism.

In most organisms, the genome includes:

- All protein-coding genes
- Genes that produce functional RNA molecules
- Regulatory DNA sequences
- Noncoding regions that may play structural or regulatory roles

The genome is stored in chromosomes. In eukaryotic organisms such as humans, DNA is contained within a nucleus and organized into multiple linear chromosomes. In prokaryotic organisms such as bacteria, the genome typically consists of a single circular chromosome located in the cytoplasm.

Genome Size and Complexity

Genome size varies widely among organisms. Some bacteria have genomes containing only a few million base pairs of DNA, while plants and animals may have billions of base pairs. Interestingly, genome size does not always correlate with organism complexity. Some plants have much larger genomes than humans. This is because genomes contain varying amounts of noncoding DNA, repetitive sequences, and duplicated regions. The total amount of DNA in a genome is often measured in base pairs, referring to the paired nucleotides that form the DNA double helix.

Coding and Noncoding DNA

Only a portion of many eukaryotic genomes consists of protein-coding genes. A significant amount of DNA does not directly code for proteins. This noncoding DNA includes:

- Introns within genes
- Regulatory sequences that control gene activity
- Repetitive DNA sequences
- Structural elements important for chromosome stability

Although noncoding DNA does not produce proteins, it often plays important roles in gene regulation, chromosome organization, and genome stability

Organization of the Genome

Within chromosomes, genes are arranged in a linear sequence. Each gene occupies a specific position called a locus. Genes may be separated by large stretches of noncoding DNA. In addition to the nuclear genome, some organisms have additional genomes. For example, mitochondria contain their own small circular DNA molecules, known as mitochondrial genomes. In plants, chloroplasts also contain their own DNA. The way DNA is packaged into chromatin affects how accessible genes are for expression. DNA that is tightly packed is less accessible, while loosely packed DNA is more readily used by the cell.

The Human Genome

The human genome contains approximately 3 billion base pairs organized into 23 pairs of chromosomes. It includes tens of thousands of genes, along with extensive regulatory and noncoding regions. The completion of the Human Genome Project in 2003 provided a reference sequence for the human genome. This achievement significantly advanced our understanding of genetics, inheritance, and disease. Although individuals of the same species share most of their DNA sequence, small differences exist. These variations contribute to diversity in physical traits, disease susceptibility, and other characteristics. A common type of variation is a single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), which is a difference in a single DNA base between individuals. Larger variations can include insertions, deletions, or duplications of DNA segments. Studying genomic variation helps scientists understand evolution, population genetics, and inherited conditions.

Human Genome Project

The **Human Genome Project (an international scientific effort to map and sequence all human genes)** was a landmark achievement in biotechnology. Completed in 2003, this project provided a comprehensive reference of the human genetic code. One of the most important outcomes of the Human Genome Project was the identification of genes associated with a wide range of diseases. Researchers discovered that **diseases have been identified on all chromosomes**, meaning that genetic disorders are not limited to a single region of the genome. This discovery highlighted the complexity of human disease. Some conditions are linked to mutations in a single gene, while others involve multiple genes across different chromosomes. The availability of the full genome sequence has allowed scientists to locate disease-associated genes more quickly and accurately.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

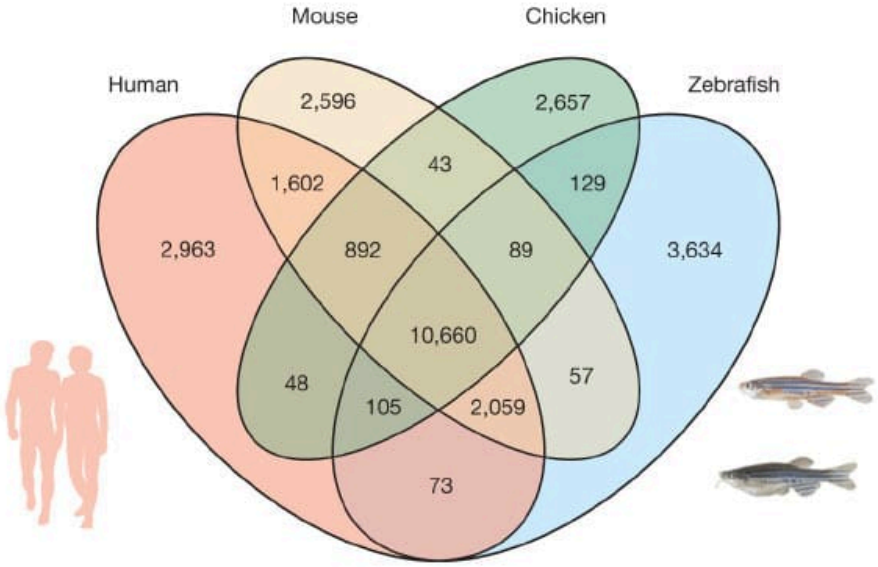
Genetic Similarities Between Humans and Animals

Humans share a remarkable degree of genetic similarity with other animals. This similarity is not limited to closely related species but extends across a wide range of organisms.

For example, humans share approximately:

- 98–99% of their DNA with chimpanzees
- About 85–90% of their genes with mice
- A significant number of genes with zebrafish, particularly those involved in development
- Even basic cellular genes with organisms like fruit flies

These similarities are explained by **homologous genes (genes in different species that originated from a common ancestor and often retain similar functions)**. Homologous genes may not be identical, but they often perform comparable roles in different organisms. This genetic overlap is especially evident in genes that regulate development. For instance, genes that control body structure and organ formation are highly conserved. As a result, studying how these genes function in animals can provide insight into human development and congenital disorders. In addition to structural genes, many disease-related genes are also conserved. This allows researchers to create animal models that mimic human diseases by altering or disrupting specific genes. For example, mice can be engineered to carry mutations associated with human cancers or neurological disorders, making them valuable tools for studying disease progression and testing treatments. Another important concept is gene expression. While many genes are shared, differences in when and where genes are turned on or off can lead to major differences between species. This helps explain how organisms with similar genetic material can develop into very different forms.



Why Gene Commonality Matters in Biotechnology

The shared genetic foundation among species has practical and far-reaching implications.

Because genes function similarly across organisms, scientists can use **model organisms (non-human species used to study biological processes and diseases relevant to humans)** to investigate gene function, disease mechanisms, and potential treatments. Research conducted in animals often provides the first insights into how a gene behaves in humans. Gene commonality also enables genetic engineering across species. For example, a human gene can be inserted into an animal to produce a human protein, such as insulin or antibodies. This cross-species compatibility is essential for many biotechnological applications. Furthermore, modern gene-editing technologies such as CRISPR allow precise modification of genes in different organisms. Because of shared gene function, these edits can reveal how specific genes contribute to health and disease.

Limitations and Considerations

While genetic similarities are powerful, they are not absolute. Differences in gene regulation, physiology, and environmental interactions can influence how genes function in different species. As a result, not all findings from animal models translate directly to humans.

Additionally, ethical considerations must be taken into account when using animals in research, especially when genetic modifications are involved. Responsible use of biotechnology requires balancing scientific advancement with animal welfare and societal concerns.

Attributions

AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

***The Human Genome Project* by FuseSchool, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-hryHoTIHak. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.**

This page titled 5.1: Genomes is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5.2: GENES

Genes: The Fundamental Units of Biological Information

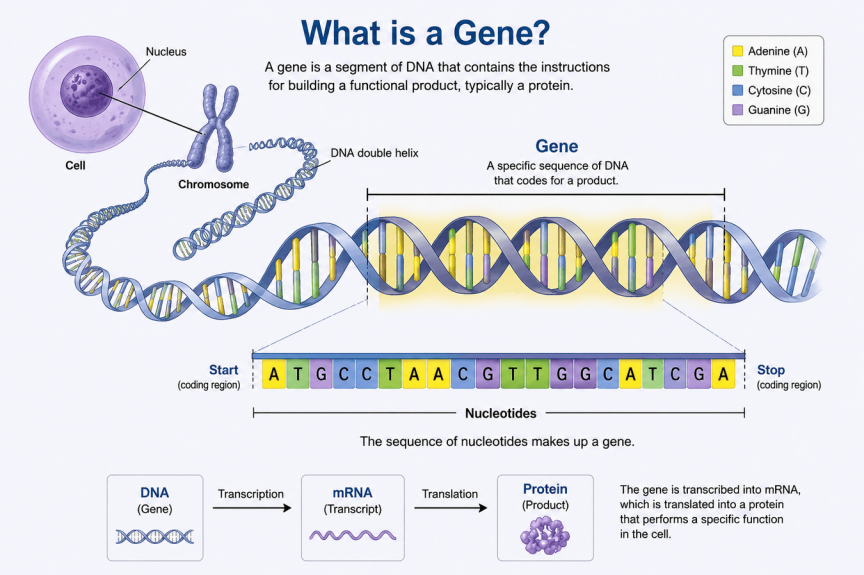
Genes are central to understanding how life functions at the molecular level. They explain how traits are inherited, how cells carry out specialized roles, and how organisms grow, develop, and respond to their environment. A clear understanding of genes provides the foundation for studying genetics, cell biology, evolution, and medicine.

What Is a Gene?

A **gene** (a specific segment of DNA that contains the instructions for producing a functional product, typically a protein or functional RNA molecule) is the basic unit of heredity. Genes determine inherited characteristics and direct the structure and function of cells. At their most basic level, genes store biological information. However, they are not static pieces of DNA. Genes are dynamic units that are carefully regulated and interpreted within living cells.

Genes are composed of DNA, which is built from nucleotide subunits arranged in a precise sequence. This sequence functions as a molecular code. The order of nucleotides determines the order of amino acids in a protein, and the structure of that protein determines its function. Because proteins perform most of the essential tasks in cells—such as catalyzing chemical reactions, forming structural components, and transmitting signals—genes ultimately influence nearly every biological process.

Not all genes code for proteins. Some genes produce functional RNA molecules that play regulatory or structural roles within the cell. Therefore, a gene is defined by the functional product it produces rather than solely by protein production.



Attributions:

AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization

5.2.2: Gene Expression

This page titled 5.2: Genes is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization

Prokaryotic Gene Organization

Prokaryotic organisms, such as bacteria, have a relatively simple and efficient gene structure that allows them to respond quickly to changes in their environment. A typical prokaryotic gene consists of three main regions: a promoter, a coding sequence, and a terminator. The promoter is a specific DNA sequence located before the gene that serves as a binding site for RNA polymerase, the enzyme responsible for transcription. The coding sequence contains the genetic instructions needed to produce a protein, while the terminator signals the end of transcription and tells the cell where to stop reading the DNA.

One of the defining features of prokaryotic genes is that their coding sequences are usually continuous. Unlike many eukaryotic genes, prokaryotic genes generally do not contain introns, which are noncoding regions that must be removed before a protein can be produced. As a result, the DNA sequence of a prokaryotic gene closely corresponds to the amino acid sequence of the final protein. This streamlined organization allows bacteria to produce proteins quickly and efficiently.

Another important characteristic of prokaryotic gene organization is the presence of operons. An operon is a group of related genes that are controlled by a single promoter and transcribed together into one messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule. The genes within an operon typically encode proteins that participate in the same metabolic pathway or cellular process. By regulating multiple genes as a single unit, bacteria can coordinate the production of several proteins at the same time. For example, when a particular nutrient becomes available, the genes needed to transport and metabolize that nutrient can be activated simultaneously. This coordinated regulation conserves energy and resources while allowing the cell to adapt rapidly to changing environmental conditions.

The messenger RNA produced from an operon is described as **polycistronic** (a single mRNA molecule that contains the instructions for producing two or more different proteins). Each coding sequence, or cistron, within the polycistronic mRNA has its own ribosome-binding site and start codon, allowing ribosomes to begin protein synthesis independently for each gene. As a result, one polycistronic mRNA can direct the production of multiple proteins from a single transcript. This arrangement is highly efficient because all of the proteins needed for a particular cellular process are produced together and in coordinated amounts.

The simplicity of prokaryotic gene structure is also reflected in the way genes are expressed. Because prokaryotic cells lack a membrane-bound nucleus, transcription and translation both occur in the cytoplasm. As soon as RNA polymerase begins synthesizing an mRNA molecule, ribosomes can attach to the newly formed RNA and begin translating its genetic information into protein. This simultaneous process, known as coupled transcription and translation, allows bacteria to begin producing proteins even before transcription has been completed. When the mRNA is polycistronic, multiple ribosomes can translate different coding sequences on the same mRNA at the same time, producing several different proteins simultaneously. This rapid and coordinated system enables bacteria to respond efficiently to changes in nutrient availability, environmental stresses, and other external signals.

The simple organization of prokaryotic genes, together with operons, polycistronic gene expression, and coupled transcription and translation, allows bacteria to regulate gene expression with remarkable speed and efficiency. These characteristics have also made bacteria valuable tools in biotechnology. Scientists frequently use bacterial cells to produce recombinant proteins, manufacture pharmaceuticals, study gene expression, and develop engineered microorganisms because their genetic systems are relatively easy to manipulate and understand.

Eukaryotic Gene Structure

Eukaryotic organisms, including humans, animals, plants, and fungi, have a more complex gene structure than prokaryotic organisms. This complexity allows for greater control over gene expression and contributes to the diversity of proteins that eukaryotic cells can produce. A typical eukaryotic gene contains several important regions, including a promoter, exons, introns, and regulatory sequences that help control when and how a gene is expressed.

The promoter is a DNA sequence located near the beginning of a gene. It serves as a binding site for RNA polymerase and other proteins involved in transcription, signaling where the process of gene expression should begin. In addition to the promoter, eukaryotic genes contain regulatory regions that may be located near or far from the gene itself. These regions interact with

regulatory proteins to control the timing, location, and level of gene expression. As a result, different genes can be activated or silenced depending on the needs of the cell.

Within the gene are coding regions called exons and non-coding regions called introns. Exons contain the genetic information that ultimately directs the synthesis of a protein. Introns are DNA sequences located between exons that are transcribed into RNA but do not contribute to the final protein sequence. Although introns do not encode proteins, they play important roles in regulating gene expression and increasing genetic diversity.

Gene expression in eukaryotic cells begins in the nucleus, where the DNA sequence of a gene is transcribed into a complementary RNA molecule known as pre-messenger RNA (pre-mRNA). This initial RNA transcript contains both exons and introns. Before the RNA can be used to direct protein synthesis, it must undergo several processing steps. One of the most important of these steps is RNA splicing, during which introns are removed and the remaining exons are joined together. The processed molecule, called messenger RNA (mRNA), then leaves the nucleus and travels to the cytoplasm, where it serves as the template for protein synthesis during translation.

One of the most significant features of eukaryotic gene expression is a process known as alternative splicing. During alternative splicing, different combinations of exons can be joined together while others may be excluded. As a result, a single gene can produce multiple mRNA molecules, each capable of directing the synthesis of a different protein. This process greatly increases the variety of proteins that an organism can produce without increasing the number of genes in its genome.

The complex structure of eukaryotic genes allows cells to carefully regulate gene expression and respond to changing conditions. This regulation is essential for growth, development, and normal cellular function. Understanding eukaryotic gene structure is also important in biotechnology and medicine because many genetic disorders result from mutations that affect promoters, exons, introns, or the splicing process. By studying how eukaryotic genes are organized and regulated, scientists can develop new approaches for treating disease, improving crops, and advancing biotechnology applications.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Comparison of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Gene Structure and Function

Feature	Prokaryotic Genes	Eukaryotic Genes
DNA	Genes are composed of DNA.	Genes are composed of DNA.
Purpose of Genes	Encode proteins or functional RNAs.	Encode proteins or functional RNAs.
Gene Organization	Often organized into operons containing multiple genes.	Usually one gene per transcription unit.
Regulatory Regions	Promoters, operators, and regulatory protein binding sites.	Promoters, enhancers, silencers, and transcription factor binding sites.
Promoter	RNA polymerase binds directly with the help of sigma factors.	RNA polymerase requires numerous transcription factors to bind the promoter.
Coding Regions	Usually continuous; lack introns.	Coding regions (exons) are interrupted by introns.
Noncoding Regions	Short untranslated regions; few noncoding sequences within genes.	Extensive noncoding regions including introns and untranslated regions (UTRs).

Feature	Prokaryotic Genes	Eukaryotic Genes
RNA Polymerase	One primary RNA polymerase synthesizes all RNA types (in bacteria).	Multiple RNA polymerases (I, II, III) synthesize different classes of RNA.
Transcription	DNA is transcribed directly into functional mRNA.	DNA is transcribed into pre-mRNA.
RNA Processing	Minimal RNA processing.	Pre-mRNA undergoes 5′ capping, splicing, and polyadenylation.
Alternative Splicing	Absent.	Common.
mRNA	Usually polycistronic in operons.	Usually monocistronic.
Transcription and Translation	Occur simultaneously in the cytoplasm.	Occur separately; transcription occurs in the nucleus and translation occurs in the cytoplasm.
Ribosomes	Translate mRNA into protein.	Translate mRNA into protein.
Genetic Code	Uses the universal genetic code.	Uses the universal genetic code.
Start and Stop Codons	Translation begins with AUG and ends at one of three stop codons.	Translation begins with AUG and ends at one of three stop codons.
Gene Regulation	Primarily controlled at transcription initiation, often through operons.	Controlled at multiple levels, including chromatin remodeling, transcription, RNA processing, translation, and protein modification.
Regulatory Proteins	Activators and repressors bind promoter or operator sequences.	Transcription factors, activators, repressors, and chromatin-modifying proteins regulate transcription.
Chromatin	DNA is not wrapped around histones (bacteria).	DNA is packaged into chromatin around histone proteins.
Response to Environment	Gene expression changes rapidly in response to environmental conditions.	Gene expression changes in response to developmental, hormonal, and environmental signals.
Mutations	Mutations can alter gene function and protein activity.	Mutations can alter gene function and protein activity.
Evolution	Genes evolve through mutation, recombination, and natural selection.	Genes evolve through mutation, recombination, and natural selection.

Major similarities

- Both genes are composed of **DNA** and store hereditary information.
- Both require a **promoter** for transcription to begin.
- Both use **RNA polymerase** to synthesize RNA.
- Both follow the **central dogma**: DNA → RNA → Protein.
- Both use **mRNA**, **ribosomes**, and the **universal genetic code** to synthesize proteins.
- Both regulate gene expression using **regulatory DNA sequences** and **DNA-binding proteins**.
- Mutations can alter gene function and contribute to evolution in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

Major differences

- **Prokaryotic genes** are generally continuous, whereas **eukaryotic genes** contain **introns and exons**.
- **Prokaryotes** commonly organize genes into **operons**, producing **polycistronic mRNA** that encodes multiple proteins. **Eukaryotes** generally produce **monocistronic mRNA**, with one protein encoded per transcript.
- **Transcription and translation are coupled** in prokaryotes but are **separated** in eukaryotes.
- **Eukaryotic pre-mRNA** undergoes extensive processing, including **5′ capping, intron splicing, and poly(A) tail addition**.
- **Alternative splicing** enables one eukaryotic gene to produce multiple protein isoforms.

- **Eukaryotic gene regulation** is more complex, involving chromatin remodeling and multiple levels of gene regulation, whereas prokaryotic regulation occurs primarily at transcription initiation.

Attributions:
Gene Structure by minuteBio**,**https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6rWyT26bbxo **. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.**
Comparison chart is AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5.2.2: Gene Expression

Gene regulation (the processes that control when, where, and how much a gene is expressed) allows cells to manage the flow of genetic information from DNA to RNA to protein. Although nearly every cell in a multicellular organism contains the same DNA, different cell types produce different sets of proteins. A neuron and a muscle cell share identical genetic instructions, yet they perform very different functions because each cell regulates which genes are active. By controlling gene expression, cells conserve energy, respond to environmental changes, and specialize for particular functions. Since proteins carry out most cellular activities, regulation at the gene level allows the cell to regulate its structure and behavior efficiently. While gene expression can be controlled at several stages, the most common point of regulation occurs during transcription.

Transcriptional regulation (control of gene expression at the stage when DNA is transcribed into RNA) determines whether a gene is copied into messenger RNA. If transcription does not occur, protein production will not follow.

Transcription begins when RNA polymerase binds to a **promoter** (a DNA sequence located near the start of a gene where transcription is initiated). Regulatory proteins called **transcription factors** (proteins that bind DNA and influence transcription rates) help determine whether RNA polymerase can bind effectively.

Some transcription factors enhance transcription, while others block it. This interaction provides a precise mechanism for adjusting gene expression levels.

Prokaryotic Gene Regulation

Prokaryotic cells, such as bacteria, rely heavily on transcriptional regulation because transcription and translation occur simultaneously in the cytoplasm. Their regulatory systems are streamlined, efficient, and highly responsive to environmental conditions.

A key feature of prokaryotic gene regulation is the operon system.

Operons: Coordinated Gene Control

An **operon** (a cluster of related genes controlled together by a single promoter and regulatory elements) allows bacteria to regulate multiple genes as a unit. These genes typically encode proteins involved in the same metabolic pathway.

Operons contain three essential components: a promoter, an operator, and structural genes. The operator is a regulatory DNA sequence where a repressor protein may bind. The structural genes encode proteins needed for a specific function.

Operons allow bacteria to quickly adjust gene expression based on environmental conditions, conserving energy and resources.

Prokaryotic operons generally fall into two categories: inducible operons and repressible operons.

Inducible Operons

An **inducible operon** (a regulatory system that is normally turned off but can be activated in the presence of a specific molecule called an inducer) allows gene expression only when needed.

The classic example is the **lac operon** (a bacterial operon that controls genes required for lactose metabolism). In the absence of lactose, a repressor protein binds to the operator, blocking transcription. When lactose is present, it is converted into a molecule that binds to the repressor. This binding changes the shape of the repressor so it can no longer attach to the operator. As a result, RNA polymerase can proceed with transcription.

This system ensures that enzymes for lactose metabolism are produced only when lactose is available. The lac operon demonstrates environmental responsiveness and energy conservation.

Inducible systems are commonly used in biotechnology. For example, engineered bacterial strains often contain inducible promoters that allow scientists to control when a recombinant protein is produced by adding a chemical inducer to the culture.

Repressible Operons

A **repressible operon** (a regulatory system that is normally turned on but can be turned off when a specific molecule is abundant) functions differently. In this case, transcription typically proceeds unless a repressor is activated.

The classic example is the **trp operon** (a bacterial operon that controls genes involved in tryptophan synthesis). When tryptophan levels are low, transcription of the operon occurs, allowing the cell to produce enzymes needed to synthesize more tryptophan. However, when tryptophan becomes abundant, it binds to the repressor protein and activates it. The activated repressor then binds to the operator and blocks transcription.

This feedback system prevents the cell from wasting energy synthesizing an amino acid that is already available. Repressible operons are often associated with biosynthetic pathways, where the end product regulates its own production.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:

***Operons by Your Other Biology Professor*, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Qd16nt1WdAc. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.**

This page titled 5.2.2: Gene Expression is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

5.3: Epigenome

The genome is often described as a fixed instruction manual that determines the characteristics of an organism. While DNA does contain the core genetic information, biology is far more dynamic than a simple, unchanging blueprint. Not all genes are active at the same time, and not all cells rely on the same genetic instructions—even though nearly every cell in the body contains the same DNA sequence. The explanation for this selective gene activity lies in the epigenome.

The **epigenome** (the complete set of chemical modifications to DNA and its associated proteins that regulate gene activity without changing the DNA sequence) functions as a regulatory layer that controls how the genome is interpreted. While the genome provides the instructions, the epigenome determines when, where, and how strongly those instructions are expressed. In this way, the genome can be thought of as the script, while the epigenome serves as the director—guiding how the information is used within each specific cell type.

Epigenetic regulation

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Epigenetic regulation allows different cell types to develop, specialize, and maintain their unique identities throughout the life of an organism. Early in embryonic development, cells begin as pluripotent, meaning they have the potential to become many different cell types. As development progresses, specific genes are activated while others are permanently or temporarily silenced. These carefully coordinated patterns of gene expression allow a stem cell to become a muscle cell, a skin cell, or a neuron.

For example, liver cells and nerve cells contain the same DNA sequence, yet they perform very different functions. Liver cells express genes involved in metabolism, detoxification, and the production of plasma proteins. In contrast, nerve cells express genes required for the generation and transmission of electrical signals. The difference is not in the DNA sequence itself, but in which genes are accessible and actively transcribed. Epigenetic mechanisms provide the molecular switches and dimmers that control this selective gene activity.

One major epigenetic mechanism is **DNA methylation** (the addition of a small chemical group called a methyl group to specific DNA bases, typically reducing gene expression). DNA methylation most commonly occurs at cytosine bases located next to guanine bases, often in regions known as CpG islands near gene promoters. When these promoter regions become heavily methylated, the transcriptional machinery cannot easily bind to the DNA. As a result, the associated gene is often silenced. DNA methylation plays an essential role in normal development, X-chromosome inactivation in females, and genomic imprinting, where only one copy of a gene (from either the mother or father) is expressed.

Another key mechanism involves **histone modification** (chemical changes to the proteins around which DNA is wrapped that alter how tightly or loosely DNA is packaged). DNA wraps around histone proteins to form chromatin. Chemical groups such as acetyl, methyl, or phosphate groups can be added to or removed from histones. These modifications influence chromatin structure. For example, histone acetylation typically relaxes chromatin structure, making genes more accessible and increasing gene expression. In contrast, certain histone methylation patterns can either activate or repress gene expression depending on their location. These modifications are reversible, allowing cells to dynamically respond to internal and external signals.

Epigenetic regulation also involves chromatin remodeling complexes and non-coding RNAs, which help guide where and how these chemical modifications occur. These additional layers of control further refine gene expression patterns, ensuring precise regulation in different tissues and developmental stages.

Importantly, epigenetic changes are influenced by environmental and lifestyle factors. Diet can affect the availability of molecules

required for DNA methylation. Chronic stress may alter hormone levels that impact gene regulation pathways. Exposure to environmental toxins, such as heavy metals or cigarette smoke, has been shown to disrupt normal epigenetic patterns. Aging is also associated with gradual shifts in DNA methylation and histone modification patterns, which may contribute to age-related diseases.

Because epigenetic modifications do not change the underlying DNA sequence, they are considered reversible. This reversibility makes them particularly attractive targets in biotechnology and medicine. In cancer, for example, tumor suppressor genes may be silenced through abnormal DNA methylation rather than mutation. Drugs known as epigenetic therapies are designed to reverse these abnormal modifications and restore normal gene function.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
The Epigenome by Jesica Xhumari, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gofMDIgBE_U**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.
How DNA Methylation Works: The Master Switch of Your Genes by *(please provide the author/channel name)*, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xQz_E10PsLA**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 5.3: Epigenome is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

6: DNA REPLICATION

Every living cell must copy (replicate) its DNA before it divides. This essential process, known as **DNA replication** (the biological process by which a cell makes an exact copy of its DNA), ensures that each daughter cell receives a complete and accurate set of genetic instructions. Without faithful DNA replication, cells would lose vital genetic information or accumulate mutations that could disrupt normal cellular functions.

DNA replication is described as **semi-conservative replication** (a mechanism in which each new DNA molecule contains one original parental strand and one newly synthesized strand). During replication, the two strands of the DNA double helix separate, and each original strand serves as a template for the synthesis of a complementary new strand. This mechanism allows genetic information to be accurately preserved and passed from one generation of cells to the next.

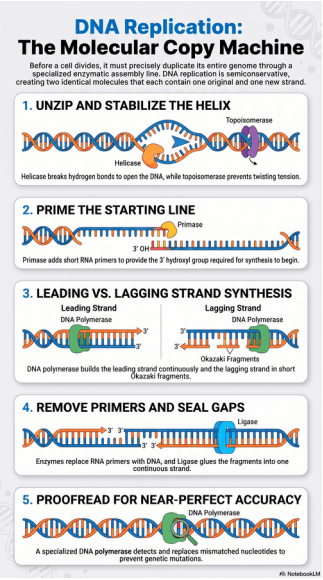
Understanding DNA replication is fundamental to biotechnology because many laboratory techniques are based on the same molecular principles cells use to copy DNA. Technologies such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR), DNA sequencing, gene cloning, genome editing, and recombinant protein production all rely on DNA replication. Whether developing new medicines, engineering crops, or manufacturing biologic therapies, biotechnology professionals use these principles every day in research laboratories, clinical diagnostics, and biomanufacturing facilities.

6.1: DNA Replication

6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell

This page titled 6: DNA Replication is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: DNA Replication



Initiation

Replication begins at a specific DNA sequence called the origin of replication. The origin contains short, repeated DNA sequences that are recognized by specialized initiator proteins. These proteins bind to the origin and cause a small section of the DNA double helix to unwind. Once the DNA strands begin to open, the enzyme **helicase** (an enzyme that unwinds and separates the two strands of DNA) is recruited to each fork. Helicase moves along the chromosome, breaking the hydrogen bonds between complementary base pairs as it goes. As helicase unwinds the DNA and separates the two strands, single-strand binding proteins attach to the exposed nucleotides to prevent them from rejoining. Another enzyme, topoisomerase, reduces twisting and tension ahead of the replication fork that results from unwinding the DNA. As the strands separate, two Y-shaped structures form at each fork. These structures are called **replication forks** (the region where the DNA double helix is opened and new strands are being synthesized). Each replication fork has two **DNA polymerases (**enzymes that synthesize DNA by adding nucleotides that are complementary to the template to a new strand). The two DNA polymerases at each fork are connected to one another and move towards the fork in the same direction.

DNA polymerases can only add nucleotides to the 3′ hydroxyl group end of a DNA strand. However, there are no naturally exposed 3′ hydroxyl groups. Before DNA synthesis can begin, the cell must first create a starting point (a free 3' hydroxyl group). The enzyme **Primase** creates a starting point by adding a short stretch of complementary RNA nucleotides on the chromosome called an RNA primer. The RNA primer provides the required free 3′ hydroxyl group, allowing DNA polymerase to attach and begin adding DNA nucleotides in the 5'-3' direction.

Elongation

Once a primer is added to the template DNA, DNA polymerase moves along the template in the 5'-3' direction adding nucleotides to the 3' end of the growing strand. Each new nucleotide added is complementary to the nucleotide on the original template strand. Adenine pairs with thymine, and cytosine pairs with guanine, ensuring accurate copying of the genetic information. This results in **semiconservative replication** (a mechanism in which each new DNA molecule contains one original strand and one newly synthesized strand), preserving genetic continuity.

Due to the antiparallel nature of the DNA strands and the fact that the two DNA polymerases at the fork are tethered together forming a replicon they move in the same direction towards the fork. Only one strand will be in the correct orientation (5' - 3') to be read continuously while new nucleotides are incorporated at the 3' end. This stand is referred to as the leading strand. Before the second DNA polymerase can start synthases it must wait until enough of the DNA strand (template) opens up to allow the strand to be flipped around so that the DNA polymerase can bind and read the strand in the correct orientation. This strand is referred to as the lagging strand. Once enough of the lagging strand is available primase adds an RNA primer then DNA polymerase flips

the strand so it can bind to the strand in the 5'-3' direction. Once in the correct orientation, the polymerase will start adding complementary nucleotides while essentially pulling the template in the opposite direction as the polymerase moves towards the replication fork. The polymerase will continue adding nucleotides to the lagging strand until it reaches the beginning of the previous section then must let go to grab the next section from the fork. Each time the DNA polymerase starts a new section a new primer is required. The process results in the synthesis of DNA fragments called **Okazaki fragments** after the person that discovered the process.

After the leading strand and Okazaki fragments are formed, a different DNA polymerase removes the RNA primers from both strands and replaces the RNA primers with DNA. Finally, **DNA ligase** (an enzyme that joins DNA fragments together by forming covalent bonds in the 5' sugar-phosphate end of the backbone) seals the 5' gaps between fragments creating a continuous DNA strand.

Throughout elongation, a third DNA polymerase performs proofreading. If an incorrect nucleotide is added, the enzyme can detect the mismatch, remove it, and replace it with the correct nucleotide. This proofreading ability greatly increases the accuracy of DNA replication.

Termination

Replication continues until the two replication forks and replicons meet up at a termination region. At this point, replication stops, and the two identical DNA molecules separate.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

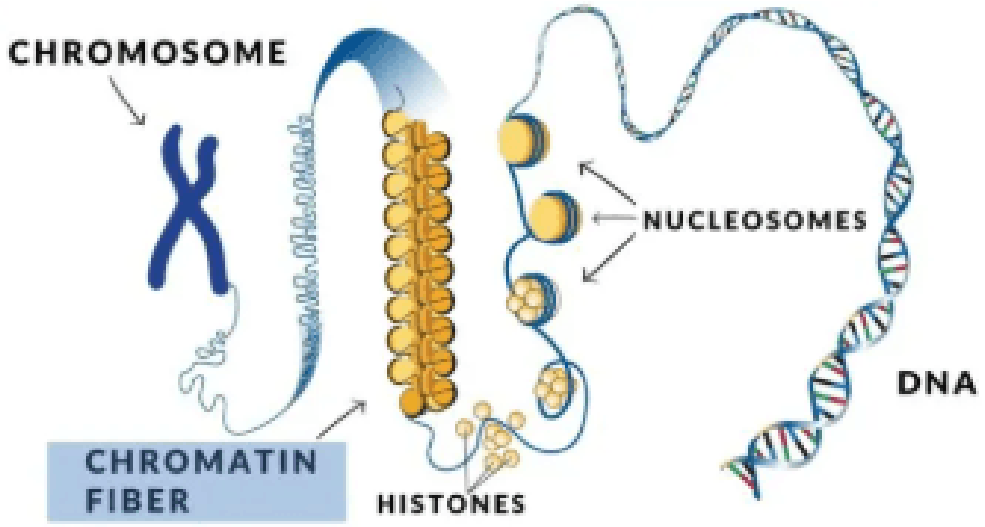
Attributions:
*AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.*
Mechanism of DNA Replication by DNA Learning Center, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I9ArIJWYZHI**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 6.1: DNA Replication is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell

DNA replication prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells follows the same basic principles. In both cell types, replication is semiconservative, meaning each new DNA molecule contains one original strand and one newly synthesized strand. The process is also bidirectional and depends on complementary base pairing to ensure accuracy. Enzymes such as helicase, polymerase, and ligase perform similar functions in both systems, and DNA is synthesized continuously on one strand and discontinuously on the other, forming **Okazaki fragments** (short segments of DNA that are later joined together).

Despite these similarities, there are several important differences. In prokaryotic cells, replication takes place in the cytoplasm and involves a single, circular chromosome with one origin of replication. In contrast, eukaryotic cells replicate their DNA within the nucleus, where multiple linear chromosomes each contain many origins of replication. This allows eukaryotic DNA to be copied in smaller sections, even though the process is generally slower than in prokaryotes. Eukaryotic replication also requires a greater variety of enzymes and must account for DNA packaging in **chromatin** (a complex of DNA wrapped around proteins), which must be unwound and reassembled during replication.



Another key difference involves the ends of chromosomes. Prokaryotic DNA does not have ends because it is circular, but eukaryotic chromosomes are linear and require **telomeres** (repetitive DNA sequences at chromosome ends) and the enzyme telomerase to prevent the loss of genetic information. Overall, while the core mechanisms of DNA replication are conserved, eukaryotic cells use more complex strategies to manage their larger and more structured genomes.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
https://www.biologyonline.com/dictionary/chromatin
What Are Telomeres? Telomere Animation by The Jackson Laboratory, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=U0fRAr-ZHCo**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

7: DNA TO PROTEIN

The process by which genetic information in DNA is used to produce proteins is known as **gene expression** (the series of cellular processes that convert the information encoded in a gene into a functional product, usually a protein). Gene expression occurs through two major steps: **transcription** (the process of copying a segment of DNA into RNA) and **translation** (the process in which the information in messenger RNA is used to assemble a protein).

Although all living organisms rely on these same fundamental processes, the details of gene expression differ between prokaryotic cells and eukaryotic cells. These differences influence how genes are organized, how RNA molecules are processed, and how proteins are produced within the cell.

7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription

7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription

7.3: Eukaryotic Translation

7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation

7.5: Transcription Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

7.6: Translation Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

This page titled 7: DNA to Protein is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

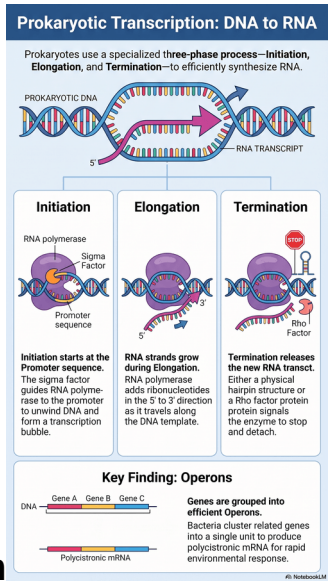
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription

The goal of **transcription** is to make an RNA copy of a gene's DNA sequence. Transcription is the first step in **gene expression**, in which information from a gene is used to produce a functional product, such as RNA or a protein. Gene Organization in Prokaryotes

In many prokaryotic organisms, genes that participate in the same metabolic pathway are often grouped together into a single transcription unit called an **operon** (a cluster of genes controlled by a single promoter and transcribed together).

When an operon is transcribed, the resulting RNA molecule may contain the coding sequences for multiple proteins. This type of transcript is called **polycistronic mRNA** (an RNA molecule that contains coding sequences for several different proteins).

This organization allows bacteria to coordinate the expression of multiple genes simultaneously, enabling rapid responses to environmental conditions.



Initiation

Transcription begins when RNA polymerase binds to a specific DNA sequence known as the **promoter** (a regulatory DNA sequence located near the start of a gene where RNA polymerase binds to initiate transcription). Promoters contain characteristic nucleotide sequences that help the transcription machinery recognize where transcription should begin.

In bacteria, promoter recognition is assisted by a regulatory protein called the **sigma factor** (a protein that helps RNA polymerase recognize and bind to specific promoter sequences). When RNA polymerase associates with the sigma factor, they form the **RNA polymerase holoenzyme** (the complete RNA polymerase complex capable of initiating transcription).

The holoenzyme binds to the promoter region of DNA and begins to unwind a small section of the double helix. This creates a region called the **transcription bubble** (a locally unwound segment of DNA where RNA synthesis occurs).

Once the DNA strands are separated, RNA polymerase begins synthesizing the first few RNA nucleotides complementary to the template strand. After transcription begins, the sigma factor usually detaches from the enzyme, allowing RNA polymerase to move along the DNA and continue RNA synthesis.

Elongation

During elongation, RNA polymerase moves along the template strand of DNA and synthesizes a complementary RNA molecule.

As RNA polymerase travels along the DNA, it unwinds the DNA ahead of it and rewinds it behind it, maintaining a small

transcription bubble. Within this bubble, the template DNA strand is exposed so that RNA nucleotides can pair with complementary bases.

RNA polymerase adds **ribonucleotides** (RNA building blocks consisting of a ribose sugar, phosphate group, and nitrogenous base) to the growing RNA chain. The RNA strand grows in the 5′ to 3′ direction as nucleotides are added to the 3′ end of the molecule.

The RNA molecule being synthesized is temporarily base-paired with the DNA template within the transcription bubble. As the enzyme continues moving forward, the RNA strand separates from the DNA and exits the RNA polymerase complex.

Because prokaryotic cells lack a nucleus, ribosomes can begin translating the RNA transcript even before transcription is complete. This simultaneous process of transcription and translation is called **coupled transcription and translation** (the simultaneous synthesis of RNA and protein in prokaryotic cells).

Termination

Termination occurs when RNA polymerase reaches specific DNA sequences that signal the end of transcription. These sequences cause the RNA polymerase enzyme to stop RNA synthesis and release the newly formed RNA transcript.

Two main mechanisms of transcription termination occur in prokaryotes.

One mechanism involves the formation of a **hairpin structure** (a loop formed when complementary sequences within the RNA transcript base pair with each other). This structure destabilizes the RNA polymerase complex and causes the enzyme to release the RNA molecule.

The second mechanism involves a protein called **rho factor** (a protein that helps terminate transcription by interacting with RNA polymerase and the RNA transcript). Rho factor moves along the RNA transcript and eventually causes RNA polymerase to detach from the DNA template.

After termination occurs, RNA polymerase releases the RNA molecule and becomes available to initiate transcription at another gene.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Prokaryotic Transcription DNA to RNA, AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
“Transcription in Prokaryotes,” by Najem Rayes. YouTube video. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1b-bRVgqof0. Standard YouTube License. Used without modification.

This page titled 7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription

In eukaryotic cells, the information stored in DNA must first be copied into RNA before it can be used to build proteins. This process is known as **transcription** (the synthesis of an RNA molecule using DNA as a template). Transcription is the first major step in gene expression and allows the genetic instructions stored in DNA to be transferred to RNA molecules that can direct cellular activities.

Unlike prokaryotic cells, transcription in eukaryotes occurs inside the nucleus, where DNA is housed and protected. The RNA molecules produced during transcription must later be processed and transported out of the nucleus before they can participate in protein synthesis. Because of this compartmentalization and additional regulatory mechanisms, transcription in eukaryotic cells is more complex and highly controlled.

The Role of RNA Polymerase

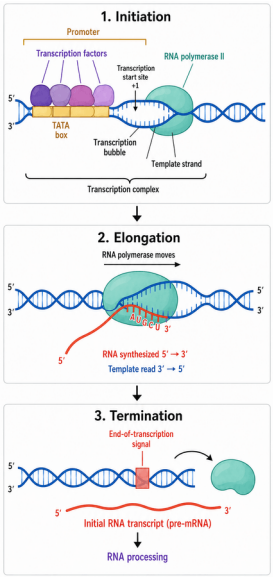
The enzyme responsible for synthesizing RNA during transcription is **RNA polymerase** (an enzyme that builds an RNA molecule by linking RNA nucleotides together using a DNA template). Eukaryotic cells contain three major types of RNA polymerase, each responsible for producing different types of RNA.

RNA polymerase I synthesizes ribosomal RNA used to build ribosomes.
RNA polymerase II produces messenger RNA that carries protein-coding information from DNA.
RNA polymerase III synthesizes several smaller RNA molecules, including transfer RNA and some ribosomal RNA components.

Among these enzymes, RNA polymerase II plays the central role in producing the RNA molecules that will eventually direct protein synthesis.

Promoters and Transcription Factors

Transcription does not begin randomly along DNA. Instead, RNA polymerase must recognize specific regions of DNA that signal



where transcription should start. These regions are called **promoters (specific DNA sequences that signal the starting point for transcription of a gene)**.

In eukaryotic cells, RNA polymerase cannot usually bind directly to the promoter without assistance. Instead, specialized proteins called **transcription factors (proteins that help regulate gene expression by assisting RNA polymerase in binding to DNA and initiating transcription)** first attach to the promoter region.

One common promoter element is the **TATA box (a short DNA sequence rich in thymine and adenine bases that**

helps position RNA polymerase at the start of transcription). Transcription factors recognize this region and recruit RNA polymerase II to form a large transcription complex that begins RNA synthesis.

Stages of Eukaryotic Transcription

Initiation

During initiation, transcription factors bind to the promoter region and assemble a complex that recruits RNA polymerase II. Once properly positioned, the DNA strands separate locally, creating a transcription bubble where the template strand becomes accessible. RNA polymerase then begins synthesizing an RNA molecule complementary to the DNA template.

Elongation

During elongation, RNA polymerase moves along the DNA template strand, adding RNA nucleotides one at a time to the growing RNA molecule. These nucleotides pair with complementary bases on the DNA template strand according to base-pairing rules.

As RNA polymerase progresses, the DNA ahead of the enzyme unwinds while the DNA behind it rewinds. The newly synthesized RNA strand gradually lengthens as additional nucleotides are incorporated.

Termination

Termination occurs when RNA polymerase encounters DNA sequences that signal the end of transcription. These sequences cause RNA polymerase to detach from the DNA template and release the newly synthesized RNA molecule.

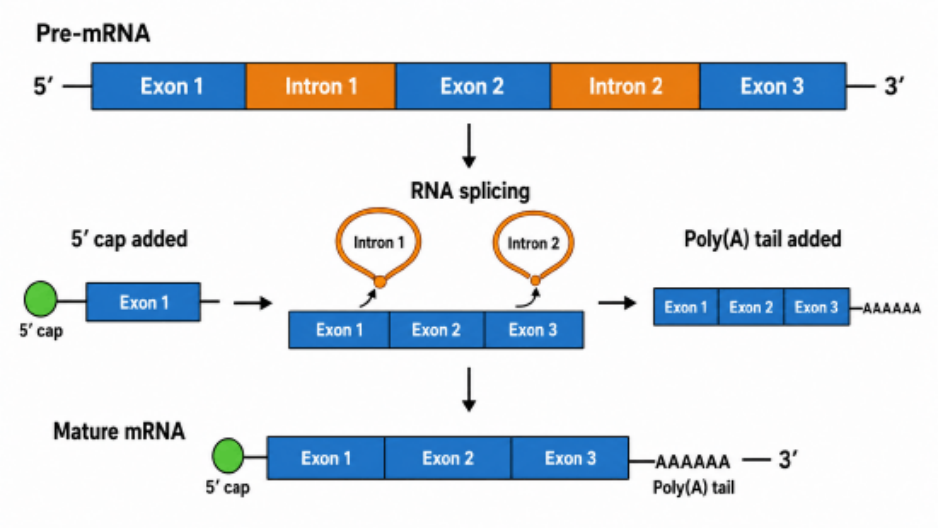
At this point, the RNA produced is not yet ready to guide protein synthesis. Instead, it is an initial transcript that must undergo several processing steps before it can function.

Formation of the Primary Transcript

The first RNA molecule produced during transcription is called the **primary transcript (the initial RNA molecule synthesized directly from a DNA template before it undergoes processing)**. In eukaryotic cells, this RNA molecule contains both coding and non-coding regions.

Coding regions, known as **exons (segments of RNA that contain information used to build proteins)**, are separated by non-coding regions called **introns (segments of RNA that do not code for proteins and must be removed before translation)**. These regions must be processed to produce a mature messenger RNA molecule.

RNA Processing in Eukaryoti



c Cells

Before leaving the nucleus, the primary transcript undergoes several modifications that convert it into a functional **messenger RNA (mRNA) (an RNA molecule that carries genetic instructions from DNA to the ribosome for protein synthesis)**.

One modification is the addition of a **5′ cap (a modified nucleotide added to the beginning of an mRNA molecule that protects it from degradation and helps initiate translation)**. This structure stabilizes the RNA molecule and assists ribosomes in recognizing the mRNA during translation.

Another modification is the addition of a **poly-A tail (a long chain of adenine nucleotides added to the end of an mRNA molecule that helps protect the RNA and regulate its stability)** at the 3′ end of the transcript.

Finally, the RNA molecule undergoes **RNA splicing (the process of removing introns and joining exons together to produce a continuous coding sequence)**. This step ensures that only the protein-coding portions of the gene remain in the mature mRNA.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Export of mRNA from the Nucleus

After processing is complete, the mature mRNA molecule exits the nucleus through nuclear pores and enters the cytoplasm. There, it can interact with ribosomes and participate in translation, the process that converts the genetic information carried by mRNA into a functional protein.

Why Eukaryotic Transcription Is More Complex

Transcription in eukaryotic cells involves multiple enzymes, regulatory proteins, and processing steps. These additional layers of control allow eukaryotic organisms to carefully regulate gene expression. Different genes can be turned on or off depending on cell type, developmental stage, or environmental conditions.

This complexity is essential for multicellular organisms, where different cells must produce different proteins even though they contain the same DNA. Understanding eukaryotic transcription is therefore critical for fields such as biotechnology, medicine, and genetic engineering, where scientists often manipulate gene expression to study biological processes or produce useful biological products.

Attributions:
"Transcription" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"PreRNA" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
“Introns and Exons,” by Beverly Biology, YouTube video, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_asGjfCTLNE. YouTube Standard License. No modifications were made

This page titled 7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

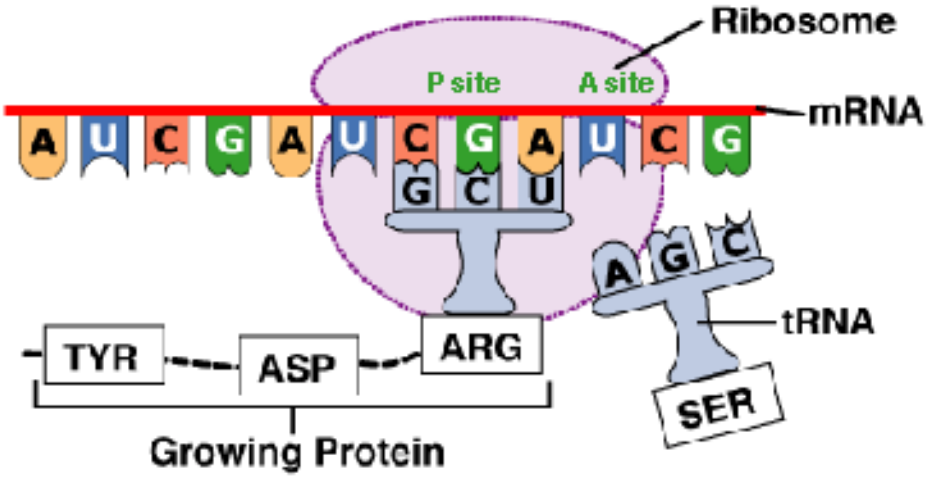
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation

Just like a prokaryotic cell, after a gene has been transcribed and processed into mature messenger RNA, the information it carries must be used to build a protein. This process is called **translation** (the process by which the information encoded in messenger RNA is used to assemble a chain of amino acids that forms a protein). Translation occurs in the cytoplasm and converts the genetic instructions contained in RNA into functional proteins that perform the majority of cellular activities.

Proteins are essential molecules that serve many roles in the cell, including acting as enzymes, structural components, signaling molecules, and transport proteins. During translation, the sequence of nucleotides in messenger RNA determines the sequence of amino acids in a protein. This relationship between nucleic acids and proteins allows genetic information stored in DNA to ultimately control cellular structure and function.

The Components Required for Translation

Several cellular components work together to carry out translation. On



e of the most important is **messenger RNA (mRNA)** (an RNA molecule that carries genetic instructions copied from DNA to the ribosome for protein synthesis). The mRNA contains a sequence of nucleotides organized into groups of three known as **codons** (three-nucleotide sequences in mRNA that specify a particular amino acid). Each codon corresponds to a specific amino acid or signals the start or stop of protein synthesis.

Translation takes place on **ribosomes** (large molecular complexes composed of ribosomal RNA and proteins that serve as the site of protein synthesis). In eukaryotic cells, ribosomes are made of two subunits, a large subunit and a small subunit, which come together during translation.

Another essential component is **transfer RNA (tRNA)** (a small RNA molecule that carries specific amino acids to the ribosome during protein synthesis). Each tRNA contains an **anticodon** (a three-nucleotide sequence on tRNA that is complementary to a codon on mRNA) that allows it to recognize and bind to the appropriate codon on the mRNA.

Finally, translation requires amino acids, enzymes, and several protein factors that help regulate the process and ensure accuracy.

The Genetic Code

The relationship between codons and amino acids is known as the **genetic code** (the set of rules that determines how sequences of nucleotides in mRNA correspond to specific amino acids in proteins). Because there are four RNA nucleotides and codons are three bases long, there are 64 possible codons.

Most amino acids are specified by more than one codon, providing redundancy in the genetic code. However, there is a specific start signal and several stop signals. Translation typically begins at the codon AUG, which codes for the amino acid methionine,

and ends when the ribosome encounters one of three stop codons.

Stages of Translation

Translation in eukaryotic cells occurs in three main stages: initiation, elongation, and termination.

Initiation

During initiation, the small ribosomal subunit binds to the 5′ end of the mRNA molecule. In eukaryotic cells, this process is guided by the 5′ cap that was added during RNA processing. The ribosome then scans along the mRNA until it reaches the start codon.

Once the start codon is recognized, a specialized initiator tRNA carrying methionine binds to the codon through complementary base pairing between the anticodon and the mRNA codon. After this interaction occurs, the large ribosomal subunit joins the complex, forming a complete ribosome ready to begin protein synthesis.

Elongation

During elongation, amino acids are added one at a time to the growing protein chain. The ribosome contains three functional regions known as binding sites that coordinate this process.

The first site holds the tRNA carrying the growing protein chain. The second site receives the incoming tRNA carrying the next amino acid specified by the mRNA codon. When the correct tRNA binds, the ribosome catalyzes the formation of a **peptide bond** (a chemical bond that links amino acids together in a protein) between the amino acids.

After the peptide bond forms, the ribosome moves one codon along the mRNA. This movement shifts the tRNAs within the ribosome and opens space for the next tRNA to enter. The process repeats, allowing the protein chain to grow as additional amino acids are added.

Termination

Termination occurs when the ribosome encounters a stop codon on the mRNA. Stop codons do not correspond to any tRNA molecules. Instead, specialized proteins recognize these codons and trigger the release of the completed protein from the ribosome.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Once the protein is released, the ribosomal subunits separate from the mRNA, and the components can be reused for another round of translation.

Folding and Processing of Proteins

The newly synthesized protein is called a **polypeptide** (a chain of amino acids linked together by peptide bonds). After translation is complete, the polypeptide must fold into a specific three-dimensional structure in order to function properly.

Some proteins also undergo additional chemical modifications, such as the addition of carbohydrate groups or the formation of disulfide bonds. In eukaryotic cells, many proteins are synthesized on ribosomes associated with the **rough endoplasmic**

reticulum (a membrane-bound organelle studded with ribosomes that helps synthesize and process proteins destined for membranes or secretion).

Efficiency of Translation

In many cases, multiple ribosomes can attach to the same mRNA molecule at the same time, forming a structure called a **polysome** (a group of ribosomes simultaneously translating a single mRNA molecule). This arrangement allows cells to produce many copies of a protein quickly from a single mRNA transcript.

Attribution:
“Translation,” by ndsuvirtualcell, YouTube video, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AUy4UxmcQi0. YouTube Standard License. No modifications were made.

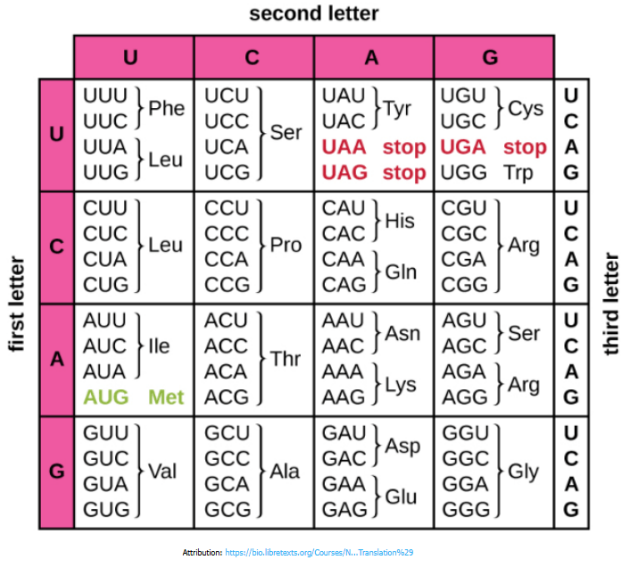
This page titled 7.3: Eukaryotic Translation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation

Once a gene has been transcribed into messenger RNA, the information it contains is used to build a protein. This process is called **translation.** In prokaryotic cells, translation occurs in the cytoplasm and is carried out by ribosomes working together with several types of RNA and protein factors.

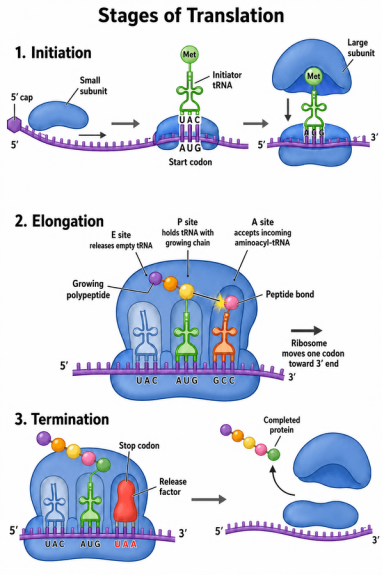
Components Required for Translation

Several key molecular components are required for translation in prokaryotic cells. One of the most important is **messenger RNA (mRNA)** (an RNA molecule that carries genetic information copied from DNA and provides the template for protein synthesis). The mRNA contains instructions that determine the sequence of amino acids in a protein. These instructions are read in groups of three nucleotides called **codons** (three-nucleotide sequences in mRNA that specify a particular amino acid or signal the start or end of translation). Each codon corresponds to a specific amino acid or serves as a signal to begin or end protein synthesis.



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/N...Translation%29

Translation occurs on **ribosomes** (large molecular complexes composed of ribosomal RNA and proteins that serve as the site of protein synthesis). In prokaryotic cells, ribosomes consist of two subunits known as the small 30S subunit and the large 50S subunit, which together form the functional 70S ribosome. Eukaryotic ribosomes also consists of two subunits (40S and 60S) however, their function is the same. Another essential molecule involved in translation is **transfer RNA (tRNA)** (a small RNA molecule that carries specific amino acids to the ribosome during protein synthesis). Each tRNA contains an **anticodon** (a three-nucleotide sequence on tRNA that pairs with a complementary codon on mRNA) that allows it to recognize the appropriate codon on the mRNA molecule. Translation in prokaryotic cells occurs in three main stages: initiation, elongation, and termination.



Initiation

During initiation, the small ribosomal subunit binds to the mRNA at a particular sequence. This interaction positions the ribosome so that the start codon is placed correctly within the ribosome at the p site. A specialized initiator tRNA carrying the amino acid methionine then binds to the start codon through complementary base pairing between its anticodon and the mRNA codon. After the initiator tRNA is properly positioned, the large ribosomal subunit joins the complex to form the complete ribosome.

At this point, the ribosome is assembled and ready to begin synthesizing the protein.

Elongation

During elongation, amino acids are added one at a time to the growing protein chain. The ribosome contains three functional binding regions that coordinate this process. The A site accepts an incoming tRNA carrying the next amino acid, the P site holds the tRNA carrying the growing protein chain, and the E site releases the empty tRNA from the ribosome. When the correct tRNA enters the ribosome and pairs with the codon, the ribosome catalyzes the formation of a **peptide bond** (a chemical bond that links amino acids together to form a protein) between the amino acids.

After the peptide bond forms, the ribosome moves forward along the mRNA by one codon. This movement shifts the tRNAs within the ribosome and opens space for the next tRNA to enter. The process repeats as the ribosome continues reading the mRNA and extending the protein chain.

Termination

Termination occurs when the ribosome encounters a stop codon in the mRNA sequence. Stop codons do not correspond to any tRNA molecules. Instead, specialized proteins recognize these signals and promote the release of the completed protein from the ribosome. Once the protein is released, the ribosomal subunits separate from the mRNA, and the components can be reused for another round of translation.

Attributions:
Codon table13.4: Protein Synthesis (Translation) is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ying Liu via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.
"Stages of Translation" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

7.5: Transcription Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

Prokaryotic transcription occurs in the cytoplasm and can occur at the same time as translation. A single type of RNA polymerase produces the major forms of RNA, and the resulting mRNA requires little processing. Prokaryotic mRNA is often polycistronic, meaning it contains instructions for several proteins. Eukaryotic transcription occurs in the nucleus and uses several types of RNA polymerase. The initial RNA transcript is processed by adding a 5′ cap and poly-A tail and removing introns through splicing. Most eukaryotic mRNA is monocistronic and contains instructions for one protein. Eukaryotic transcription also involves more transcription factors and complex regulatory sequences.

Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Transcription

Feature	Prokaryotic Transcription	Eukaryotic Transcription
Location	Cytoplasm	Nucleus
RNA polymerase	One type	Multiple types
Promoter recognition	Sigma factors	Transcription factors
DNA organization	Circular DNA, no histones	Linear DNA wrapped around histones
RNA processing	Little or none	Extensive processing
Introns	Rare	Common
Splicing	Usually absent	Common
Timing with translation	Transcription and translation occur together	Occur separately
Gene organization	Operons common	Usually one gene per mRNA
Speed	Faster	Slower
Regulation	Simpler	More complex

Similarities

- Both perform **transcription** (the process of copying DNA into RNA).
- Both use RNA polymerase.
- Both use DNA as a template.
- Both synthesize RNA in the 5′ → 3′ direction.
- Both rely on complementary base pairing.

This page titled 7.5: Transcription Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

7.6: Translation Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells

Translation occurs in both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells when ribosomes read messenger RNA (mRNA) and join amino acids to form a polypeptide. Although the basic process is similar, translation differs in ribosome structure, initiation, mRNA organization, speed, and cellular location.

Prokaryotic translation occurs on free ribosomes in the cytoplasm. Prokaryotic cells contain smaller 70S ribosomes composed of 30S and 50S subunits. Eukaryotic cells contain larger 80S ribosomes composed of 40S and 60S subunits. Eukaryotic translation occurs on free ribosomes in the cytoplasm or on ribosomes attached to the rough endoplasmic reticulum. Free ribosomes generally produce proteins that remain in the cytoplasm, while ribosomes on the rough endoplasmic reticulum produce proteins intended for secretion, membranes, or certain organelles.

Translation initiation also differs between the two cell types. In prokaryotes, the small ribosomal subunit recognizes a ribosome-binding site called the **Shine–Dalgarno sequence**, which positions the ribosome near the start codon. The first amino acid incorporated is a modified methionine called N-formylmethionine, or fMet. In eukaryotes, the small ribosomal subunit binds near the 5′ end of the mRNA and scans until it locates a start codon within an appropriate sequence. Eukaryotic translation begins with an unmodified methionine.

Prokaryotic mRNA is often **polycistronic**, meaning that a single mRNA molecule contains coding regions for several proteins. Each coding region generally has its own ribosome-binding site and can be translated independently. Most eukaryotic mRNA is monocistronic, meaning that each mRNA molecule usually contains the coding sequence for one protein.

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes contain different numbers and types of ribosomal proteins. Eukaryotic ribosomes generally contain more proteins, and many are larger or have additional regions. Some proteins are conserved, meaning they have similar structures and roles in both types of cells. Others are unique to either prokaryotes or eukaryotes. These differences help explain why certain antibiotics can bind to bacterial 70S ribosomes and inhibit translation without strongly affecting the 80S ribosomes in human cells. However, mitochondrial ribosomes share some features with bacterial ribosomes because mitochondria evolved from bacteria.

Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Translation

Feature	Prokaryotic Translation	Eukaryotic Translation
Location	Cytoplasm	Cytoplasm or rough endoplasmic reticulum
Ribosome size	70S ribosome	80S ribosome
mRNA start signal	Shine-Dalgarno sequence	5′ cap recognition
First amino acid	Formylmethionine (fMet)	Methionine (Met)
Timing with transcription	Translation can begin during transcription	Translation begins after transcription is complete
mRNA processing	Little or none	mRNA is capped, spliced, and polyadenylated
Number of proteins per mRNA	Often multiple proteins	Usually one protein
Initiation factors	Fewer	More numerous and complex
Speed	Faster	Slower
Regulation	Simpler	More complex

Similarities

- Both perform **translation** (the process of using mRNA to build proteins).
- Both use ribosomes, mRNA, and tRNA.
- Both read mRNA in the 5′ → 3′ direction.
- Both use codons to specify amino acids.
- Both include initiation, elongation, and termination stages.

This page titled 7.6: Translation Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8: CELL REPRODUCTION

Cell reproduction is the process by which cells divide to form new cells, and it is fundamental to the growth, development, maintenance, and reproduction of all living organisms. From the earliest stages of life to the continuous renewal of tissues throughout an organism's lifespan, cell reproduction ensures both the survival of individual organisms and the continuity of life across generations. The principle that all cells arise from preexisting cells is a cornerstone of modern biology and emphasizes that cell division, rather than spontaneous formation, is the source of new cellular life.

The role of cell reproduction varies with the complexity of the organism. In single-celled organisms, cell division serves as the primary means of reproduction, producing new individuals that are capable of independent life. This allows populations to expand rapidly and respond to changes in their environment. In multicellular organisms, cell reproduction plays a different but equally critical role. It drives growth during development, allows tissues and organs to maintain their structure and function, and replaces cells that are damaged, worn out, or lost. In addition, specialized forms of cell reproduction give rise to reproductive cells, enabling sexual reproduction and the transfer of genetic information to offspring. Through these processes, cell reproduction supports both biological stability and the potential for variation that underlies evolution.



- Topic hierarchy

8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction

8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction

8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis

8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis

8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability

This page titled 8: Cell Reproduction is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction

Prokaryotic Reproduction

Prokaryotic organisms, such as bacteria and archaea, reproduce primarily through **asexual** processes. Because prokaryotic cells lack a nucleus and membrane-bound organelles, their reproductive strategies are structurally simple yet extremely efficient. These mechanisms allow prokaryotes to grow rapidly, adapt to changing environments, and colonize diverse habitats, which is especially important in medical, environmental, and industrial biotechnology.

Binary Fission

The most common method of prokaryotic reproduction is **binary fission**, a process in which one parent cell divides to produce two **genetically identical** daughter cells. Binary fission begins when the cell's single circular chromosome is replicated. Each copy of the DNA attaches to the plasma membrane, and as the cell elongates, the two chromosomes move apart. A division septum then forms at the center of the cell, eventually splitting the cytoplasm and cell membrane into two separate cells.

Binary fission can occur very quickly under favorable conditions. Some bacterial species can complete a full division cycle in as little as 20 minutes. This rapid reproduction explains how bacterial populations can increase dramatically in a short period of time, such as during infections or in nutrient-rich laboratory cultures.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Population Growth and Environmental Limits

Although binary fission can produce exponential population growth, prokaryotic reproduction is strongly influenced by environmental conditions. Factors such as nutrient availability, temperature, pH, oxygen levels, and waste accumulation all affect how quickly cells divide. In laboratory settings, bacterial growth typically follows a predictable pattern consisting of a lag phase, exponential (log) phase, stationary phase, and death phase. Understanding these growth patterns is essential in biotechnology applications such as fermentation, antibiotic testing, and microbial quality control.

Genetic Variation Without Sexual Reproduction

Prokaryotes do not reproduce sexually, but they are still capable of generating genetic diversity. This diversity arises through random mutations during DNA replication and through processes that transfer genetic material between cells. While these processes do not create new organisms directly, they play a critical role in prokaryotic evolution and adaptation. One such process is **conjugation**, in which DNA is transferred from one bacterial cell to another through direct cell-to-cell contact, often via a structure called a pilus. Another process is **transformation**, where a cell takes up free DNA from its surrounding environment. A third mechanism, **transduction**, occurs when bacterial DNA is transferred between cells by viruses that infect bacteria. These mechanisms contribute to the spread of traits such as antibiotic resistance and metabolic capabilities.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Binary Fission in Bacteria: How Prokaryotes Reproduce by Lumina Learning, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u5UyBrgVsvs**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.
Conjugation Transformation Transduction (Horizontal Gene Transfer) by Neural Academy, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=08Q-MVeNeTU**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

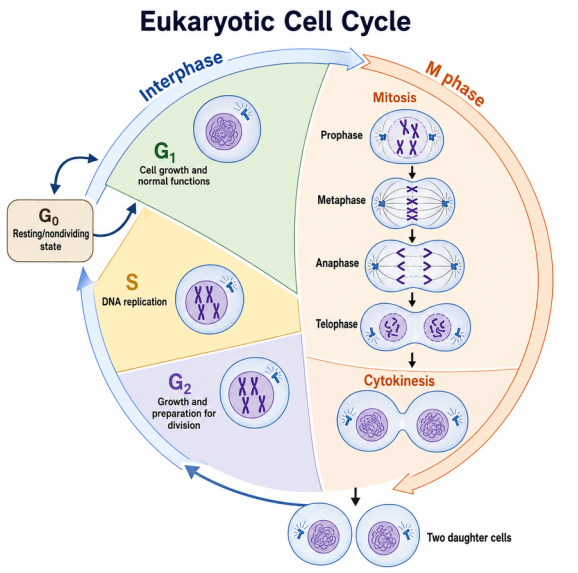
This page titled 8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

8.2: EUKARYOTIC CELL REPRODUCTION

Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction

Sexual reproduction was an early evolutionary innovation after the appearance of eukaryotic cells. The fact that most eukaryotes reproduce sexually is evidence of its evolutionary success. In many animals, it is the only mode of reproduction. And yet, scientists recognize some real disadvantages to sexual reproduction. On the surface, offspring that are genetically identical to the parent may appear to be more advantageous. If the parent organism is successfully occupying a habitat, offspring with the same traits would be similarly successful. There is also the obvious benefit to an organism that can produce offspring by asexual budding, fragmentation, or asexual eggs. These methods of reproduction do not require another organism of the opposite sex. There is no need to expend energy finding or attracting a mate. That energy can be spent on producing more offspring. Indeed, some organisms that lead a solitary lifestyle have retained the ability to reproduce asexually. In addition, asexual populations only have female individuals, so every individual is capable of reproduction. In contrast, the males in sexual populations (half the population) are not producing offspring themselves. Because of this, an asexual population can grow twice as fast as a sexual population in theory. This means that in competition, the asexual population would have the advantage. All of these advantages to asexual reproduction, which are also disadvantages to sexual reproduction, should mean that the number of species with asexual reproduction should be more common.

However, multicellular organisms that exclusively depend on asexual reproduction are exceedingly rare. Why is sexual reproduction so common? This is one of the important questions in biology and has been the focus of much research from the latter half of the twentieth century until now. A likely explanation is that the variation that sexual reproduction creates among offspring is very important to the survival and reproduction of those offspring. The only source of variation in asexual organisms is mutation. This is the ultimate source of variation in sexual organisms. In addition, those different mutations are continually reshuffled from one generation to the next when different parents combine their unique genomes, and the genes are mixed into different combinations by the process of meiosis. Meiosis is the division of the contents of the nucleus that divides the chromosomes among gametes. Variation is introduced during meiosis, as well as when the gametes combine in fertilization. Before a eukaryotic cell divides, it passes through an organized sequence of events known as the cell cycle. The cell cycle consists of interphase and the mitotic phase. During interphase, the cell grows, carries out normal metabolic functions, and replicates its DNA. Interphase is divided into three stages: G_1, S, and G_2. DNA replication occurs during the S phase, ensuring that each daughter cell receives a complete copy of the genome. The mitotic phase includes mitosis and cytokinesis, during which the cell physically divides.



Attribution:
AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis

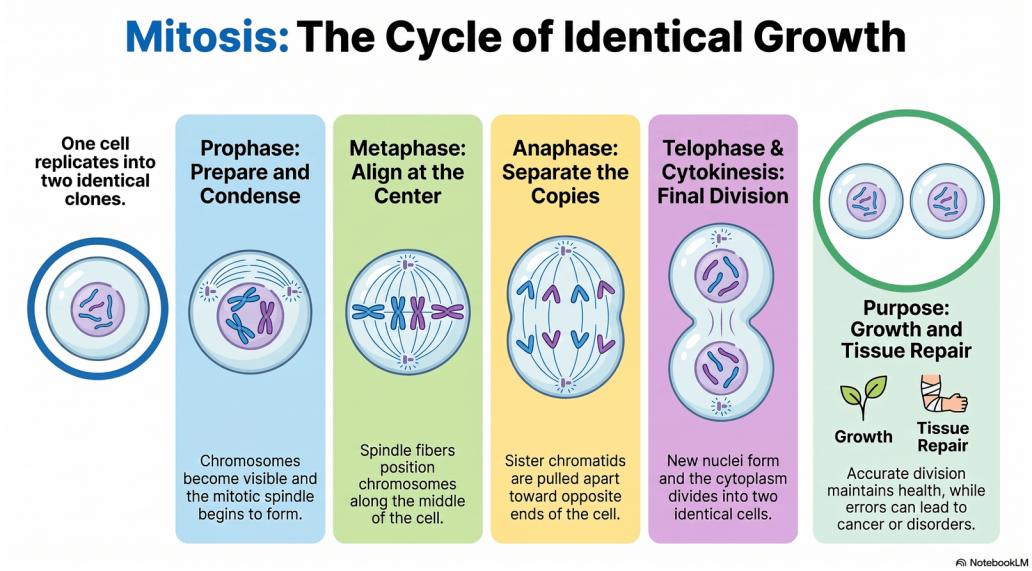
This page titled 8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis

Mitosis

Mitosis is the process by which the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell divides, resulting in two genetically identical nuclei. It occurs in somatic, or body, cells and plays a central role in growth, tissue maintenance, and repair. In unicellular and some multicellular eukaryotes, mitosis also serves as a means of asexual reproduction, allowing new individuals to form without the involvement of gametes. Because mitosis produces daughter cells that are genetically identical to the parent cell, it preserves genetic consistency within tissues and across generations of asexually reproducing organisms.

Mitosis is commonly divided into four sequential stages: prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase.



During **prophase**, duplicated chromosomes condense and become visible under the microscope, while the nuclear envelope begins to break down and the mitotic spindle forms. In **metaphase,** the chromosomes align along the center of the cell at the metaphase plate, ensuring that each daughter nucleus will receive an identical set of chromosomes. During **anaphase**, the sister chromatids separate and are pulled toward opposite poles of the cell as spindle fibers shorten. Finally, during **telophase**, the separated chromosomes arrive at the poles and begin to decondense, and new nuclear membranes form around each set of chromosomes.

Following nuclear division, **cytokinesis** divides the cytoplasm, producing two independent daughter cells. Together, mitosis and cytokinesis ensure the accurate distribution of genetic material and allow organisms to grow, replace damaged or worn-out cells, and maintain the structure and function of their tissues.

Following mitosis, cytokinesis divides the cytoplasm, resulting in two separate daughter cells. In animal cells, this occurs through the formation of a cleavage furrow, while plant cells form a cell plate that develops into a new cell wall. The two resulting cells are genetically identical to each other and to the original parent cell.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Mitosis: "The Cycle of identical Cell Growth", AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
Mitosis 3D Animation | Phases of Mitosis | Cell Cycle and Division | Mitosis and Meiosis by Creative Learning, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DwAFZb8juMQ**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

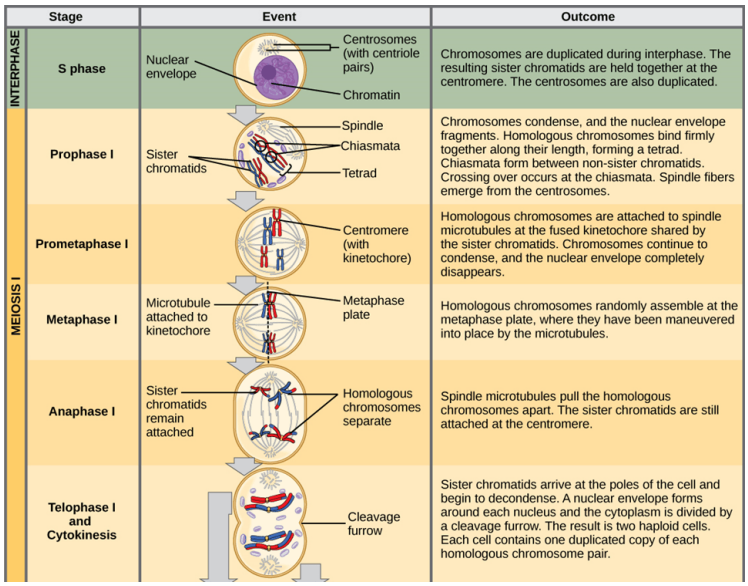
This page titled 8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis

Meiosis and Sexual Reproduction

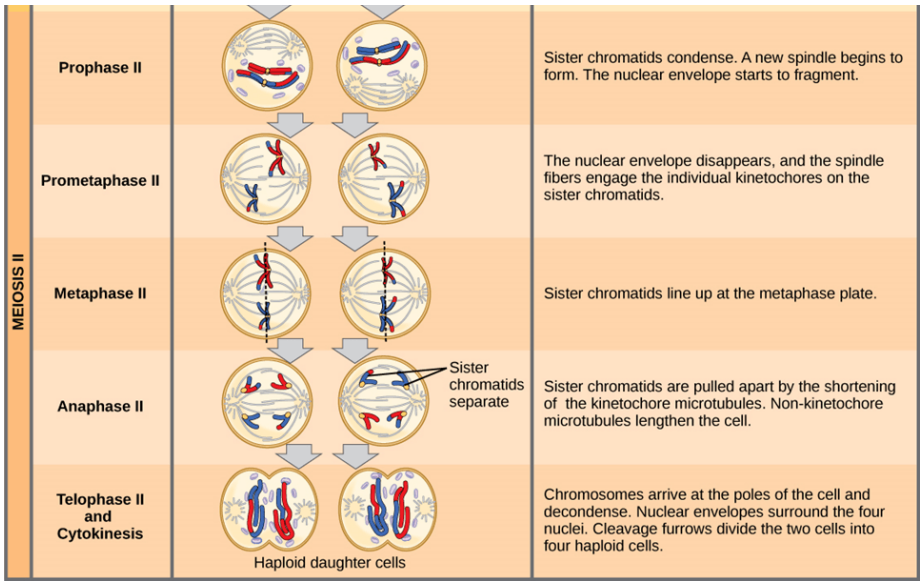
Meiosis is a specialized form of cell division that produces gametes, such as eggs and sperm, and is essential for sexual reproduction. Unlike mitosis, which preserves the chromosome number, meiosis reduces the chromosome number by half, producing haploid cells from an original diploid cell. This reduction is critical because it ensures that when two gametes fuse during fertilization, the resulting offspring has the correct diploid chromosome number. Without meiosis, chromosome numbers would double with each generation, disrupting normal development and genetic balance.Meiosis consists of two successive rounds of cell division, known as meiosis I and meiosis II. These divisions occur after a single round of DNA replication, meaning that the genetic material is copied once but divided twice. This unusual sequence allows meiosis to both reduce chromosome number and introduce genetic variation. As a result, the gametes produced by meiosis contain the correct amount of genetic information while also differing genetically from one another.

Meiosis I is referred to as the reduction division and is unique to meiosis. During this stage, homologous chromosomes—one inherited from each parent—pair closely along their lengths in a process called synapsis. While paired, corresponding regions of the chromosomes can exchange segments of DNA through recombination, or crossing over. This exchange produces chromosomes with new combinations of genes that were not present in either parent. Homologous chromosome pairs then align independently at the center of the cell, a phenomenon known as independent assortment. Because each pair orients randomly, many different combinations of maternal and paternal chromosomes can be produced. The homologous chromosomes are then separated into two different cells, reducing the chromosome number from diploid to haploid.



Meiosis II follows meiosis I and resembles mitosis in its overall mechanics. During this division, the chromosomes, which are still composed of two sister chromatids, align along the center of the cell. The sister chromatids are then separated and pulled toward opposite poles of the cell. Unlike meiosis I, meiosis II does not further reduce the chromosome number; instead, it separates the duplicated genetic material so that each cell receives a complete set of chromosomes.

The final outcome of meiosis is four haploid cells, each genetically distinct from the others and from the original parent cell. In sexually reproducing organisms, these cells develop into gametes. The extensive genetic variation generated during meiosis increases the likelihood that some offspring will be well suited to their environment. This variation is a key driver of evolution and plays a crucial role in the long-term survival and adaptability of species.



YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/L....06%3A_Meiosis
https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/L....06%3A_Meiosis
Cell Division: Meiosis vs Mitosis by Nucleus Medical Media, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GHIlA76-h3c**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability

Importance of Cell Cycle Regulation and Genetic Stability

Eukaryotic cell reproduction is tightly regulated by a series of checkpoints and control mechanisms that coordinate the timing and progression of cell division. These regulatory systems monitor critical events such as DNA replication, chromosome alignment, and chromosome separation to ensure that genetic material is copied accurately and distributed evenly between daughter cells. If errors are detected, the cell cycle can be paused to allow for repair, or the cell may be directed to undergo programmed cell death. Without these safeguards, cells with damaged or incomplete DNA could continue to divide, increasing the risk of harmful consequences.

Failures in the regulation of cell reproduction can lead to serious biological outcomes. Mistakes in chromosome replication or segregation may result in mutations, abnormal chromosome numbers, or structural chromosome damage. In somatic cells, such errors can contribute to uncontrolled cell division and the development of cancer. During meiosis, errors may lead to developmental disorders caused by missing or extra chromosomes. These risks highlight the importance of precise control over both mitosis and meiosis.

Proper regulation of mitosis preserves genetic stability in somatic cells, ensuring that tissues maintain their normal structure and function throughout an organism's life. In contrast, meiosis is designed to introduce genetic variation through processes such as recombination and independent assortment. Together, mitosis and meiosis allow eukaryotic organisms to grow, maintain complex multicellular structures, and reproduce sexually. These complementary processes illustrate the balance between genetic consistency and genetic diversity that underlies the evolutionary success of eukaryotic life.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
Cell Cycle Check Points and Regulation Animation by Dr. G Bhanu Prakash Animated Medical Videos, **https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VLJF8Pf8spw**. Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9: METABOLISM

All living cells require a continuous supply of energy to maintain organization, carry out metabolic reactions, and respond to their environment. **Cellular energy** (the usable chemical energy that powers cellular processes) is stored, transferred, and used through tightly regulated biochemical pathways. A **biochemical pathway** is any organized series of enzyme-controlled chemical reactions in a living cell. The term includes pathways involved in energy production, molecule synthesis, cell signaling, DNA repair, and other cellular processes. A **metabolic pathway** is a type of biochemical pathway specifically involved in metabolism—the breakdown, synthesis, or transformation of molecules. Glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and fatty acid synthesis are metabolic pathways. Therefore, all metabolic pathways are biochemical pathways, but not all biochemical pathways are considered metabolic pathways. In many introductory biology texts, however, the terms are used interchangeably.

Metabolic pathways may be catabolic or anabolic. Catabolic pathways break larger molecules into smaller molecules and release energy. Cellular respiration, for instance, breaks down glucose and captures some of its energy in ATP. Anabolic pathways use energy to build larger molecules from smaller components. Cells use these pathways to produce proteins, nucleic acids, lipids, and other materials needed for growth, maintenance, and repair.

Rather than releasing energy all at once, cells extract and manage energy through a series of controlled reactions. This gradual release allows cells to capture energy efficiently without producing excessive heat or causing cellular damage. Energy is stored within chemical bonds and transferred through metabolic reactions. Much of this energy is carried by high-energy electrons that move between molecules through oxidation–reduction reactions.

Specialized electron carriers, including NAD⁺ and FAD, accept high-energy electrons and become NADH and $FADH_2$. **NADH** is the reduced form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, and **$FADH_2$** is the reduced form of flavin adenine dinucleotide.These carriers temporarily store and transport the electrons to other reactions, where their energy can contribute to ATP production. ATP then directly powers cellular activities such as active transport, movement, and the synthesis of biological molecules.

The substances produced between the beginning and end of a pathway are called **metabolic intermediates**. An intermediate may continue through the same pathway or enter another pathway, creating an interconnected network of cellular reactions. Some pathways are linear, while others form cycles or branch in multiple directions.

Cells regulate biochemical pathways by controlling enzyme activity. When enough of a final product has accumulated, it may inhibit an enzyme near the beginning of the pathway and slow further production. When energy or a particular product is needed, the pathway may become more active. This regulation balances energy production with energy demand, conserves cellular resources, and maintains metabolic stability.

9.1: Aerobic Respiration

9.1.1: Glycolysis

9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle

9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain

9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation

9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences

9.2: Cellular Energy

9.3: Anaerobic Respiration

9.4: Fermentation

9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation

9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation

9.5: Lipid Catabolism

9.6: Protein Catabolism

9.7: Respiration Summary

This page titled 9: Metabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

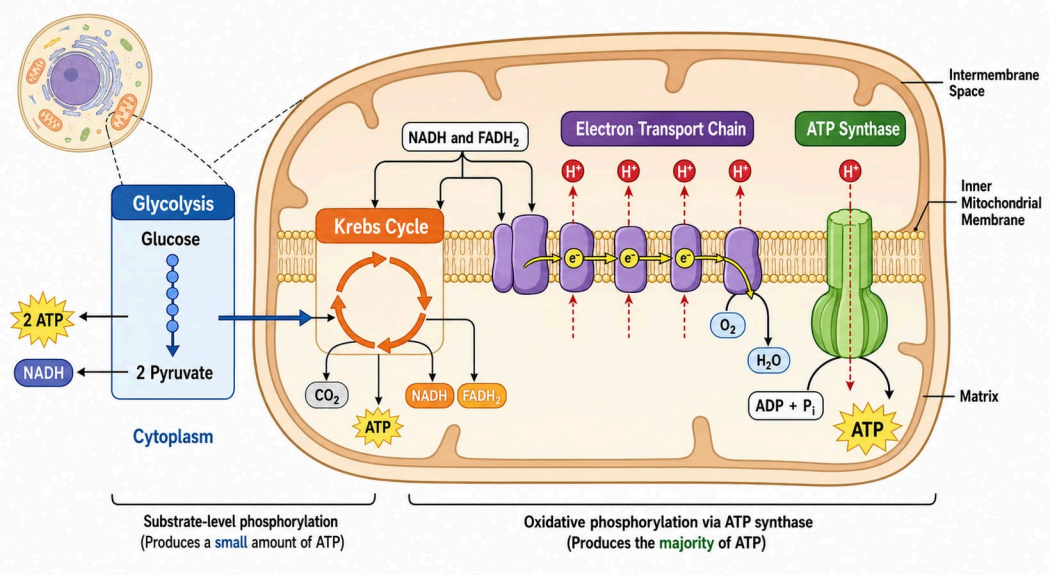
9.1: AEROBIC RESPIRATION

Aerobic respiration (a form of cellular respiration that requires oxygen to produce ATP) is the most efficient energy-producing process used by cells. In this pathway,
energy stored in organic molecules such as glucose is gradually released and captured in ATP through a series of tightly regulated reactions. Oxygen plays a critical role by serving as the final electron acceptor, allowing energy extraction to proceed to completion.

Aerobic respiration occurs in multiple stages that work together to maximize ATP yield. These stages include glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and the electron transport chain. Each stage transfers energy in small, controlled steps, preventing energy loss as heat and allowing cells to regulate ATP production based on demand.

In eukaryotic cells, aerobic respiration primarily takes place in the mitochondria, while in prokaryotic cells it occurs in the cytoplasm and across the cell membrane. Despite differences in cellular structure, the underlying biochemical mechanisms of aerobic respiration are highly conserved across organisms.

Aerobic respiration produces significantly more ATP per molecule of glucose than anaerobic pathways such as fermentation. As a result, it supports energy-intensive processes such as growth, movement, active transport, and biosynthesis.



Attibution: Figure above is *AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

9.1.1: Glycolysis

9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle

9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain

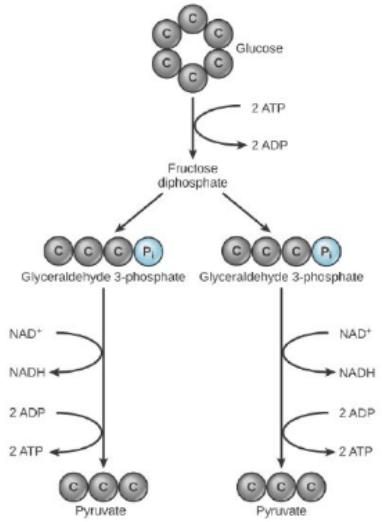
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation

9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences

This page titled 9.1: Aerobic Respiration is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.1.1: Glycolysis

Glycolysis is a crucial biochemical pathway that serves as the primary mechanism for energy production in both prokaryotic



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv...ar_Respiration

and eukaryotic cells. This process occurs in the cytoplasm and represents the first step in cellular respiration, enabling cells to convert glucose into usable energy. Importantly, glycolysis does not require oxygen, making it essential for energy production under anaerobic conditions.

The glycolytic pathway consists of two main phases: the energy investment phase and the energy payoff phase. The process begins when glucose is phosphorylated by the enzyme hexokinase, which requires the consumption of one molecule of ATP. This reaction transforms glucose into glucose-6-phosphate. Following this, a series of enzymatic reactions occurs that rearranges and further phosphorylates the glucose-6-phosphate to produce fructose-1,6-bisphosphate, which requires two ATP molecules in total.

In the energy payoff phase, fructose-1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved into two three-carbon molecules, known as glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (G3P). Each G3P molecule undergoes further transformations, leading to the reduction of NAD+ to NADH and the production of ATP through a process known as substrate-level phosphorylation. A total of four ATP molecules are generated, resulting in a net gain of two ATP molecules after accounting for the two ATP used in the earlier phase. At the end of glycolysis, two molecules of pyruvate are formed.

This page titled 9.1.1: Glycolysis is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

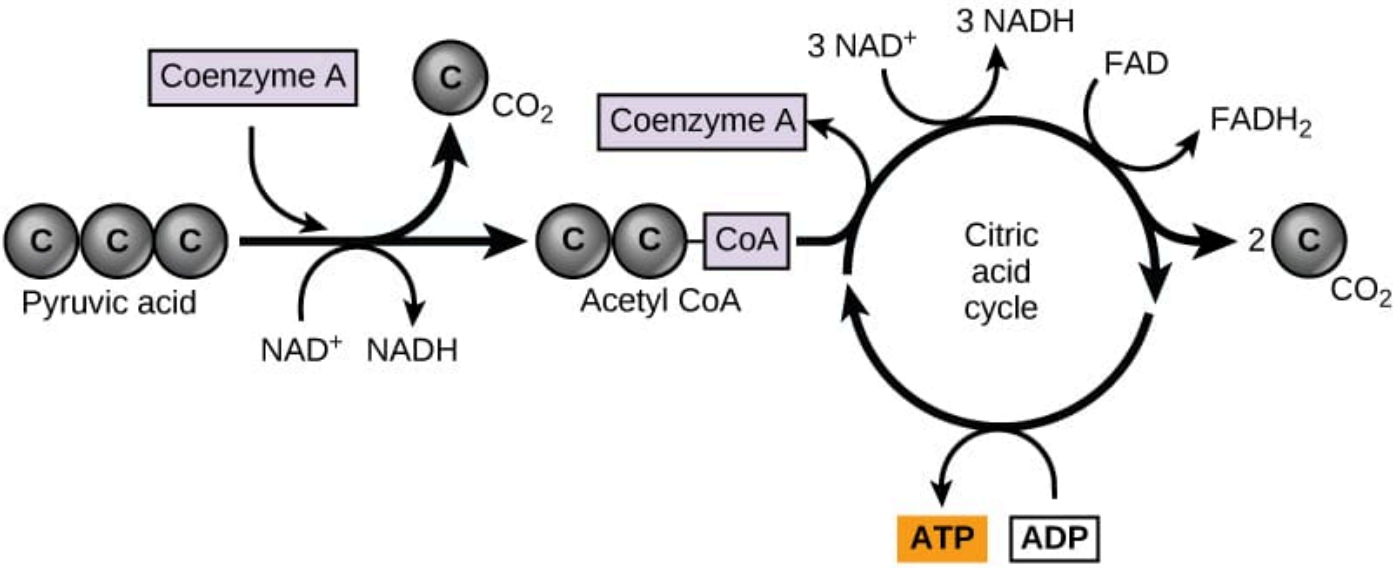
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle

Oxidation of Pyruvate

In eukaryotic cells, the pyruvate molecules produced at the end of glycolysis are transported into the mitochondria, the primary sites of cellular respiration. When oxygen is available, aerobic respiration proceeds. Inside the mitochondrial matrix, pyruvate is converted into a two-carbon acetyl group through the removal of one molecule of carbon dioxide. This acetyl group is then attached to **coenzyme A (CoA)** (a carrier molecule derived from vitamin B_5), forming **acetyl CoA**.

Acetyl CoA serves several functions in the cell, but its primary role is to deliver the acetyl group derived from pyruvate to the next stage of glucose catabolism. This stage, known as the citric acid cycle, also occurs in the mitochondrial matrix of eukaryotic cells. Unlike glycolysis, the citric acid cycle is a closed, cyclic pathway in which the compound used in the first step is regenerated at the end of the pathway.

Citric Acid Cycle



The citric acid cycle (also known as the Kreb Cycle) consists of a series of eight enzyme-catalyzed reactions. During each turn of the cycle, two molecules of carbon dioxide are released, one molecule of ATP (or an equivalent) is produced, and the electron carriers **NAD⁺** and **FAD⁺** are reduced to **NADH** and **$FADH_2$**, respectively. Although the cycle itself does not use oxygen directly, it is considered part of aerobic respiration because the NADH and $FADH_2$ produced must transfer their electrons to the next stage of respiration, a process that ultimately requires oxygen. If oxygen is not available, this electron transfer cannot occur, and the cycle slows or stops.

Each turn of the citric acid cycle processes one acetyl group, contributing two carbon atoms. While two carbon dioxide molecules are released during each turn, these carbon atoms do not originate from the acetyl group entering during that same cycle. Instead, the acetyl-derived carbons are released as carbon dioxide during subsequent turns. As a result, it takes two turns of the cycle to completely process the six carbon atoms originally present in one glucose molecule.

In addition to its role in energy production, the citric acid cycle serves as a source of intermediate compounds used in biosynthesis, including the synthesis of nonessential amino acids. For this reason, the citric acid cycle is considered both catabolic, because it breaks down molecules to release energy, and anabolic, because it provides building blocks for cellular synthesis.

Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv...hosphorylation

This page titled 9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain

The **electron transport chain** is the final energy-extracting system of aerobic respiration and is responsible for generating the proton gradient that drives most ATP production in the cell. Rather than producing ATP directly, the electron transport chain converts the energy stored in high-energy electrons into a form that can be used for ATP synthesis.

Location and Structure

In eukaryotic cells, the electron transport chain is located in the inner mitochondrial membrane. It consists of a series of large protein complexes and mobile electron carriers arranged in a precise sequence. This organization allows electrons to be passed efficiently from one component to the next while minimizing energy loss.

The chain includes several major protein complexes that accept electrons from reduced electron carriers generated earlier in respiration. **NADH** donates electrons to the first complex in the chain, while **$FADH_2$** donates electrons at a later point. Because $FADH_2$ enters the chain downstream of NADH, it contributes less energy to ATP production.

Electron Flow and Energy Release

As electrons move through the electron transport chain, they are transferred from one protein complex to the next in a series of oxidation–reduction reactions. Each transfer releases a small amount of energy. Rather than being released all at once, this energy is captured incrementally and used to perform work.

The primary work performed by the electron transport chain is the active transport of protons (H^+ ions). Energy released from electron transfer is used to pump protons from the mitochondrial matrix into the intermembrane space. This process creates both a concentration gradient and an electrical gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane.

Formation of the Proton Gradient

The accumulation of protons in the intermembrane space generates an electrochemical gradient known as the proton motive force. This gradient represents stored potential energy, similar to water held behind a dam. The greater the gradient, the more potential energy is available to drive ATP synthesis.

Maintaining this gradient depends on the integrity of the inner mitochondrial membrane. If the membrane becomes leaky or damaged, the gradient dissipates, and ATP production decreases. For this reason, membrane structure is critical for efficient aerobic respiration.

Role of Oxygen

Oxygen plays an essential role in the electron transport chain as the final electron acceptor. At the end of the chain, molecular oxygen (O_2) in the cytoplasm is split in half then each O^- accepts an additional electron from the chain. The O^{2-} then combines with two protons (H^+) forming water . This step is crucial because it prevents the buildup of electrons within the chain enabling the chain to continiously move H^+ across the mitochondrion membrane in eukaryotes (plasma membrane in prokaryotes).

If oxygen is not available, electrons cannot be removed from the chain, causing the entire process to stop. As a result, the proton gradient cannot be maintained, and oxidative phosphorylation ceases. This is why the electron transport chain is considered an oxygen-dependent process.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"The Electron Transport Chain Explained." Bioman Biology. YouTube, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zJNx1DDqIVo. YouTube Standard License. No changes were made

This page titled 9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

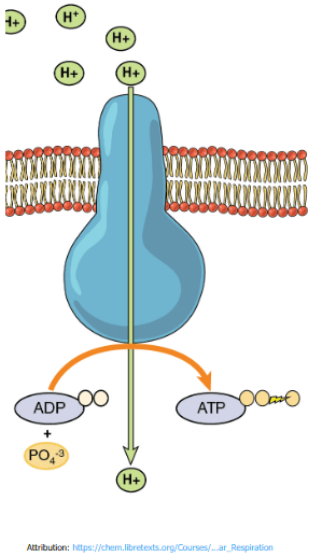
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation

Oxidative phosphorylation (the process by which ATP is produced using energy stored in a proton gradient) is the final and most productive stage of aerobic respiration. This process converts the potential energy generated by the electron transport chain into ATP, the molecule that directly powers cellular work.

The Proton Gradient and Chemiosmosis

As electrons move through the electron transport chain, energy is used to pump protons (H^+ ions) from the mitochondrial matrix into the intermembrane space. This creates an electrochemical gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane, consisting of both a difference in proton concentration and a difference in electrical charge. The stored energy in this gradient is referred to as the proton motive force.

Protons cannot freely diffuse back into the matrix because the inner mitochondrial membrane is largely impermeable to ions. Instead, protons return to the matrix through a specialized protein complex called ATP synthase. This process, known as **chemiosmosis** (the movement of ions across a membrane to generate ATP), links the proton gradient to ATP production.



Attribution: https://chem.libretexts.org/Courses/...ar_Respiration

ATP Synthase and ATP Formation

ATP synthase is a large, membrane-bound enzyme that functions like a molecular turbine. As protons flow through ATP synthase down their concentration gradient, the enzyme undergoes structural changes that drive the synthesis of ATP from ADP and inorganic phosphate. The energy of proton movement is directly converted into chemical energy stored in ATP.

Each rotation of ATP synthase produces multiple ATP molecules, making oxidative phosphorylation far more efficient than substrate-level phosphorylation. The exact number of ATP molecules generated depends on factors such as proton gradient strength and membrane integrity.

Dependence on Oxygen

Although oxygen is not used directly in ATP synthesis, oxidative phosphorylation depends on oxygen because it serves as the final electron acceptor in the electron transport chain. By accepting electrons and forming water, oxygen allows electron flow to continue and the proton gradient to be maintained. Without oxygen, electron transport stops, the proton gradient collapses, and ATP production through oxidative phosphorylation ceases.

Efficiency and ATP Yield

Oxidative phosphorylation produces the majority of ATP generated during aerobic respiration. Compared to glycolysis and the citric acid cycle, which produce ATP directly in small amounts, oxidative phosphorylation yields a much larger quantity of ATP per molecule of glucose. This high efficiency supports energy-demanding cellular processes such as active transport, biosynthesis, and movement. From one molecule of glucose, oxidative phosphorylation typically produces **about 26–28 ATP molecules**, depending on cell type and shuttle mechanisms used to transport electrons into the mitochondria. When combined with ATP produced earlier by glycolysis and the citric acid cycle, aerobic respiration yields a total of approximately **30–32 ATP per glucose molecule for eukaryotes.** In prokaryotes, from one molecule of glucose, oxidative phosphorylation typically produces **about 26–28 ATP molecules.** Since these cells do not have mitochondria the total amount of ATP produced from one glucose molecule during aerobic respiration is approximately **34-38 ATP for prokaryotes.**

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Gh2P5CmCC0M title cellular respiration author Bozeman Science

This page titled 9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences

Aerobic respiration occurs in both eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells and serves the same fundamental purpose in each: the efficient extraction of energy from organic molecules to produce ATP. Despite major structural differences between these two cell types, the core biochemical pathways of aerobic respiration are highly conserved.

Similarities

Both eukaryotes and prokaryotes use the same major metabolic pathways to carry out aerobic respiration. Glycolysis occurs in the cytoplasm in both cell types and produces pyruvate, ATP, and reduced electron carriers. Pyruvate is further oxidized, and carbon dioxide is released as glucose-derived carbon atoms are fully broken down.

In both eukaryotes and prokaryotes, aerobic respiration relies on an electron transport chain and oxidative phosphorylation to generate the majority of ATP. High-energy electrons carried by NADH and $FADH_2$ are transferred through a series of membrane-associated proteins, creating a proton gradient. This gradient then drives ATP synthesis through ATP synthase. In both cell types, oxygen serves as the final electron acceptor, forming water and allowing electron flow to continue.

The overall outcome of aerobic respiration is also similar: efficient ATP production, release of carbon dioxide, and dependence on oxygen for maximum energy yield.

Differences

The primary differences between eukaryotic and prokaryotic aerobic respiration are related to cellular organization and location of the pathways. In eukaryotic cells, aerobic respiration is compartmentalized. Glycolysis occurs in the cytoplasm, while pyruvate oxidation, the citric acid cycle, and the electron transport chain occur in the mitochondria. The electron transport chain is located in the inner mitochondrial membrane, and the proton gradient forms between the intermembrane space and the mitochondrial matrix.

Prokaryotic cells lack mitochondria and other membrane-bound organelles. As a result, all stages of aerobic respiration occur within the cytoplasm or across the plasma membrane. The electron transport chain is embedded in the cell membrane, and the proton gradient forms between the cytoplasm and the external environment or periplasmic space.

Another difference lies in structural flexibility. Prokaryotes exhibit greater variation in electron transport chain components and can use alternative enzymes or carriers, allowing them to adapt to different environments. Eukaryotic electron transport chains are more uniform across species.

Summary

In both eukaryotes and prokaryotes, aerobic respiration follows the same fundamental biochemical logic and produces ATP through electron transfer and oxidative phosphorylation. The key distinction is organizational rather than chemical: eukaryotes perform aerobic respiration within specialized organelles, while prokaryotes carry out the same processes using their cell membrane and cytoplasm. This shared metabolic strategy highlights the evolutionary conservation of energy production across life.

Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Anaerobic Respiration

Feature	Prokaryotic Anaerobic Respiration	Eukaryotic Anaerobic Respiration
Location	Cytoplasm and plasma membrane	Cytoplasm
Organisms	Common in many bacteria and archaea	Occurs in some fungi and animal cells
Oxygen requirement	Does not require oxygen	Does not require oxygen
Electron transport chain	Often present	Usually absent
Final electron acceptor	Substances other than oxygen (nitrate, sulfate, carbon dioxide)	Organic molecules such as pyruvate
ATP production	More ATP than fermentation	Less ATP produced
Main process	Anaerobic respiration or fermentation	Primarily fermentation
End products	Varies by organism	Lactic acid or ethanol and carbon dioxide
Cellular structures involved	Plasma membrane enzymes	Cytoplasmic enzymes
Metabolic diversity	Highly diverse	More limited

Similarities

- Both occur without oxygen.
- Both begin with **glycolysis** (the breakdown of glucose to produce ATP).
- Both produce ATP for cellular energy.
- Both use enzymes to transfer electrons during metabolism.
- Both regenerate electron carriers needed for glycolysis to continue.

Attribution: Table generated using CharGpt AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.2: Cellular Energy

This page titled 9.2: Cellular Energy is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.3: Anaerobic Respiration

Anaerobic respiration (a form of cellular respiration that occurs in the absence of oxygen) allows cells to continue producing ATP when oxygen is not available. Like aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration uses an electron transport chain and oxidative phosphorylation, but it differs in the type of molecule that serves as the final electron acceptor.

In anaerobic respiration, oxygen is replaced by an alternative electron acceptor, such as nitrate (NO_3^-), sulfate (SO_4^{2-}), or carbon dioxide (CO_2). These molecules accept electrons at the end of the electron transport chain, allowing electron flow to continue and ATP to be generated.

Key Features of Anaerobic Respiration

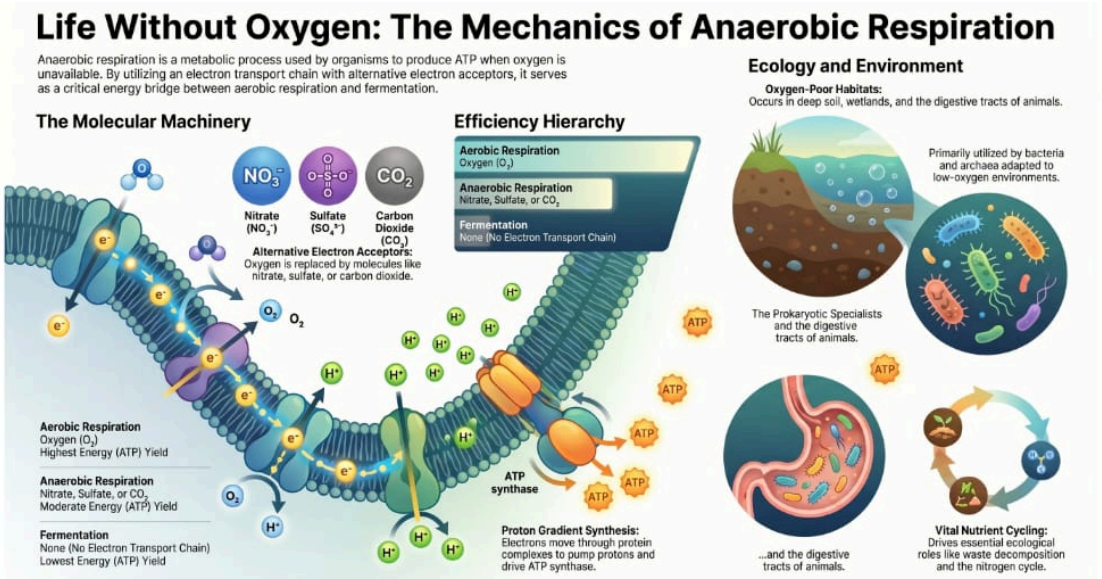
Anaerobic respiration still relies on oxidation–reduction reactions and the transfer of high-energy electrons through membrane-bound protein complexes. As electrons move through the electron transport chain, protons are pumped across a membrane, creating a proton gradient. This gradient drives ATP synthesis through ATP synthase in the same general manner as aerobic respiration.

However, because alternative electron acceptors are less effective than oxygen at pulling electrons through the chain, anaerobic respiration produces less ATP than aerobic respiration. Despite this lower efficiency, anaerobic respiration yields more ATP than fermentation, which does not use an electron transport chain.

Organisms That Use Anaerobic Respiration

Anaerobic respiration is most commonly found in prokaryotes, particularly bacteria and archaea that live in oxygen-poor environments such as deep soil, sediments, wetlands, and the digestive tracts of animals. These organisms play important ecological roles, including nutrient cycling and waste decomposition.

Different organisms use different electron acceptors depending on their environment. For example, some bacteria use nitrate as a final electron acceptor in a process that contributes to the nitrogen cycle, while others use sulfate in sulfur-rich environments.



Attribution: "Life Without Oxygen: The Mechanics of Anaerobic Respiration" generated using NotebookLM AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 9.3: Anaerobic Respiration is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

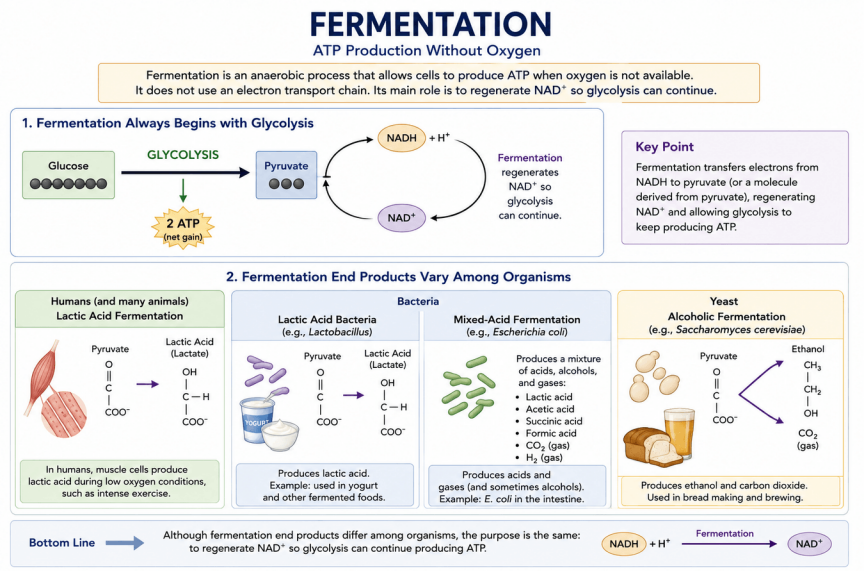
9.4: FERMENTATION

Fermentation (an anaerobic metabolic process that allows cells to produce ATP in the absence of oxygen) enables energy production when aerobic respiration cannot occur. Unlike aerobic and anaerobic respiration, fermentation does not use an electron transport chain. Instead, its primary role is to regenerate NAD⁺ so that glycolysis can continue to produce ATP. Fermentation always begins with glycolysis, which breaks down glucose into pyruvate and produces a small amount of ATP and NADH. Because glycolysis requires NAD⁺, cells must continuously replenish this electron carrier. When oxygen or alternative electron acceptors are unavailable, fermentation regenerates NAD⁺ by transferring electrons from NADH to pyruvate or a molecule derived from pyruvate, allowing glycolysis to continue.

The end products of fermentation vary among organisms. In humans and many other animals, muscle cells produce lactic acid (lactate) during periods of low oxygen availability, such as intense exercise. Bacterial fermentation always produces one or more acids, although some species also produce alcohols and gases such as carbon dioxide or hydrogen. The specific products depend on the metabolic pathways of the organism. For example, *Lactobacillus* species convert sugars primarily into lactic acid during yogurt production, while *Escherichia coli* carries out mixed-acid fermentation, producing lactic acid, acetic acid, succinic acid, formic acid, carbon dioxide, and hydrogen gas. Yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) performs alcoholic fermentation, producing ethanol and carbon dioxide during bread making and brewing. Although the end products differ among organisms, the primary purpose of fermentation is always the same: to regenerate NAD⁺ so glycolysis can continue producing ATP.

Purpose of Fermentation

The main function of fermentation is not to produce large amounts of ATP but to maintain the supply of NAD⁺ needed for glycolysis. Without fermentation, glycolysis would stop once all available NAD⁺ is reduced to NADH, halting ATP production entirely. As a result, fermentation allows cells to survive and function under low-oxygen or oxygen-free conditions, even though ATP yield is much lower than in aerobic respiration.



Attribution: "Fermentation: ATP Production Without Oxygen" generated using NotebookLM AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation

9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation

This page titled 9.4: Fermentation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

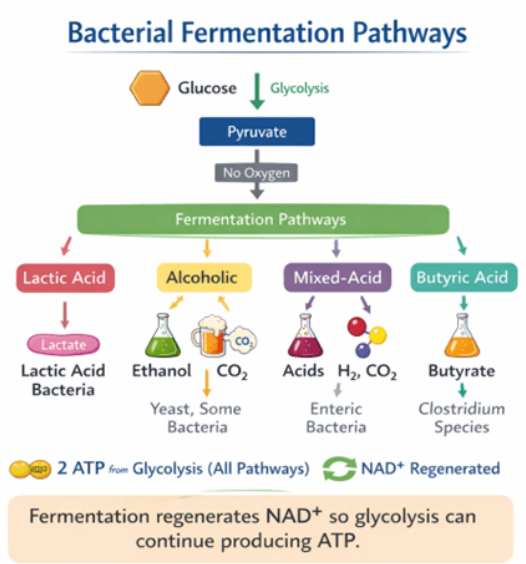
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation

Fermentation in bacteria is an anaerobic metabolic process that allows cells to produce ATP when oxygen or other external electron acceptors are unavailable. Unlike aerobic or anaerobic respiration, bacterial fermentation does not use an electron transport chain. Instead, it relies entirely on glycolysis for ATP production and uses organic molecules as internal electron acceptors to regenerate NAD⁺.

Bacterial fermentation begins with glycolysis, in which glucose is broken down into pyruvate. This process produces a small amount of ATP through substrate-level phosphorylation and reduces NAD⁺ to NADH. Because glycolysis requires a continuous supply of NAD⁺, bacteria must regenerate it to keep ATP production going. Fermentation accomplishes this by transferring electrons from NADH back to pyruvate or to molecules derived from pyruvate, restoring NAD⁺.

A defining feature of bacterial fermentation is its metabolic diversity. Different bacterial species produce different end products depending on their enzymes and environmental conditions. Some bacteria perform lactic acid fermentation, producing lactate as the primary end product. Others carry out alcoholic fermentation, generating ethanol and carbon dioxide. Many enteric bacteria use mixed-acid fermentation, producing a combination of organic acids such as lactic acid, acetic acid, and succinic acid, along with gases like hydrogen and carbon dioxide. Certain anaerobic bacteria produce butyrate through butyric acid fermentation.

Because fermentation produces ATP only during glycolysis, it yields a net gain of two ATP molecules per glucose molecule. Although this is far less efficient than aerobic respiration, fermentation allows bacteria to survive and grow in oxygen-limited environments such as soil, sediments, the gastrointestinal tract, and anaerobic bioreactors.



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/@api/deki...?origin=mt-web

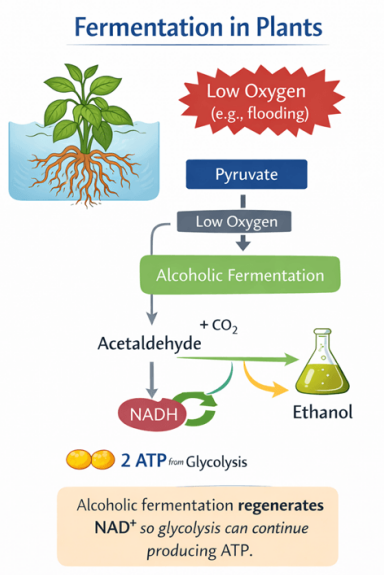
This page titled 9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation

Fermentation in Plants

In plants, fermentation is a temporary anaerobic pathway that allows cells to continue producing ATP when oxygen is limited. This most commonly occurs during flooding, waterlogged soil conditions, or in tissues where oxygen diffusion is restricted. Under these conditions, aerobic respiration slows because oxygen is required for the electron transport chain to function. Plant cells rely primarily on alcoholic fermentation

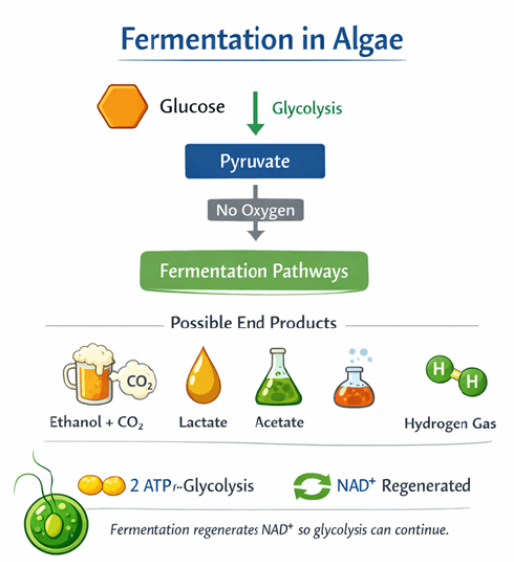
Fermentation in plants begins with glycolysis, which breaks down glucose into pyruvate and produces a small amount of ATP and NADH. When oxygen is unavailable, pyruvate cannot enter the mitochondria for aerobic respiration. Instead, it undergoes a two-step conversion in the cytoplasm.First, pyruvate is converted into acetaldehyde, releasing carbon dioxide. Then, acetaldehyde is reduced to ethanol using electrons from NADH. This reaction regenerates NAD⁺, allowing glycolysis to continue.



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/@api/deki...?origin=mt-web

Fermentation in Algae

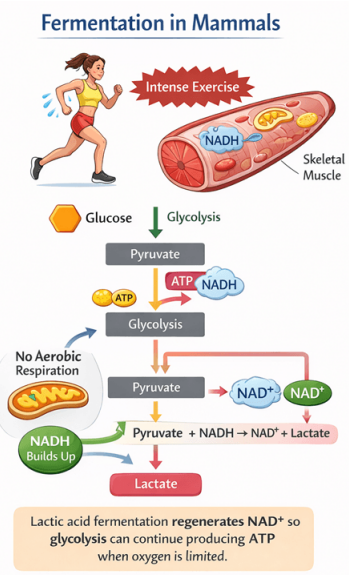
Although many algae are photosynthetic and produce oxygen during daylight, they may experience anaerobic conditions at night or in dense aquatic environments where oxygen becomes limited. Under these conditions, algae shift from aerobic respiration to fermentation in order to maintain ATP production. Fermentation in algae begins with glycolysis, which produces pyruvate, ATP, and NADH. When oxygen is absent, pyruvate is redirected into alternative pathways rather than entering the mitochondria for aerobic respiration. Many algae perform alcoholic fermentation, converting pyruvate into ethanol and carbon dioxide, similar to plants and yeast. However, some algal species exhibit greater metabolic flexibility and can produce a variety of fermentation end products, including lactate, acetate, formate, and even hydrogen gas. For example, certain green algae such as *Chlamydomonas* can generate hydrogen under anaerobic conditions through specialized enzymatic reactions. This ability has attracted interest in renewable energy research because hydrogen is a clean fuel source.



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/@api/deki...?origin=mt-web

Fermentation in Mammals

In mammals, fermentation occurs as **lactic acid fermentation.** Lactic acid fermentation takes place primarily in **skeletal muscle cells** during periods of intense physical activity, such as sprinting or heavy lifting. Under these conditions, oxygen cannot be delivered to muscle tissue fast enough to meet energy demands. As a result, the electron transport chain slows, NADH accumulates, and NAD⍰ becomes limited. To prevent glycolysis from stopping, muscle cells use fermentation to regenerate NAD⍰, allowing ATP production to continue even without oxygen. In lactic acid fermentation, pyruvate accepts electrons from NADH and is converted into **lactate**. This reaction regenerates NAD⍰, which is required for glycolysis to proceed. Lactate accumulation is often associated with muscle fatigue, however, it is not the direct cause of fatigue or soreness. Instead, lactate formation helps delay fatigue by allowing ATP production to continue under low-oxygen conditions. Once oxygen levels are restored, lactate can be converted back into pyruvate and further metabolized.



Attribution: https://bio.libretexts.org/@api/deki...?origin=mt-web

This page titled 9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.5: Lipid Catabolism

Lipid catabolism (the metabolic process by which fats are broken down to release energy) is a major source of ATP in cells, particularly during prolonged energy demand such as fasting, endurance activity, or low carbohydrate availability. Because lipids store large amounts of chemical energy, their breakdown yields significantly more ATP per molecule than carbohydrates or proteins.

Lipids are primarily stored as triglycerides and must be broken down into smaller components before they can enter energy-producing pathways.

Breakdown of Triglycerides

The first step in lipid catabolism is the breakdown of triglycerides into their component parts: fatty acids and glycerol. This process releases fatty acids, which serve as the primary energy-rich molecules, and glycerol, which can be converted into intermediates of glycolysis.

Once released, fatty acids are transported into the cell and, in eukaryotes, into the mitochondria, where most lipid catabolism occurs.

Beta Oxidation of Fatty Acids

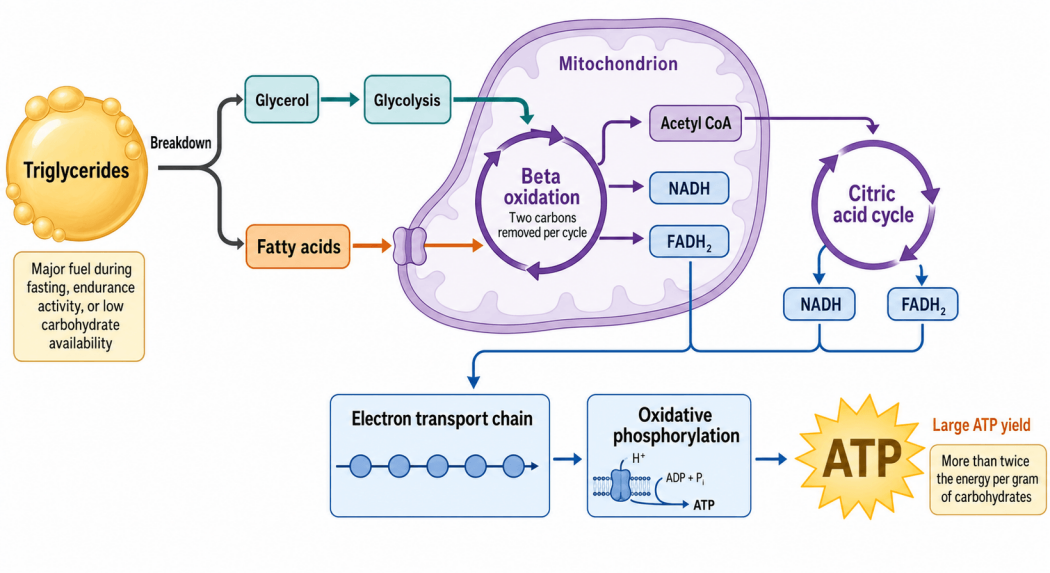
Fatty acids are broken down through **beta oxidation** (a cyclic pathway that shortens fatty acids two carbons at a time). During each cycle of beta oxidation, a two-carbon unit is removed from the fatty acid and converted into acetyl CoA. At the same time, high-energy electrons are captured in the form of NADH and $FADH_2$.

This process continues until the entire fatty acid chain has been converted into multiple acetyl CoA molecules. These acetyl CoA molecules then enter the citric acid cycle, where further oxidation occurs and additional electron carriers are produced.

ATP Production from Lipids

Lipid catabolism yields large amounts of ATP because fatty acids are highly reduced molecules rich in high-energy electrons. The NADH and $FADH_2$ produced during beta oxidation and the citric acid cycle deliver electrons to the electron transport chain, driving oxidative phosphorylation and ATP synthesis.

As a result, lipids provide more than twice the energy per gram compared to carbohydrates, making them an efficient long-term energy storage molecule



Attribution: Figure generated using CharGpt AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 9.5: Lipid Catabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.6: Protein Catabolism

Protein catabolism (the metabolic process by which proteins are broken down into amino acids and used for energy or biosynthesis) allows cells to access nitrogen and carbon skeletons when proteins are no longer needed for structure or function. While carbohydrates and lipids are the preferred energy sources, proteins can be used as an alternative fuel, particularly during prolonged fasting, starvation, or when excess amino acids are present.

Protein catabolism does not occur as a single pathway. Instead, it involves a series of coordinated reactions that dismantle proteins, remove nitrogen-containing groups, and redirect the remaining carbon components into central metabolic pathways.

Breakdown of Proteins to Amino Acids

The first step in protein catabolism is the digestion or degradation of proteins into their individual **amino acids** (the building blocks of proteins). In multicellular organisms, this process begins with digestion in the gastrointestinal tract, while within cells, damaged or unneeded proteins are broken down by specialized enzyme systems.

Once released, amino acids may be reused for protein synthesis or directed toward catabolic pathways if they are present in excess or if energy is required.

Removal of the Amino Group

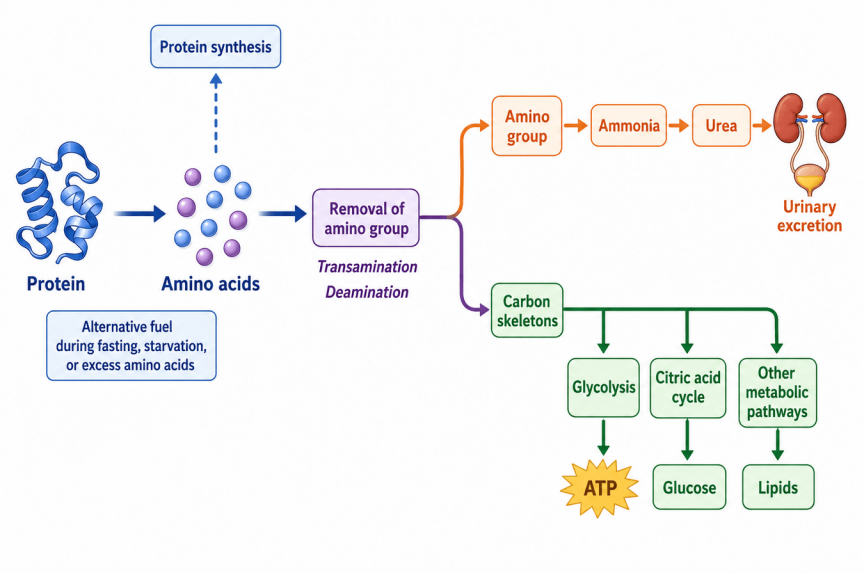
Amino acids cannot enter energy-producing pathways directly because they contain nitrogen, which must be removed. This occurs through reactions such as **deamination** (the removal of an amino group from an amino acid) and **transamination** (the transfer of an amino group from one amino acid to another molecule). These reactions separate the nitrogen-containing amino group from the carbon skeleton.

The removed amino groups are converted into waste products that must be safely excreted. In humans and many other organisms, toxic ammonia is converted into urea and eliminated through the urinary system.

Fate of the Carbon Skeletons

After removal of the amino group, the remaining carbon skeletons are converted into metabolic intermediates. Depending on the amino acid, these intermediates may enter glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, or other central metabolic pathways. In this way, protein-derived carbon atoms can be used to produce ATP, synthesize glucose, or generate lipids.

Because different amino acids enter metabolism at different points, protein catabolism contributes flexibility to cellular energy production.



Attribution: Figure generated using CharGpt AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 9.6: Protein Catabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

9.7: Respiration Summary

Aerobic Respiration vs. Anaerobic Respiration vs. Fermentation

Feature	Aerobic Respiration	Anaerobic Respiration	Fermentation
Oxygen requirement	Requires oxygen	Does not require oxygen	Does not require oxygen
Final electron acceptor	Oxygen	Inorganic molecule other than oxygen (e.g., nitrate, sulfate, CO_2)	Organic molecule (e.g., pyruvate or an acetaldehyde)
Location in eukaryotic cells	Cytoplasm and mitochondria	Cytoplasm and mitochondria	Cytoplasm
Electron transport chain	Present	Present	Absent
ATP production	Large amount (~30–32 ATP per glucose)	Moderate amount (less than aerobic respiration)	Small amount (2 ATP per glucose)
Efficiency	Most efficient	More efficient than fermentation	Least efficient
Main purpose	Maximum ATP production	ATP production without oxygen	Regenerate NAD^+ so glycolysis can continue
Common organisms	Most plants and animals	Many bacteria and archaea	Yeast, some bacteria, and animal muscle cells
End products	Carbon dioxide and water	Varies by organism (e.g., nitrate → nitrogen, sulfate → hydrogen sulfide, CO_2, methane)	Lactic acid or ethanol and carbon dioxide
Dependence on glycolysis	Begins with glycolysis	Begins with glycolysis	Relies entirely on glycolysis

Similarities

All begin with **glycolysis** (the breakdown of glucose to produce ATP).	All produce **ATP** for cellular energy.	All involve enzyme-controlled metabolic reactions.	All transfer electrons during energy production.	All help cells obtain energy from organic molecules.

Attribution: "Aerobic Respiration vs Anaerobic Respiration vs Fermentation" generated using ChatGPT AI and modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under CC BY-NC-SA.

This page titled 9.7: Respiration Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

10: COMMON ANIMAL MODELS IN BIOTECHNOLOGY

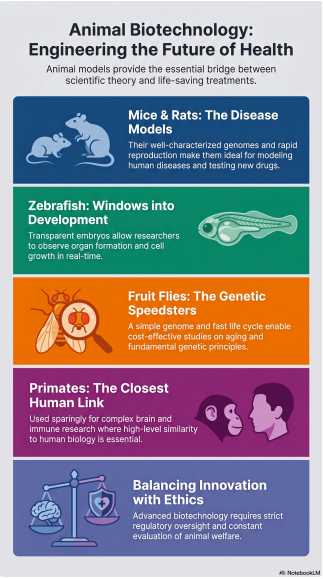
Animal biotechnology is a rapidly evolving field that applies biological techniques to animals in order to improve health, agriculture, and scientific understanding. At its core, **animal biotechnology** (the use of scientific and engineering principles to modify animals or animal derived for practical purposes) combines knowledge from genetics, molecular biology, and physiology to address real-world challenges.

From the development of life-saving medicines to improvements in food production, animal biotechnology plays a central role in modern society. For example, animals can be genetically modified to produce therapeutic proteins used to treat diseases such as diabetes and hemophilia. In agriculture, biotechnology has enabled the breeding of livestock with enhanced growth rates, disease resistance, and improved nutritional value. These innovations help meet the demands of a growing global population while promoting more efficient and sustainable practices.

Animal biotechnology is also essential in biomedical research. Scientists use **model organisms** (non-human species that are studied to understand biological processes and diseases in humans) to investigate how genes function and how diseases develop. These models allow researchers to test new treatments and gain insights that would not be possible in humans alone.

At the same time, this field raises important ethical and regulatory considerations. Questions about animal welfare, genetic modification, and the appropriate use of biotechnology must be carefully evaluated. As a result, animal biotechnology exists at the intersection of science, ethics, and public policy.

A variety of animals are used in research, each offering unique advantages depending on the scientific question being addressed.



Mice and Rats

When researchers work with mice and rats, they leverage several key strengths: these rodents are small and relatively inexpensive to house, they reproduce quickly and their genomes are well characterized. A broad suite of genetic tools exists for these species, including methods for creating gene knockouts, knockins, and conditional alleles, which makes it possible to model human diseases, study gene function, and test therapies in a genetically tractable system. Because of these features, mice and rats are central to studies spanning genetics, cancer research, immunology, neuroscience, metabolism, and early-stage drug development. However, despite the many parallels between rodent biology and human biology, there are important species differences in anatomy, physiology, and disease progression that can limit translational relevance. Responsible use requires careful welfare considerations, proper husbandry, and recognition that findings in rodents do not always translate directly to humans, which is why complementary models are often employed.

Zebrafish

Zebrafish offer a different set of advantages, particularly in developmental biology. Their embryos are transparent and develop outside the mother, which permits direct, real-time observation of growth, organ formation, and cell lineage, enabling researchers to witness developmental processes as they unfold. Their rapid reproduction and large brood sizes make them highly suitable for genetic screens and high-throughput studies. As a result, zebrafish are frequently used to study vertebrate organ development—such as the heart, vasculature, and nervous system—and to investigate gene function using relatively straightforward genetic manipulation. Nevertheless, zebrafish are non-mammalian and are kept at a different physiological baseline than mammals; some aspects of mammalian physiology do not map directly onto zebrafish. Consequently, while they excel at screening and basic developmental biology, findings often require cross-species validation and careful extrapolation when applied to human biology.

Drosophila (fruit flies)

Drosophila (fruit flies), are another cornerstone of model systems in biology. They possess a simple and well-annotated genome, a rapid life cycle, and ease of culturing in large numbers, which together enable fast and cost-effective genetic analyses and functional studies. Drosophila are invaluable for investigating fundamental genetic principles, developmental pathways, neurobiology, aging, and circadian biology, and they support both forward and reverse genetic screens that illuminate gene function within intact organisms. Yet, as invertebrates with comparatively simpler organ systems, flies do not capture the full complexity of mammalian physiology. While many cellular pathways are conserved and insights gained in flies can be highly informative, translating these findings to human biology often requires validation in vertebrate models and, eventually, in human-relevant systems.

Non-human Primates

Non-human primates, such as monkeys, occupy a distinct place in research due to their close anatomical, neural, and immunological similarities to humans. They are often used when questions hinge on complex brain functions, behavior, and diseases that closely resemble human conditions, where other models may fall short in translational relevance. Primate studies can provide crucial insights into higher-order cognitive processes, nuanced social behavior, and immune responses that more closely mirror human biology. However, this model is used sparingly because it is costly to maintain, involves longer lifespans, and raises substantial ethical and welfare considerations. Regulation is stringent, and studies typically involve small sample sizes with careful justification. The decision to use non-human primates is thus taken with caution, often only when questions cannot be adequately addressed in smaller animals or when the translational value justifies the ethical and practical burdens.

Attribution:Health"
"Animal Biotechnology: Engineering the Future of Health" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

10.1: Transgenic Animals

10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals

This page titled 10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

10.1: Transgenic Animals

Transgenic animals are a powerful tool in biotechnology, allowing scientists to modify genetic material to study gene function, model diseases, and produce valuable biological products. By introducing new DNA into an organism, researchers can observe how genes influence traits and biological processes, providing insights that are not possible through observation alone. A **transgenic animal** (an organism that has had foreign DNA intentionally intentionally inserted into is genome) contains genetic material that has been added or altered using biotechnology. This inserted DNA, known as a transgene, becomes part of the organism's genome and can be passed on to future generations.Transgenic animals are widely used in biomedical research to study diseases, test therapies, and understand gene function. They are also used in agriculture and pharmaceutical production, making them an important component of modern biotechnology. Creating transgenic animals requires methods that allow DNA to enter cells and integrate into the genome. These methods are typically applied at early developmental stages so that the genetic change is present in all cells of the organism.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Knockouts: A Special Case of Transgenics

A **knockout animal** (an organism in which a specific gene has been intentionally or "knocked out") is used to study the function of genes. Instead of adding a gene, scientists disable an existing gene and observe the effects. If the absence of a gene results in a specific trait or disorder, researchers can better understand its role in normal biological processes. Knockout animals are widely used to study diseases such as cancer, neurological disorders, and immune system dysfunctions. Modern gene-editing tools like CRISPR-Cas9 have made this process faster and more precise.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Transgenic Animals as Bioreactors

Transgenic animals can be used as **bioreactors** (living systems engineered to produce useful biological products) to manufacture important proteins for medicine. In this application, a gene coding for a human protein is inserted into an animal such as a goat or cow. The animal then produces the protein in its milk, which can be collected and purified. This method is especially useful for producing complex proteins that are difficult to synthesize using traditional methods. This process, sometimes called "pharming," has been used to produce treatments for conditions such as blood clotting disorders and enzyme deficiencies.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

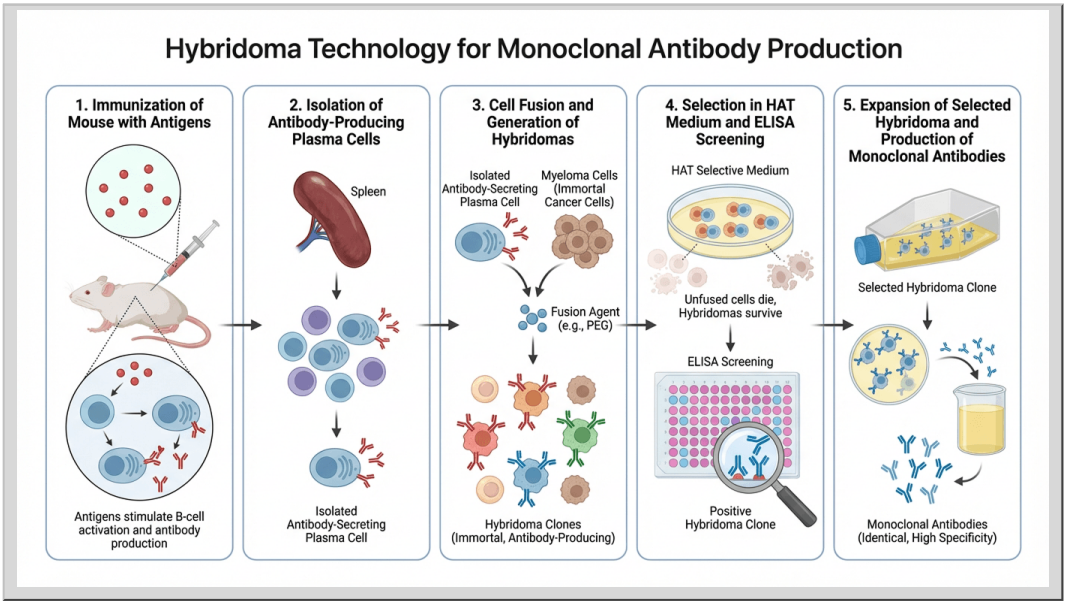
View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
“Transgenic animals.” Eduvision. YouTube, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KvnCd4cV1m4. YouTube Standard License. No changes were made.
“Genome Editing with CRISPR-Cas9.” McGovern Institute. YouTube, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2pp17E4E-O8. YouTube Standard License. No changes were made.
“Animal Biotechnology Revolutionizing the Future of Animal Science.” BioTech Whisperer. YouTube, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_XSfi2XYYbU. YouTube Standard License. No changes were made.

This page titled 10.1: Transgenic Animals is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals

The production of human antibodies in animals represents a major intersection of immunology, genetics, and biotechnology. This approach allows scientists to generate highly specific molecules that can recognize and bind to disease targets with remarkable precision. These antibodies are essential in modern medicine, particularly in the treatment of cancer, autoimmune disorders, and infectious diseases. Traditionally, antibodies were produced in animals such as mice, but these antibodies were recognized as foreign by the human immune system. Advances in biotechnology have made it possible to engineer animals to produce antibodies that are fully human or closely resemble human antibodies, greatly improving their safety and effectiveness for therapeutic use.



The production of human antibodies in animals involves several key biotechnology techniques that integrate genetic engineering with immune system function. An **antibody** (a protein produced by the immune system that specifically recognizes and binds to foreign substances called antigens) is generated by specialized immune cells known as B cells. In biotechnology, these antibodies are harnessed and produced in large quantities for use in medicine and research. One important approach uses transgenic animals, (12.1) most commonly mice, that have been engineered to contain human antibody genes. These genes replace or supplement the animal's natural antibody-producing genes. When these transgenic animals are exposed to an antigen, their immune systems respond by producing antibodies encoded by the inserted human genes. This results in antibodies that are structurally and functionally almost identical to those produced in the human body.

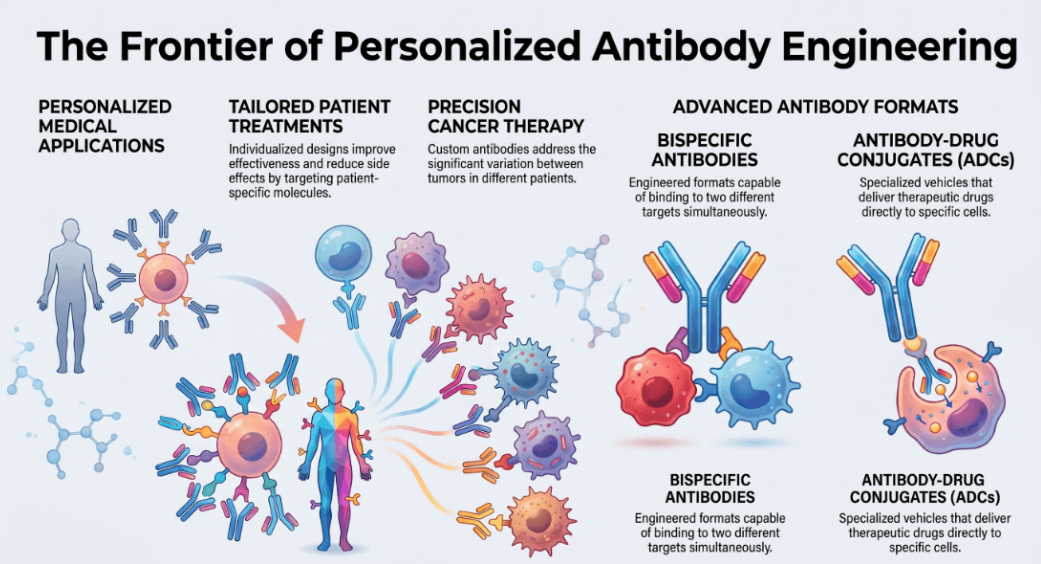
A widely used method for isolating and producing these antibodies is **hybridoma technology** (a technique in which antibody-producing immune cells are fused with immoral cells to create cell lies that continuously produce antibodies). The process includes the following steps:

- First, the animal is immunized with a specific antigen to stimulate an immune response. B cells that produce antibodies against the antigen are then collected, typically from the spleen.
- Next, these B cells are fused with immortal myeloma (cancer) cells to form hybrid cells called hybridomas. These hybridomas combine the ability to produce a specific antibody with the capacity to divide indefinitely.
- The hybridomas are then screened to identify those producing the desired antibody. Once identified, these cells are cloned and cultured to produce large quantities of a single type of antibody, known as **monoclonal antibodies** (identical antibodies produced from a single clone of immune cells that recognize a specific antigen).

More recently, advances in genetic engineering, including **CRISPR**-based techniques, have improved the efficiency and precision of creating transgenic animals that produce fully human antibodies. Human antibodies produced in animals are widely used across medicine, diagnostics, and biotechnology research. Their ability to bind specifically to target molecules makes them

powerful and versatile tools. One of the most significant applications is in therapeutic treatments. Monoclonal antibodies are used to treat a variety of diseases, including cancers, autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis, and infectious diseases. These antibodies can be designed to bind to specific targets on cells, such as proteins on the surface of cancer cells, marking them for destruction or blocking their growth.

In cancer therapy, antibodies may function by recruiting immune cells, blocking growth signals, or delivering toxic agents directly to tumor cells. This targeted approach reduces damage to healthy tissues compared to traditional treatments like chemotherapy. Antibodies are also essential in diagnostic testing. Techniques such as enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (**ELISA**) rely on antibodies to detect specific proteins, pathogens, or biomarkers in patient samples. Rapid diagnostic tests, including those used for infectious diseases, also depend on antibody-antigen interactions to produce visible results. In research settings, antibodies are used to identify, isolate, and study proteins within cells. They are critical tools in techniques such as immunofluorescence and Western blotting, which allow scientists to analyze protein expression and function.



Attributions:
*AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.*
*AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.*

This page titled 10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11: SYSTEMS BIOTECHNOLOGY

Systems biotechnology uses quantitative models and engineering to understand and design biological systems at multiple scales. It blends systems biology, metabolic engineering, and synthetic biology, using data about genes, proteins, and metabolism to predict how networks behave and to guide a design-build-test-learn cycle for making useful products. Key tools include genome-scale metabolic models with flux balance analysis, dynamic modeling, machine learning, and CRISPR-based editing. The field enables production of chemicals, fuels, medicines, improved crops, and environmental solutions,

11.1: Computer Generated Models

11.2: Cell Culture

11.3: Cloning

11.4: Bioprinting

11.5: BioBricks

11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology

11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology

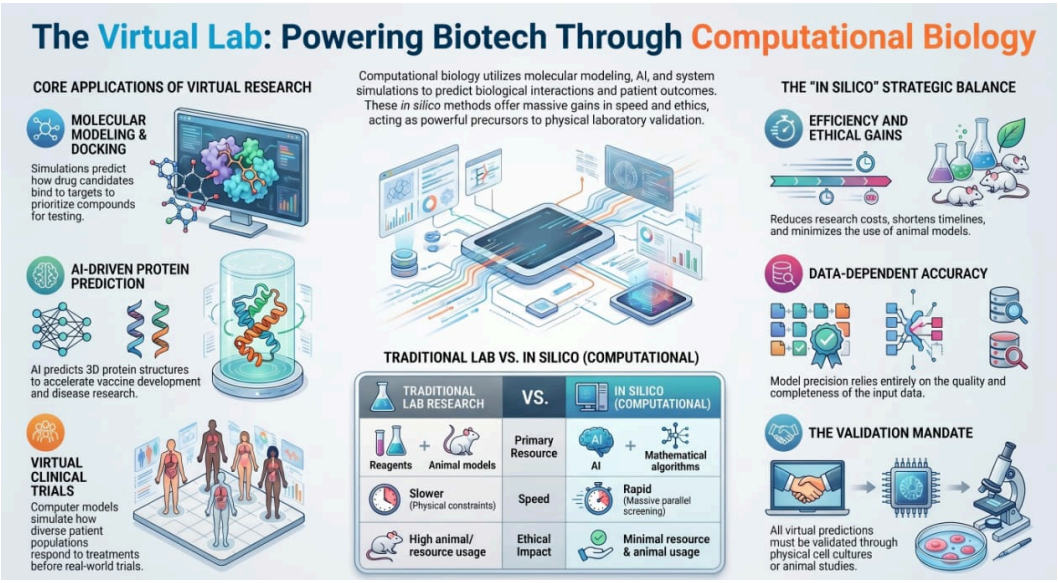
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action

This page titled 11: Systems Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.1: Computer Generated Models

Advances in computational technology have transformed how scientists study biological systems, leading to the widespread use of **computer-generated models** (digital simulations that use mathematical and computational method to represents biological systems) in biotechnology. These models allow researchers to explore complex biological questions in a fast, cost-effective, and highly controlled way, often before moving to laboratory or animal-based experiments.

At the core of this approach is the ability to convert biological processes into mathematical representations. For example, interactions between molecules, cells, or entire organ systems can be described using equations and algorithms. These models can then be tested repeatedly under different conditions, allowing researchers to predict outcomes and identify promising experimental directions.



One important application is in drug discovery. Scientists uses **molecular modeling** (the use of computational techniques to represents and simulate the structure and behavior of molecules) to predict how a drug will interact with its biological target, such as a protein or enzyme. Techniques such as docking simulations allow researchers to estimate how strongly a drug candidate binds to its target, helping prioritize compounds for further testing.

Another major advancement is the prediction of protein structure. Understanding the three-dimensional shape of a protein is essential for determining its function. Computational tools, including those powered by artificial intelligence, can now predict protein structures with remarkable accuracy. This has significantly accelerated research in areas such as enzyme design, vaccine development, and disease research.

Computer-generated models are also used to simulate entire biological systems. In **systems biology** (the study of complex interactions within biological systems using computational and mathematical approaches), researchers model networks of genes, proteins, and metabolic pathways to understand how changes in one part of the system affect the whole. These models are especially useful for studying diseases that involve multiple interacting factors, such as cancer or metabolic disorders.

In addition, researchers are increasingly using **virtual clinical trials** (computer-simulated studies that model how different populations of patients might respond to a treatment). These simulations can incorporate variables such as age, genetics, and health conditions to predict how a drug might perform across diverse populations. This approach helps identify potential risks and optimize study design before conducting real clinical trials.

The use of **in silico research** (scientific studies conducted using computer simulations rather than physical experiments) offers several important advantages. It reduces the time and cost associated with traditional experiments, allows for the rapid screening of thousands of potential drug candidates, and minimizes the use of animal models. It also enables researchers to explore scenarios that would be difficult or impossible to test experimentally.

However, computer-generated models have important limitations. Their accuracy depends on the quality and completeness of the data used to build them. Biological systems are highly complex, and models may oversimplify certain processes. As a result, predictions generated in silico must be validated through laboratory experiments, including cell culture and, when necessary, animal studies.

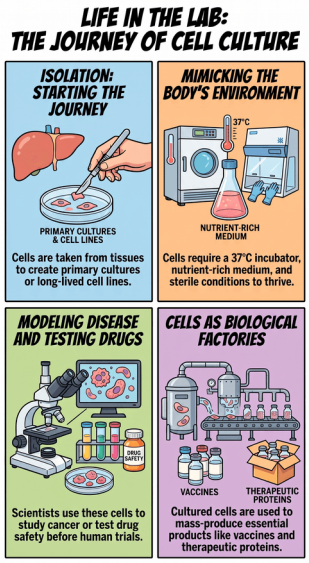
As biotechnology continues to evolve, computer-generated models are becoming an essential component of research and development. By integrating computational tools with experimental approaches, scientists can accelerate discovery, improve precision, and move toward more ethical and efficient scientific practices.

Attribution:
AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 11.1: Computer Generated Models is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.2: Cell Culture

Cell culture (the process of growing cells outside of their natural environment under controlled laboratory conditions) is a foundational technique in biotechnology and biomedical research. By isolating cells from tissues and maintaining them in carefully controlled environments, scientists can study cellular behavior, test new treatments, and produce valuable biological products without the need for whole-animal experiments.Cell cultures can be broadly categorized based on their origin and lifespan. **Primary cells** are directly isolated from tissues and closely resemble the natural state of cells within an organism. They provide highly relevant biological data but typically have a limited lifespan and can be more difficult to maintain. In contrast, **cell lines** (cells that have been adapted to grow continuously in laboratory conditions over many generations) are widely used because they are easier to grow and maintain. Some cell lines are naturally long-lived, while others are genetically modified to become **immortalized cells** (cells that have acquired the ability to divide indefinitely under appropriate conditions). Researchers may also work with **stem cells** (undifferentiated cells capable of developing into specialized cell types), which are especially valuable for studying development, regeneration, and disease modeling.



How Cell Culture Works

Cells grown in culture require an environment that mimics conditions inside the body. This includes:

- A nutrient-rich growth medium containing sugars, amino acids, vitamins, and salts
- Controlled temperature (typically 37°C for human cells)
- Proper pH and gas conditions, often maintained using carbon dioxide (CO_2) incubators
- Sterile conditions to prevent contamination

To maintain these conditions, scientists use specialized equipment such as biosafety cabinets, incubators, and sterile culture vessels. Techniques must be performed aseptically to avoid contamination by bacteria, fungi, or other unwanted cells.

Applications of Cell Culture

Cell culture plays a central role in many areas of biotechnology:

In drug development, cultured cells are used to evaluate toxicity and effectiveness before progressing to animal or human trials. This helps identify harmful compounds early in the process.

In disease research, scientists use cultured cells to model conditions such as cancer, viral infections, and genetic disorders. For example, cancer cell lines can be used to study tumor growth and test new therapies.

Cell culture is also essential in the production of biologics. Many important medicines, including vaccines and therapeutic proteins, are produced using cultured animal cells. These cells act as biological factories that generate complex molecules not easily produced by chemical methods.

Additionally, advances in tissue engineering use cultured cells to grow tissues in the lab, with the long-term goal of developing replacement organs.

Advantages and Limitations

Cell culture offers several advantages over whole-animal research. It allows for precise control of experimental conditions, reduces variability, and enables high-throughput testing of many samples at once. It also reduces ethical concerns associated with animal use. However, cell culture systems have limitations. Cells grown in isolation do not fully replicate the complexity of living organisms, where multiple cell types interact within tissues and organ systems. As a result, findings from cell culture experiments must often be validated in more complex models.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"Life in the Lab" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
“Getting Started with Tissue Culture.” Addgene. YouTube, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x7HVw1Va4qs. YouTube Standard License. No changes were made.

This page titled 11.2: Cell Culture is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.3: Cloning

Cloning is one of the most well-known and widely discussed applications of animal biotechnology. It has advanced our understanding of genetics, development, and cellular differentiation, while also raising important ethical and scientific questions. Although often associated with science fiction, cloning is a real and powerful tool used in research, agriculture, and medicine.

Cloning (the process of producing genetically identical copies of a cell, tissue or organism) occurs naturally in some organisms but can also be achieved through biotechnology. In animal systems, cloning allows scientists to replicate organisms with specific genetic traits, making it a valuable technique for research and agricultural improvement.

There are different types of cloning, including gene cloning, reproductive cloning, and therapeutic cloning. In this section, the focus is on reproductive cloning of animals, where an entire organism is produced that is genetically identical to another.

One of the most famous examples of animal cloning is Dolly the sheep, the first mammal successfully cloned from an adult somatic cell. This achievement demonstrated that specialized cells retain the genetic information necessary to create an entire organism.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"Molecular Cloning explained for Beginners" Henrik's Lab https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NoyeCMmP5tw&t=1s YouTube standard license. No changes were made.

This page titled 11.3: Cloning is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.4: Bioprinting

Bioprinting is a way to use 3D printing techniques to place living cells, supportive biomaterials, and signaling molecules into shapes that resemble real tissues. It sits at the crossroads of materials science, cell biology, and engineering. The goal is to build tissue-like structures that can mature in a lab bioreactor or inside the body. These structures could become personalized grafts for patients, help scientists study how diseases work, or be used to test drugs more quickly and safely.

YouTube Video

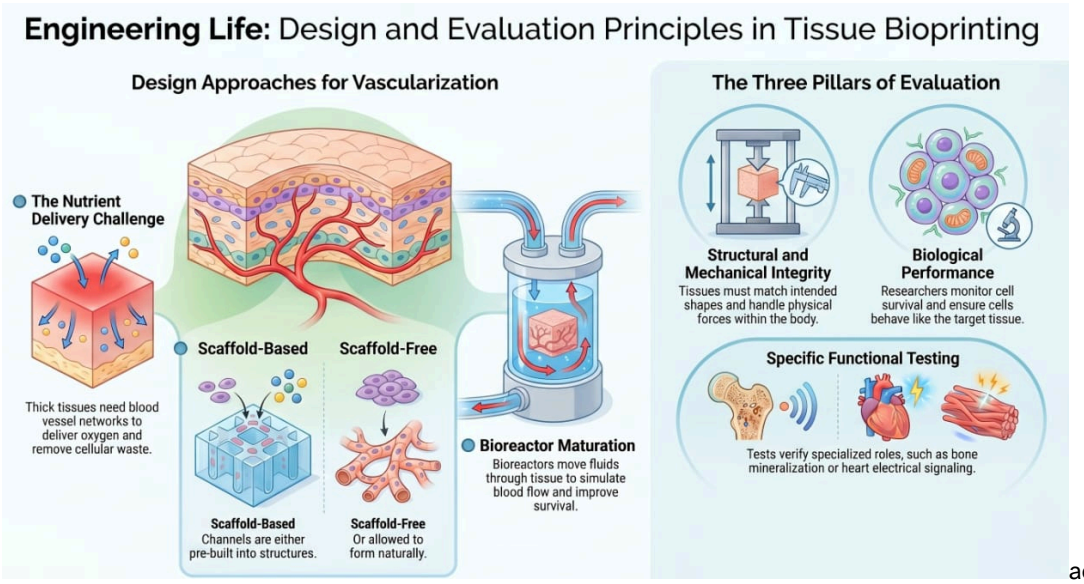
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The process starts with a plan for the shape. Researchers create a three-dimensional design from medical images such as MRI or CT scans to match the tissue or organ they want to reproduce. Then they choose the right cells and a printable bioink. A bioink is a printable mixture that holds living cells and a supportive gel. The cells can come from the patient or from other sources, and the gel helps them survive, stay in place, and grow. Material is deposited through different printing methods: extrusion, where the bioink is squeezed out like toothpaste; droplets, where tiny beads of bioink are laid down; laser-assisted printing, which uses a laser to guide where material goes; or light-based methods that solidify the gel with light. Each method has its strengths for different tissues. After printing, the build is stabilized by crosslinking or solidifying the material. This step uses chemical reactions, light, heat, or changes in the environment to lock the structure in place. Once the shape is fixed, the printed tissue enters a period of maturation. It is placed in a bioreactor or prepared for implantation so it can receive nutrients, oxygen, and mechanical cues that help cells grow, organize, and function properly.

Bioinks are made from several kinds of materials. Natural polymers mimic the body's own chemistry and are usually very friendly to cells; examples include collagen and alginate. These materials support cellular behavior and help keep cells comfortable inside the printed structure. Synthetic polymers, on the other hand, are man-made and allow scientists to fine-tune the stiffness and strength of the final tissue to match different parts of the body. Additives such as small molecules or growth factors can be included to guide how cells grow, differentiate, and work together in the tissue. The choice of bioink affects how well the tissue functions, how easily it can be printed, and how long it can survive after printing.

A major design challenge in bioprinting is getting blood vessels to grow throughout the tissue. Thick, living tissues need a network of blood vessels to deliver nutrients and oxygen and to remove waste. Without this supply, cells in the center of the tissue can die. To address this, researchers use two broad approaches. One is scaffold-based printing, where channels are built into



the structure to act like blood vessels. The other is scaffold-free methods, where tiny vessels form within the printed mass without a predefined scaffold. In addition, bioreactors that move fluids through the tissue help simulate blood flow and improve nutrient delivery during maturation.

Evaluating bioprinted tissues looks at several factors. Structural fidelity asks whether the piece matches the intended shape and internal architecture. Mechanical integrity checks whether the tissue is strong enough to handle the forces it would face in the body. Biological performance looks at cell survival and how well the cells behave as the target tissue should. For tissue that has specific functions, scientists also test those functions. For example, they may examine how bone tissue deposits minerals, how skin forms layers, or how heart tissue conducts electrical signals. Together, these tests tell researchers if the bioprinted tissue is realistic and usable for further study or treatment. Bioprinting has a range of important applications. In tissue engineering, researchers print bones, cartilage, and skin that can be used to replace damaged or diseased tissue. Organ-on-a-chip systems provide small, simplified versions of organs that are useful for studying disease mechanisms and for screening drugs. In the future, bioprinted tissues might become patient-specific grafts generated from a person's own cells, which could reduce the risk of rejection and improve healing after injury or surgery.

Bringing bioprinted tissues into clinical use also comes with challenges. Biocompatibility is essential—the materials and cells must be safe and work well with the patient's body. The immune system can react to implanted tissues, which can interfere with healing. Producing tissues reliably at scale for many patients is difficult, and therapies must go through regulatory processes to prove they are safe and effective. Cost and accessibility are also critical concerns if these technologies are to reach broad use in health care.

Attributions:
"The Incredible Science of Bioprinting" Patsnap https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4KgkJUi_kfI YouTube standard license. No changes were made.
"Engineering Life" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 11.4: Bioprinting is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.5: BioBricks

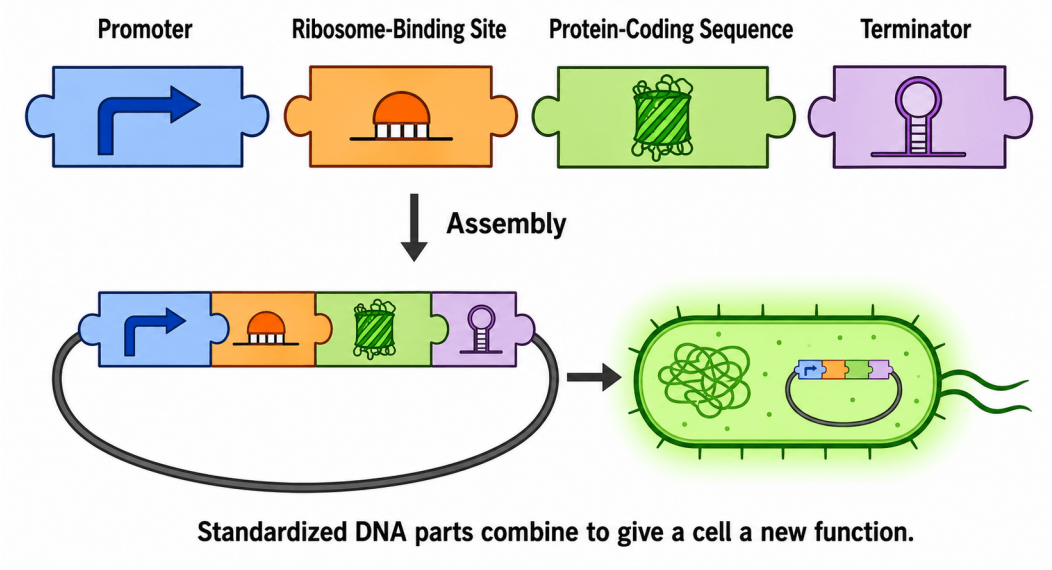
BioBricks (standardized DNA sequences designed to be assembled into larger genetic systems) are widely used in synthetic biology. They allow researchers to approach genetic engineering in a modular way, similar to assembling building blocks. Rather than designing an entire genetic system from the beginning, scientists can select individual DNA components with known or predicted functions and combine them to create a new biological system.

A BioBrick may contain a **promoter** (a DNA sequence where transcription begins), a ribosome-binding site, a protein-coding sequence, or a transcription terminator. Each part performs a specific function. When several parts are joined, they can form a complete genetic circuit that directs a cell to carry out a desired task.

For instance, researchers could combine:

- A promoter that activates gene expression under certain conditions
- A ribosome-binding site that helps initiate translation
- A gene encoding a fluorescent protein
- A terminator that signals the end of transcription

After the assembled DNA is inserted into a bacterial cell, the cell may produce a fluorescent signal. More complex genetic circuits can be designed to detect pollutants, manufacture medicines, produce biofuels, or respond to environmental changes.



Standardized DNA parts combine to give a cell a new function.

Standardization and Assembly

BioBricks are designed according to agreed-upon assembly standards. In the original BioBrick system, each DNA part is bordered by specific sequences containing restriction enzyme recognition sites. These sites allow researchers to cut and join compatible parts in a predictable order. The resulting assembly can then be placed into a **vector** (a DNA molecule used to carry genetic material into a cell), such as a plasmid.

Standardization makes it easier for researchers to reuse and share biological parts. Information about many BioBricks is available through the Registry of Standard Biological Parts, a collection created to support synthetic biology research and education. The registry includes DNA sequences, descriptions of their intended functions, assembly information, and experimental results submitted by researchers.

Applications of BioBricks

BioBricks can be used to engineer microorganisms with useful characteristics. Modified cells may be designed to produce enzymes, pharmaceuticals, pigments, fragrances, biodegradable materials, or industrial chemicals. Other systems can act as **biosensors** (biological systems that detect and produce a measurable response to a substance or environmental condition). A biosensor might be engineered to change color when it detects arsenic in water or a particular pathogen in a sample.

BioBricks are also central to many student synthetic biology projects, including those developed for the International Genetically Engineered Machine competition, commonly called iGEM. These projects give students experience designing genetic systems, assembling DNA, testing cellular behavior, analyzing data, and considering the ethical and safety implications of engineered organisms.

Benefits and Limitations

The BioBrick approach makes genetic engineering more organized, collaborative, and reproducible. However, biological parts do not always behave identically in every organism or genetic system. A promoter that produces strong gene expression in one bacterial strain may function differently in another. Interactions between DNA parts, cellular resources, environmental conditions, and the host organism can also affect the behavior of an engineered system.

For this reason, BioBrick-based designs must be experimentally tested and refined. Modern DNA assembly techniques, including Gibson assembly and Golden Gate assembly, provide additional flexibility and allow researchers to construct larger or more complex genetic systems. Even when newer assembly methods are used, the BioBrick principle of treating DNA sequences as standardized, reusable parts remains an important foundation of synthetic biology.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

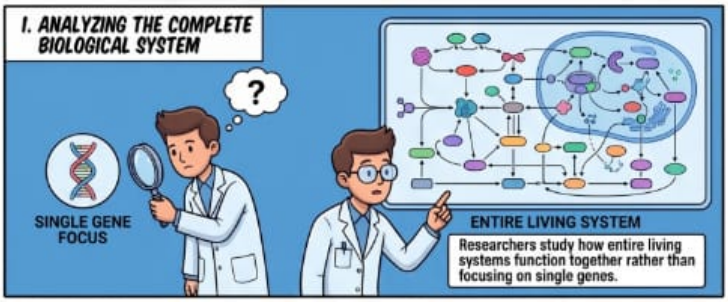
View this YouTube Video online

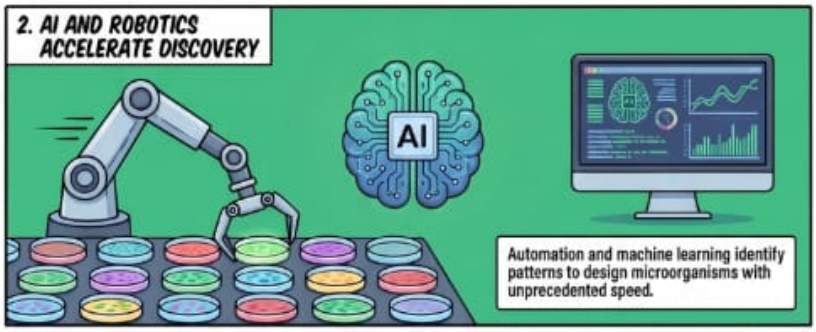
Attributions:
"Stadardized BioBrick Parts" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"Brick Assembly" BHM Learning https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6x10nvLXv98 Standard YouTube License. No changes made.

This page titled 11.5: BioBricks is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

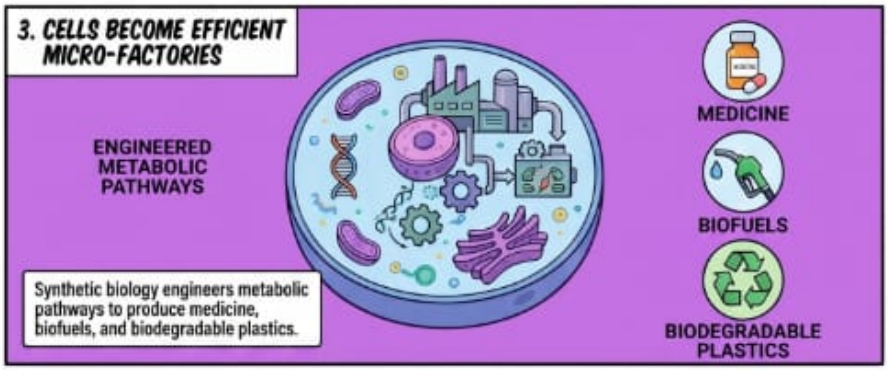
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology

Systems biotechnology is rapidly advancing as scientists combine biology with genomics, proteomics, metabolomics, bioinformatics, artificial intelligence (AI), and advanced computing to better understand and engineer living systems. Rather than studying a single gene or protein, researchers analyze how entire biological systems function together. These advances are accelerating discoveries in medicine, agriculture, environmental science, and industrial manufacturing.



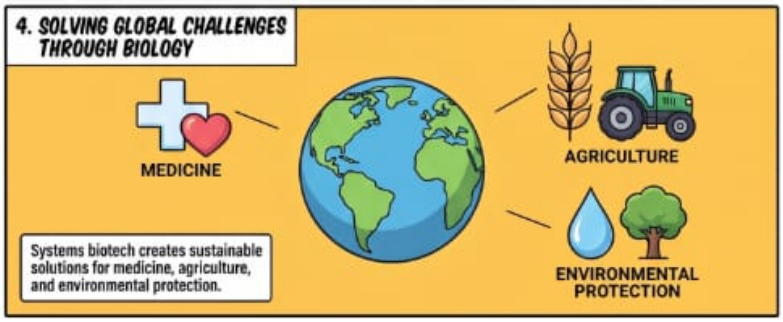


Artificial intelligence is becoming an increasingly important tool for analyzing large biological datasets. AI can identify patterns, predict gene function, model metabolic pathways, and help design microorganisms that produce valuable products more efficiently. For example, researchers are using AI to engineer bacteria that produce biofuels, biodegradable plastics, therapeutic proteins, and other biobased chemicals.



Synthetic biology is also expanding the capabilities of systems biotechnology. Scientists are engineering entire metabolic pathways to enable cells to manufacture complex products. Engineered yeast produce the antimalarial drug artemisinin, while bacteria are being designed to manufacture industrial enzymes, sustainable chemicals, and renewable fuels.

Automation and robotics are transforming research laboratories by allowing thousands of experiments to be performed simultaneously. Combined with computer modeling and machine learning, these technologies speed the discovery of new medicines, improve biomanufacturing processes, and reduce research costs.



Systems biotechnology is also contributing to more sustainable technologies. Researchers are developing microorganisms that capture carbon dioxide, degrade plastic waste, remove environmental pollutants, improve soil health, and convert agricultural waste into useful products.

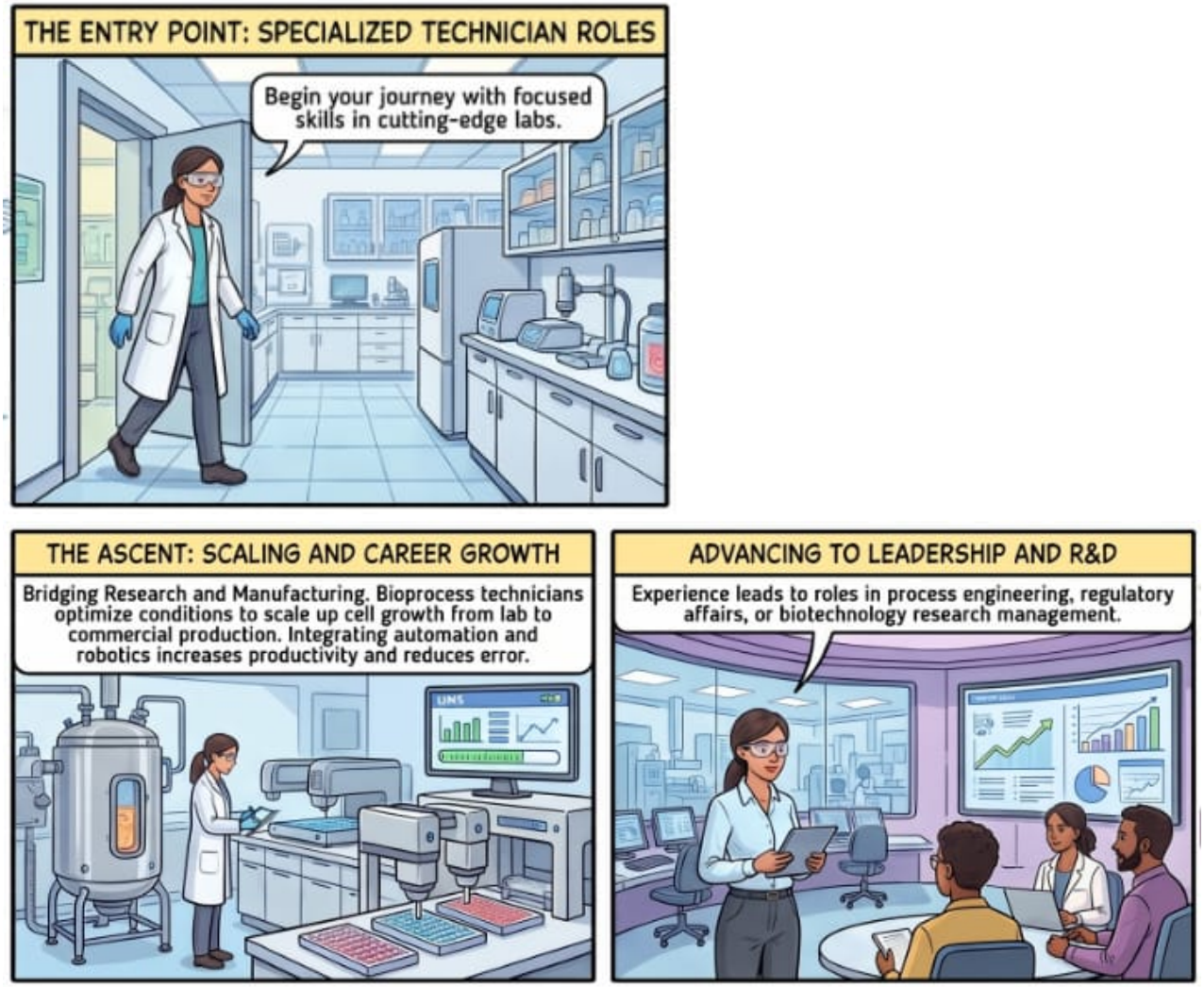
As these technologies continue to evolve, systems biotechnology will play an increasingly important role in solving challenges related to human health, food production, sustainable manufacturing, and environmental protection. Future advances will rely on the integration of biology, engineering, and data science to create innovative solutions for a rapidly changing world.

Attribution: images are AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

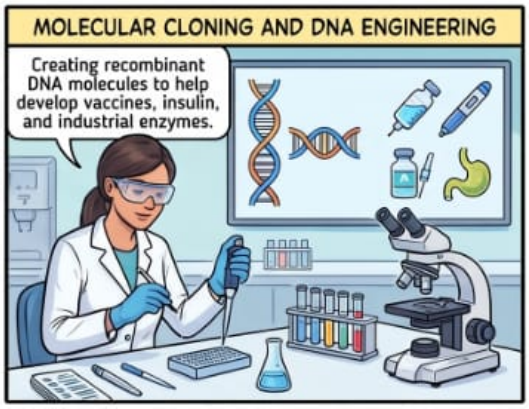
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology

As biotechnology continues to advance, systems biotechnology careers are becoming increasingly interdisciplinary. Employers seek professionals who combine strong laboratory skills with an understanding of automation, data analysis, quality systems, and biological processes. Graduates entering these careers often begin as laboratory technicians and, with additional experience or education, can advance into research and development, process engineering, manufacturing management, quality assurance, regulatory affairs, or biotechnology research. For students who enjoy solving complex biological problems and working with cutting-edge technologies, systems biotechnology offers a dynamic and rewarding career path.

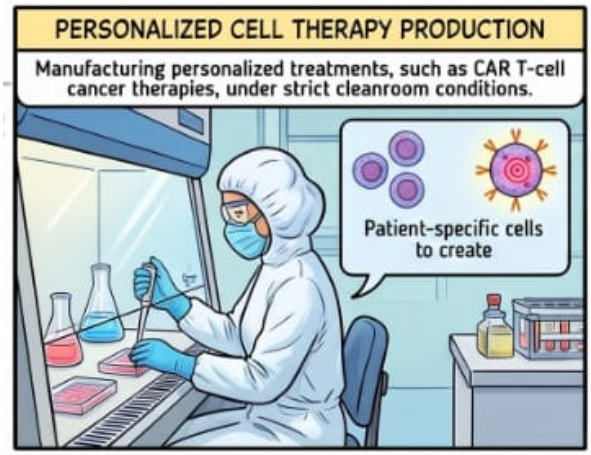


Possible Careers

Tissue Culture Technicians grow and maintain living cells used in research, drug development, and biomanufacturing. Working in sterile laboratory environments, they culture mammalian, stem, or microbial cells by preparing growth media, feeding cultures, monitoring cell health, and transferring cells into new vessels as they multiply. Technicians also perform cell counts, assess cell viability, freeze and thaw cell lines, and prepare samples for quality control testing. Their work supports the production of vaccines, monoclonal antibodies, recombinant proteins, gene therapies, and cell therapies. Strong aseptic technique, attention to detail, and careful documentation are essential skills for this career.



Molecular Cloning Technicians create recombinant DNA molecules that allow scientists to study genes or produce valuable proteins. They isolate DNA, amplify genes using PCR, insert DNA fragments into plasmids, transform bacteria with recombinant plasmids, and verify successful cloning through DNA sequencing or restriction enzyme analysis. These technicians help develop engineered microorganisms that manufacture insulin, vaccines, industrial enzymes, and other biotechnology products. Molecular cloning technicians spend much of their time performing laboratory procedures, analyzing DNA, maintaining bacterial cultures, and documenting experimental results.

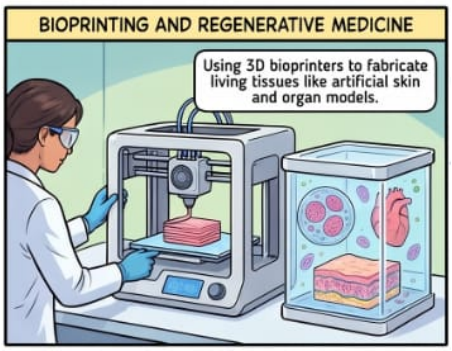


Cell Therapy Manufacturing Technicians produce living cells that become personalized medical treatments. Working in cleanrooms under Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP) conditions, they isolate patient cells, expand them in culture, genetically modify them when necessary, and prepare them for clinical use. They carefully monitor cell growth, perform quality control testing, maintain sterile conditions, and document every manufacturing step. These technicians contribute directly to the production of therapies such as CAR T-cell treatments for cancer and stem cell therapies used in regenerative medicine.

Bioprocess Development Technicians optimize the conditions used to grow cells and microorganisms on a large scale. They assist scientists in testing different media formulations, nutrient concentrations, temperatures, oxygen levels, and bioreactor conditions to maximize cell growth and product yield. Their work bridges laboratory research and commercial manufacturing, helping companies improve efficiency while maintaining product quality. Technicians frequently operate bioreactors, monitor fermentation processes, collect samples, and analyze production data.

Systems Biology Laboratory Technicians help researchers understand how genes, proteins, metabolites, and signaling pathways interact within living cells. Rather than studying a single gene or protein, they generate large datasets that allow scientists to examine entire biological systems. Daily activities may include preparing samples for DNA sequencing, RNA sequencing, proteomics, metabolomics, flow cytometry, and high-throughput screening. These technicians often work closely with bioinformaticians and computational biologists to identify patterns that lead to new drug targets, improved therapies, or more

efficient manufacturing processes.



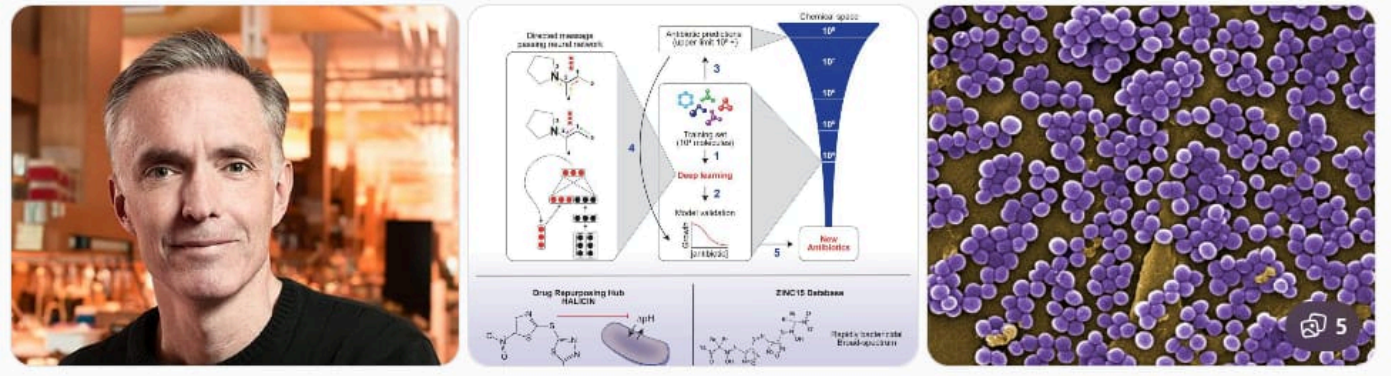
Bioprinting Technicians work in one of biotechnology's fastest-growing fields: regenerative medicine. Using specialized three-dimensional (3D) bioprinters, they help fabricate living tissues by depositing cells and biomaterials in precise patterns that mimic natural tissues. They prepare bioinks containing living cells, calibrate printing equipment, monitor print quality, and culture printed tissues in bioreactors or incubators to encourage growth and maturation. Bioprinting technicians collaborate with engineers, biomaterials scientists, and tissue engineers to develop artificial skin, cartilage, blood vessels, organ models for drug testing, and experimental tissues for future transplantation.

Automation and Laboratory Robotics Technician. Modern biotechnology laboratories rely heavily on automation to process thousands of samples quickly and accurately. Automation and Laboratory Robotics Technicians operate and maintain robotic liquid-handling systems, automated incubators, plate readers, and laboratory information management systems (LIMS). They prepare samples, program automated workflows, troubleshoot equipment, and ensure that robotic systems operate efficiently. Their work increases laboratory productivity, improves reproducibility, and reduces human error during large-scale experiments.

Attribution: Images are AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action



Professor James Collins AI analysis of compounds *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

Antibiotic resistance has become one of the greatest threats to global health. As bacteria evolve resistance to existing drugs, infections that were once easily treated are becoming more difficult—and sometimes impossible—to cure. Developing new antibiotics has traditionally taken many years and requires screening thousands of chemical compounds, making drug discovery slow and expensive.

In 2024, researchers at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), led by Professor James Collins, demonstrated how systems biotechnology and artificial intelligence can dramatically accelerate this process. Working with computer scientists, microbiologists, chemists, and engineers, the team developed a deep-learning model that analyzed millions of chemical compounds and predicted which ones were most likely to kill drug-resistant bacteria without harming human cells.

Rather than testing every compound in the laboratory, the AI model narrowed the search to the most promising candidates. Researchers then synthesized and tested these compounds against dangerous bacteria, including methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and *Acinetobacter baumannii*, a pathogen identified by the World Health Organization as a critical public health threat. The AI-guided approach led to the discovery of several entirely new classes of antibiotics that work differently from existing drugs, making them less likely to encounter pre-existing bacterial resistance.

This breakthrough required scientists from multiple disciplines to work together. Artificial intelligence analyzed massive chemical and biological datasets, bioinformaticians organized genomic information, microbiologists tested bacterial responses, chemists synthesized candidate molecules, and systems biologists integrated the results to improve the predictive models. By combining computational and experimental approaches, the team reduced years of laboratory screening to just weeks.

The discovery demonstrates how systems biotechnology is transforming medicine by integrating artificial intelligence, computational modeling, genomics, microbiology, and laboratory research into a single workflow. Similar approaches are now being used to develop new cancer drugs, engineer enzymes for sustainable manufacturing, design personalized medicines, and predict the effects of genetic mutations. For today's biotechnology students, these technologies represent an exciting future where biology and artificial intelligence work together to solve some of the world's most challenging problems.

Attribution: Images are AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12: BACTERIA IN BIOTECHNOLOGY

Bacteria are among the most versatile and widely used organisms in biotechnology. Their rapid growth, genetic flexibility, and metabolic diversity allow them to function as living systems that can be engineered to produce valuable products, carry out complex chemical reactions, and solve real-world problems. From medicine and manufacturing to environmental sustainability, bacteria are central to modern biotechnology. Bacteria are single-celled prokaryotic organisms that lack a nucleus but contain all essential cellular components needed for life. They reproduce through binary fission, allowing populations to expand rapidly under favorable conditions. This rapid reproduction is one of the key reasons bacteria are so useful in biotechnology. In addition to their fast growth, bacteria have relatively simple genomes that are easier to study and manipulate compared to those of eukaryotic organisms. Many bacterial species can survive in extreme environments, giving them unique metabolic capabilities that can be harnessed for industrial and environmental applications. Because of these features, bacteria are often described as biological "factories" that can be programmed to produce specific products.

12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools

12.2: Transformation

12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems

12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)

12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats

12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology

12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology

12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action

This page titled 12: Bacteria in Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools

Microbial enzymes are one of the most widely used products of biotechnology. These enzymes, produced by bacteria and other microorganisms, catalyze specific chemical reactions and are used in applications ranging from food production to advanced molecular biology research. Because microorganisms can be grown rapidly and engineered to produce large amounts of enzymes, they provide a reliable and scalable source of these important biological tools.

Taq DNA Polymerase

One of the most important microbial enzymes in biotechnology is **Taq DNA polymerase** (a heat-stable enzyme that synthesizes DNA strands, isolated from thermophilic). This enzyme is essential for the **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** (a technique used to amplify specific kDNA sequences though repeated cycles of replication).

Taq DNA polymerase was originally isolated from the bacterium *Thermus aquaticus*, which lives in extremely hot environments such as geothermal hot springs. Because this enzyme evolved to function at high temperatures, it remains stable and active during the repeated heating cycles required in PCR. This property distinguishes it from most other enzymes, which would denature under similar conditions.

PCR relies on a series of temperature changes that occur in cycles. During the denaturation step, DNA strands are separated at high temperatures. In the annealing step, short DNA primers bind to target sequences. During the extension step, Taq DNA polymerase synthesizes new DNA strands by adding nucleotides to the primers. These steps are repeated many times, resulting in the exponential amplification of the target DNA sequence.

The heat stability of Taq DNA polymerase is critical because it allows the reaction to proceed continuously without the need to add new enzyme after each cycle. This makes PCR efficient, reliable, and easily automated using instruments called **thermocyclers**.

The discovery and application of Taq DNA polymerase revolutionized molecular biology by making it possible to amplify small amounts of DNA quickly and accurately. This capability has transformed many areas of science and medicine. PCR is now widely used in genetic research, medical diagnostics, forensic analysis, and biotechnology development.

For example, PCR is used to detect infectious diseases by identifying pathogen DNA, to analyze genetic mutations associated with disease, and to amplify DNA from very small or degraded samples in forensic investigations. It is also a foundational tool in cloning, sequencing, and gene expression studies.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Restriction Enzymes

Restriction **enzymes** (proteins that cut DNA at specific nucleotide sequences) are fundamental tools in genetic engineering. These enzymes were first discovered in bacteria, where they serve as part of a natural defense system against invading viral DNA. When foreign DNA enters a bacterial cell, restriction enzymes recognize specific sequences and cut the DNA, preventing infection.

In biotechnology, this natural function has been adapted for precise DNA manipulation. Each restriction enzyme recognizes a specific short DNA sequence, often called a recognition site, and cuts the DNA at or near that location. Many enzymes create **sticky ends** (short, single-stranded overhangs that can base-pair with complementary sequences), while others produce **blunt**

ends (straight cuts with no overhangs). Sticky ends are particularly useful because they allow DNA fragments from different sources to be joined together more easily.

Restriction enzymes are essential for isolating genes of interest from larger DNA molecules. Once a gene is cut out, it can be inserted into a plasmid vector using DNA ligase, forming recombinant DNA. This process is a key step in cloning, where the inserted gene is replicated within bacterial cells.

These enzymes are also used in DNA analysis techniques. For example, cutting DNA with restriction enzymes produces fragments of varying lengths that can be separated using gel electrophoresis. This allows scientists to compare DNA samples, identify genetic differences, and verify the success of cloning experiments.

Different restriction enzymes recognize different sequences, typically 4–8 base pairs in length. This diversity provides flexibility in experimental design, allowing researchers to choose enzymes that generate the desired DNA fragments for specific applications.

In modern biotechnology, restriction enzymes remain essential tools despite the development of newer gene-editing technologies. They are widely used in cloning, DNA mapping, genetic fingerprinting, and the construction of recombinant DNA molecules. Their precision, reliability, and ease of use have made them a cornerstone of molecular biology.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

DNA Ligase in DNA Assembly

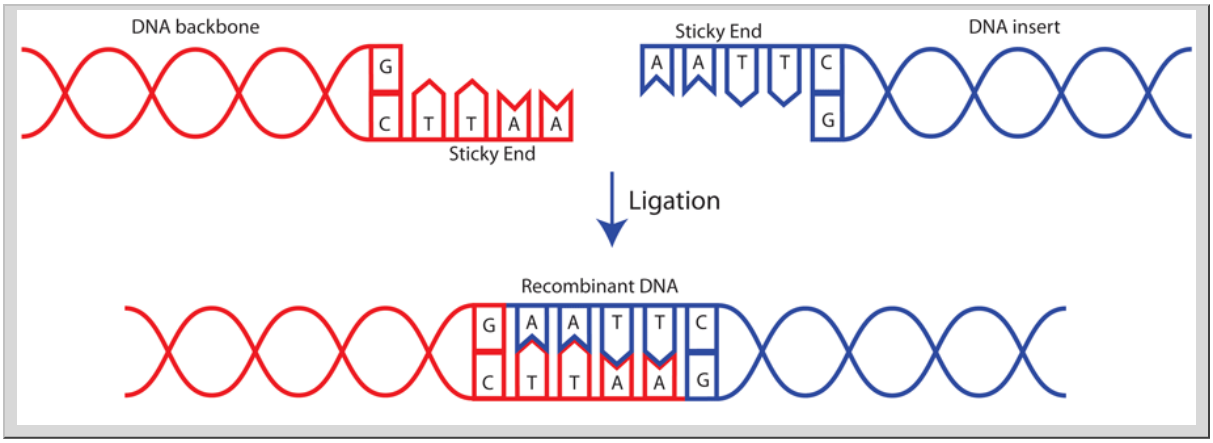
DNA ligase (an enzyme that joins DNA fragments by forming bonds in the sugar-phosphate backbone) is a critical tool in genetic engineering. After DNA has been cut by restriction enzymes, DNA ligase is used to reconnect the fragments, enabling the construction of new DNA molecules.

At the molecular level, DNA ligase catalyzes the formation of **phosphodiester bonds** (covalent bonds that link nucleotides together in a DNA strand). This process “seals” breaks, or nicks, in the DNA backbone, restoring the continuity of the molecule. When DNA fragments with compatible ends are brought together, DNA ligase stabilizes the connection, allowing them to function as a single, continuous strand.

In recombinant DNA technology, DNA ligase plays a central role in assembling genetic constructs. After a gene of interest and a plasmid vector are cut with the same restriction enzyme, their complementary ends can pair through base pairing. DNA ligase then permanently joins these fragments, creating a recombinant plasmid that can be introduced into a host cell for replication and expression.

The efficiency of ligation depends on several factors, including the compatibility of DNA ends, temperature, and the concentration of DNA and enzyme. Sticky ends typically ligate more efficiently than blunt ends because their complementary overhangs help align the fragments correctly before bonding occurs.

In laboratory applications, DNA ligase is used not only for cloning but also for constructing genetic libraries, assembling synthetic DNA sequences, and performing advanced techniques such as gene synthesis and pathway engineering.



Reverse Transcriptase in Genetic Analysis

Reverse transcriptase (an enzyme that synthesizes DNA from an RNA template) is widely used in biotechnology, particularly in gene expression analysis and molecular diagnostics. This enzyme enables scientists to work with RNA by converting it into a more stable DNA form.

In cells, messenger RNA (mRNA) represents the actively expressed genes at a given time. However, RNA is less stable than

DNA and cannot be directly amplified using standard DNA-based techniques. Reverse transcriptase overcomes this limitation by synthesizing **complementary DNA (cDNA)** (a DNA copy produced from an RNA template) from mRNA.

The process begins when reverse transcriptase binds to an RNA molecule and uses it as a template to build a DNA strand by adding complementary nucleotides. The resulting cDNA can then be used in downstream applications such as cloning, sequencing, or amplification.

One of the most important applications of reverse transcriptase is in **reverse transcription PCR (RT-PCR)** (a technique that converts RNA into DNA and then amplifies it to detect or measure gene expression). In this method, RNA from a sample is first converted into cDNA, which is then amplified using PCR. This allows scientists to detect even very small amounts of RNA.

RT-PCR is widely used in research to study gene expression patterns and understand how genes are regulated under different conditions. It is also a critical tool in diagnostics, where it is used to detect RNA viruses and monitor disease progression.

Reverse transcriptase is also essential for creating cDNA libraries, which represent the expressed genes of a cell or tissue at a specific time. These libraries are valuable for studying gene function, identifying new genes, and producing proteins.

Although reverse transcriptase was originally discovered in retroviruses, its applications have been adapted for use in biotechnology, often in combination with bacterial systems that are used to replicate and analyze the resulting DNA.

CRISPR-Associated Enzymes

One of the most transformative discoveries in biotechnology is the CRISPR system, originally found in bacteria. CRISPR functions as an adaptive immune mechanism that allows bacteria to recognize and defend against invading viruses.

CRISPR-associated enzymes (proteins that use RNA guides to cut DNA at specific sequences), such as Cas9, work together with short RNA molecules to identify and cleave foreign DNA. When a bacterium survives a viral infection, it can store fragments of the viral DNA within its genome. These stored sequences are later transcribed into guide RNAs that direct Cas enzymes to matching DNA sequences during future infections, enabling a rapid and targeted defense response.

In biotechnology, this natural system has been adapted into a powerful gene-editing tool. Scientists design **guide RNA** (a short RNA sequence that directs CRISPR enzymes to a specific DNA target) to match a desired location in the genome. The Cas9 enzyme then creates a precise break in the DNA at that location.Once the DNA is cut, the cell's natural repair mechanisms are activated. These include **non-homologous end joining** (a repair process that directly rejoins DNA ends, often introducing

small mutations) and **homology-directed repair** (a repair process that uses a template to accurately repair or modify DNA). By controlling these repair pathways, scientists can disrupt genes, insert new sequences, or correct mutations. CRISPR technology has revolutionized research by making gene editing faster, more precise, and more accessible than previous methods. It is widely used to study gene function, create model organisms, and engineer cells with new capabilities.

The potential applications are extensive. In medicine, CRISPR is being explored for treating genetic disorders by correcting disease-causing mutations. In agriculture, it is used to develop crops with improved yield, resistance to pests, and tolerance to environmental stress. In biotechnology, CRISPR enables the design of microorganisms for producing biofuels, pharmaceuticals, and other valuable products. Despite its power, CRISPR technology also raises important ethical and safety considerations, particularly in applications involving human gene editing. Ongoing research aims to improve accuracy and reduce unintended effects, ensuring that this technology can be used responsibly.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"Taq Polymerase" The Curious Biologists https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=myCRRXJe40g YouTube standard license. No changes made.
"Restriction Enzymes (+Notes)" Medicine Can Be Easy. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rlLWro4qm1k YouTube standard license. No changes made.
"Restricion Enzymes" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"What is CRISPR?" Bozman https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MnYppmstxIs YouTube standard license. No changes made.

This page titled 12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.2: Transformation

Transformation (the ability of bacteria to take in DNA from their surrounding environment) is a fundamental process in both natural bacterial biology and modern biotechnology. In nature, some bacteria are capable of taking up free DNA released from other cells in their environment. This ability allows them to acquire new genetic traits, increasing their adaptability and survival.

In biotechnology, this natural process is enhanced and controlled in the laboratory. Bacterial cells are treated to become **competent** (a physiological state in which cells can efficiently take up foreign DNA). Competent cells are more permeable to DNA, allowing scientists to introduce specific genetic material into the cell.

Transformation of competent cells is commonly used to introduce **recombinant plasmids** (engineered circular DNA molecules that carry foreign genes) into bacteria. Once inside the cell, these plasmids replicate independently, allowing the inserted gene to be copied and often expressed as a protein. This enables bacteria to produce useful products such as enzymes or therapeutic proteins.

The process is called transformation because the introduction of foreign DNA can alter the observable characteristics, or phenotype, of the bacterial cell. For example, bacteria that take up a plasmid containing an antibiotic resistance gene gain the ability to survive in the presence of that antibiotic.

YouTube Video

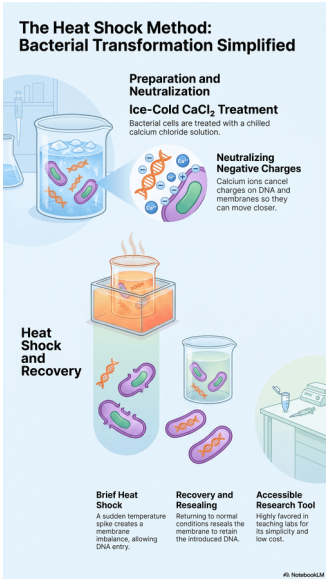
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Methods of Transformation

Two main methods are commonly used in biotechnology to introduce DNA into bacterial cells.

Calcium Chloride (Heat Shock)



The calcium chloride method is a widely used chemical approach to transformation. In this method, bacterial cells are

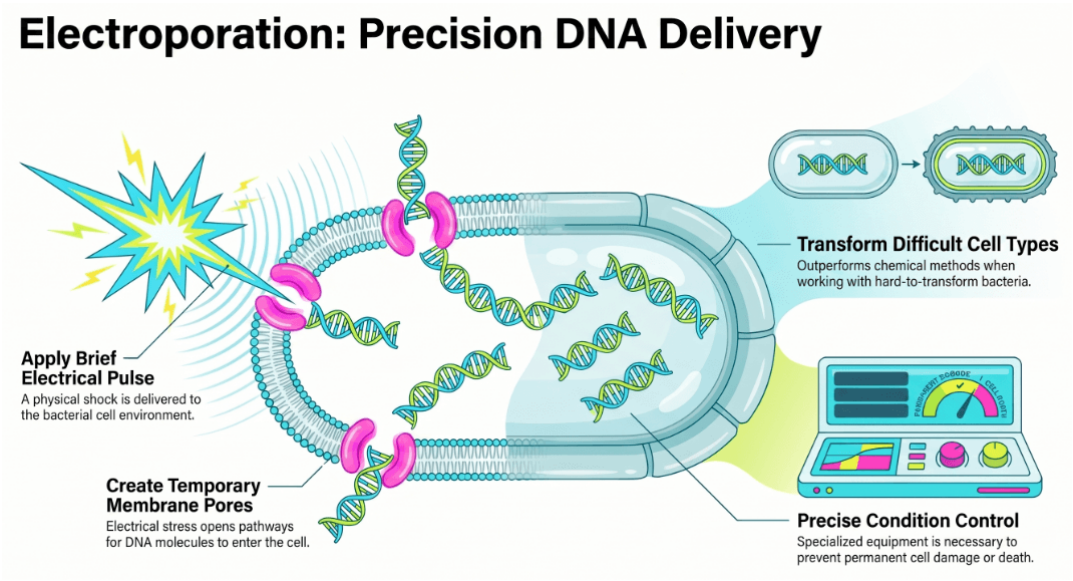
treated with an ice-cold solution of calcium chloride. The calcium ions help neutralize the negative charges on both the DNA and the bacterial cell membrane, allowing them to come closer together.

After this treatment, the cells are exposed to a brief increase in temperature, known as a heat shock. This sudden change creates a temporary imbalance in the cell membrane, allowing DNA to enter the cell. The cells are then returned to normal conditions, where the membrane reseals and the introduced DNA is retained. This method is relatively simple and cost-effective, making it commonly used in teaching and research laboratories.

Electroporation

Electroporation is a physical method that uses a brief electrical pulse to introduce DNA into cells. The electrical shock creates temporary pores in the bacterial cell membrane, allowing NA molecules to pass through.

This method is highly efficient and can be used with a wide range of cell types, including those that are difficult to transform using chemical methods. However, it requires specialized equipment and precise control of conditions to avoid damaging the cells.



Attributions:
"Bacterial Transformation Lab" Stephen Borish https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9W6Wwf6zAbk YouTube Standard License. No changes made
"The Heat Shock Method" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"Electroporation: Precision DNA Delivery" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by **Emalee Mackenzie**, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 12.2: Transformation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems

Bacteria are widely used in biotechnology as efficient systems for producing proteins. Their rapid growth, ease of genetic manipulation, and ability to express foreign genes make them ideal for large-scale protein production. In addition, microbial proteins can be engineered as reporters, allowing scientists to visualize and measure gene expression in real time.

Bacterial Systems for Mass Production of Proteins

Bacteria can be used to mass-produce proteins by introducing genes that encode proteins of interest. These genes are inserted into **expression vectors** (engineered DNA molecules designed to produce a specific protein in a host cell). Expression vectors are carefully designed to include regulatory elements that control transcription and translation, ensuring efficient and controlled protein production.

A key component of an expression vector is the **promoter** (a DNA sequence that initiates transcription of a gene), which determines when and how strongly the gene is expressed. Some promoters are constitutive, meaning they are always active, while others are inducible and can be turned on only under specific conditions, such as the presence of a chemical signal. This allows scientists to control protein production and prevent unnecessary stress on the bacterial cells.

In addition to promoters, expression vectors often include other important features such as ribosome binding sites, transcription terminators, and selectable marker genes. These elements work together to ensure that the gene is efficiently transcribed into RNA and translated into protein.

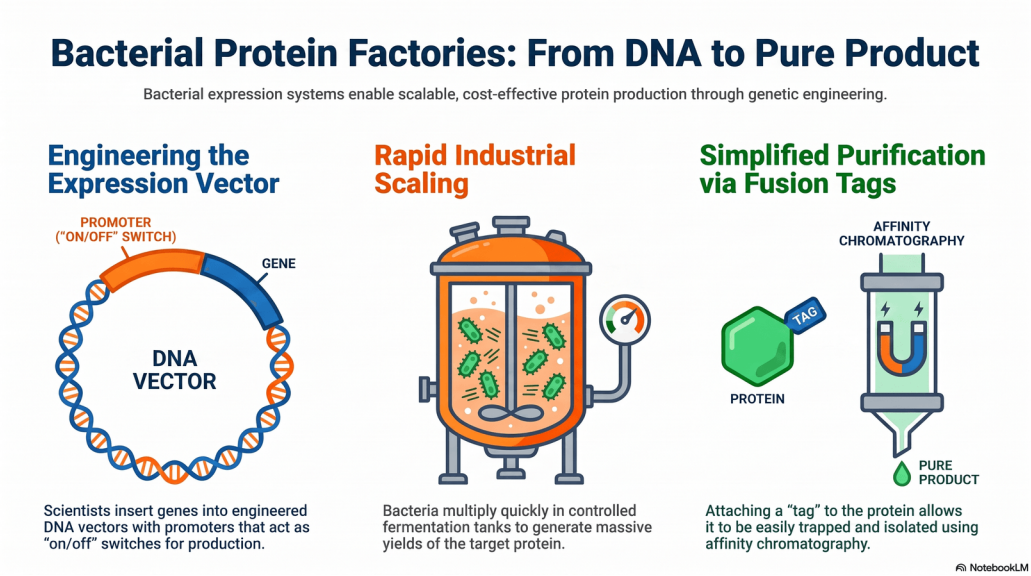
Once the vector is introduced into bacterial cells, typically through transformation, the bacteria begin producing the protein as they grow and divide. Because bacteria reproduce rapidly, large populations can be generated in a short time, leading to high yields of the desired protein.

In industrial settings, bacterial cultures are grown in large fermentation systems where environmental conditions such as temperature, pH, oxygen levels, and nutrient availability are carefully controlled. This process allows for consistent and scalable protein production.

Bacterial protein expression systems are widely used to produce enzymes, research reagents, and therapeutic proteins. Their scalability, efficiency, and cost-effectiveness make them one of the most important tools in modern biotechnology.

Fusion Proteins and Affinity Purification

A useful strategy for producing proteins that can be easily purified is the creation of **fusion proteins** (proteins formed by joining a protein of interest to a tag protein). In this approach, the gene encoding the protein of interest is cloned into an expression vector that also contains a gene encoding a tag protein. The tag is placed downstream of the promoter so that both the protein of interest and the tag are expressed together as a single fused protein. These tags are designed to bind specifically to certain materials, allowing the fusion protein to be isolated using **affinity chromatography** (a purification technique that separates molecules based on specific binding interactions). In this method, the protein mixture is passed through a column containing a substance that binds the tag. The fusion protein binds to the column, while other proteins are washed away. The purified protein is then released by changing the conditions. Fusion protein systems greatly simplify purification and are widely used in research and industrial biotechnology.



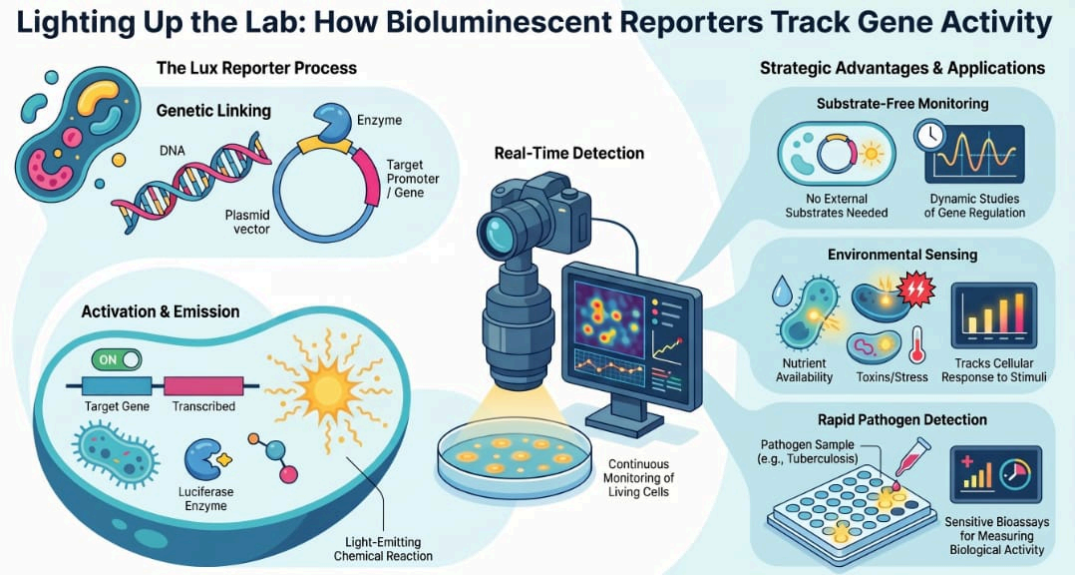
Microbial proteins can also be used as reporters to study gene expression and cellular activity. **Reporter genes** (genes that encode easily detectable proteins used to monitor gene expression) produce a visible or measurable signal when a target gene is active. This allows scientists to track when, where, and how strongly a gene is expressed.

The Lux Gene

One important example is the **lux genes** (genes derived from bioluminescent bacteria that encode enzymes responsible for light production). These genes encode luciferase and associated proteins that catalyze a chemical reaction resulting in light emission. This natural bioluminescence can be harnessed as a biological signal in research and diagnostics.

To use this system, scientists clone lux genes into plasmids and link them to a promoter or gene of interest. When the target gene is activated, the lux genes are also expressed, producing light. This light can be detected using imaging systems or specialized instruments, allowing researchers to monitor gene expression in real time without disrupting the cells. One major advantage of lux-based reporters is that they do not require the addition of external substrates in some systems, making them especially useful for continuous monitoring of living cells. This enables dynamic studies of gene regulation, where changes in expression can be observed over time. Reporter systems are also used to study cellular responses to environmental conditions, such as stress, toxins, or nutrient availability. By linking reporter genes to specific regulatory pathways, scientists can determine how cells respond to different stimuli.

In addition to lux, other microbial reporter proteins—such as fluorescent proteins—are widely used in biotechnology. These reporters provide different types of signals (light emission or fluorescence), allowing flexibility in experimental design. Reporter systems have important practical applications. For example, lux-based systems have been used to develop bioassays for detecting pathogens such as tuberculosis. In these assays, light production indicates the presence or activity of specific biological processes, enabling rapid and sensitive detection.



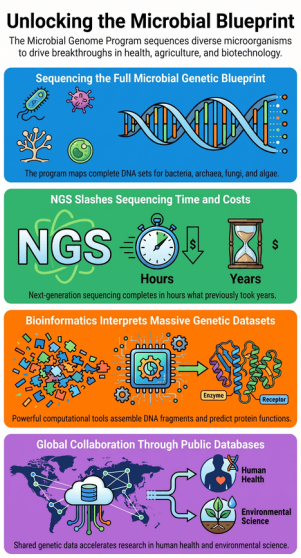
Overall, microbial reporter proteins are powerful tools that provide direct, real-time insight into gene expression and cellular function. Their use has greatly advanced research in genetics, microbiology, and biotechnology.

Attributions:
"Bacterial Protein Factories: From DNA to Pure Protein Product." *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"Lighting up the Lab. How Bioluminescent Reporters Track Gene Activity" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)

The **Microbial Genome Program (MGP)** (a large-scale scientific initiative focused on sequencing and analyzing the genomes of microorganisms) was established to better understand the genetic diversity and biological functions of microorganisms. Because microbes play essential roles in human health, agriculture, industry, and the environment, sequencing their genomes provides valuable insights that drive advances in biotechnology.



The program focuses on sequencing the complete **genome** (the complete set of genetic material in an organism) of bacteria, archaea, fungi, algae, and other microorganisms. By analyzing an organism's DNA, scientists can identify genes, predict protein functions, compare species, and better understand how microorganisms grow, adapt, and interact with their environments. These genome sequences are stored in public databases, allowing researchers worldwide to compare organisms and accelerate scientific discovery.

The development of **next-generation sequencing (NGS)** (a group of DNA sequencing technologies capable of rapidly sequencing millions of DNA fragments simultaneously) has greatly increased the speed and reduced the cost of microbial genome sequencing. Unlike earlier sequencing methods, which could take months or even years to complete a single microbial genome, NGS can sequence millions of DNA fragments simultaneously, allowing entire genomes to be sequenced in a matter of hours or days. This high-throughput approach has enabled scientists to sequence thousands of microorganisms from diverse environments, including soil, oceans, the human microbiome, and extreme habitats such as deep-sea hydrothermal vents and hot springs. The enormous amount of genetic information generated by NGS requires powerful computational tools for analysis. **Bioinformatics** (the use of computer technology to collect, analyze, and interpret biological data) allows researchers to assemble DNA sequences into complete genomes, identify genes, compare genomes between species, predict protein functions, and uncover evolutionary relationships. Together, NGS and bioinformatics have transformed microbial genomics by making large-scale genome sequencing faster, more accurate, and more accessible than ever before.

Goals of the Microbial Genome Program

The Microbial Genome Program has several important goals that advance both scientific research and biotechnology. One of its primary objectives is to identify and catalog genes from a wide variety of microorganisms. By comparing genomes from different species through **comparative genomics** (the study of similarities and differences between the genomes of different organisms), scientists can better understand how microorganisms evolved, how they are related, and how specific genes contribute to their unique characteristics.

Another major goal is to determine the function of microbial genes. By analyzing genome sequences, researchers can identify genes involved in metabolic pathways, predict the functions of proteins and enzymes, and understand how microorganisms obtain nutrients, respond to environmental changes, and survive under a wide range of conditions. Linking genes to their biological functions provides valuable insights into microbial physiology and reveals new opportunities for biotechnology.

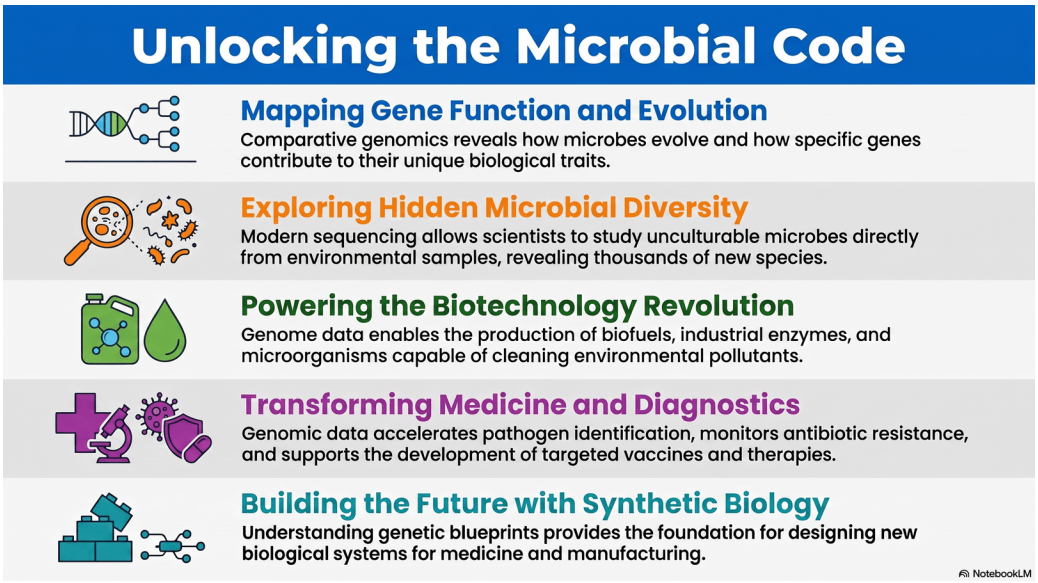
The program also seeks to explore the enormous diversity of the microbial world. Although only a small percentage of microorganisms can be grown in the laboratory, modern DNA sequencing technologies allow scientists to study the genomes of unculturable microbes directly from environmental samples. This approach has revealed thousands of previously unknown microorganisms and greatly expanded our understanding of the complexity and diversity of microbial life.

The information generated by the Microbial Genome Program has numerous applications in biotechnology. Genome sequences help researchers identify genes that encode useful enzymes, antibiotics, and other biologically important molecules. Scientists use this information to develop improved industrial microorganisms, discover enzymes that function under extreme temperatures or pH conditions, identify microbes capable of degrading environmental pollutants for bioremediation, and engineer microorganisms to produce pharmaceuticals, biofuels, and other valuable products.

Microbial genomics has also transformed medicine. Genome data allow scientists to identify disease-causing microorganisms more quickly, monitor the emergence of antibiotic resistance, track infectious disease outbreaks, and develop improved diagnostic tests, antibiotics, and vaccines. Understanding the genetic basis of pathogenicity also helps researchers design more targeted therapies while minimizing damage to beneficial microorganisms.

Finally, the Microbial Genome Program provides the foundation for advances in **synthetic biology** (the design and construction of new biological systems or the redesign of existing organisms for useful purposes). By understanding how genes function individually and together, scientists can redesign metabolic pathways or introduce new genes to create microorganisms with novel capabilities for medicine, agriculture, manufacturing, and environmental applications.

Beyond its scientific discoveries, the Microbial Genome Program has created extensive public genome databases that are freely available to researchers worldwide. These shared resources promote collaboration, allow scientists to compare newly sequenced organisms with existing genomes, and accelerate discoveries across many fields of biotechnology. As genome sequencing technologies continue to improve, the program remains an essential resource for understanding microorganisms and developing innovative solutions to global challenges.



Attributions:
"Unlocking the Microbial Blueprint" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"Unlocking the Microbial Code" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP) is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats

Biotechnology plays a critical role in protecting public health and national security by helping detect, prevent, and respond to biological threats. **Bioterrorism** (the intentional release of biological agents such as bacteria, viruses, or toxins to cause harm) presents unique challenges because these agents can spread rapidly and may be difficult to detect. Advances in biotechnology provide tools to identify threats quickly, develop countermeasures, and strengthen preparedness. Early detection is essential for limiting the impact of biological threats. The faster a pathogen is identified, the more effectively public health officials can contain its spread and begin treatment or prevention efforts. Biotechnology provides powerful tools for rapid and accurate identification of biological age

YouTube Video

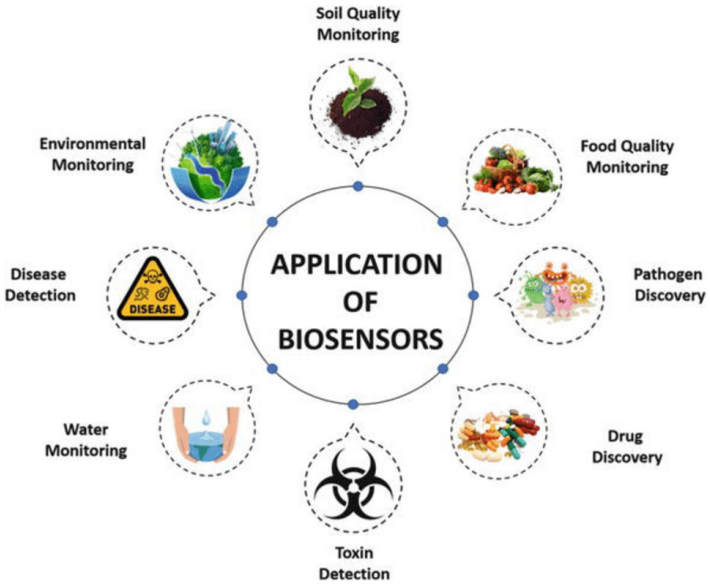
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Molecular techniques such as PCR and genomic sequencing are central to modern detection strategies. PCR allows scientists to amplify specific DNA sequences, making it possible to detect even extremely small amounts of genetic material from a pathogen. This sensitivity is critical when dealing with early-stage infections or low-level environmental contamination.

Genomic sequencing provides an additional layer of information by determining the complete DNA sequence of an organism. This enables precise identification of pathogens, including different strains or variants. Sequencing data can also reveal important characteristics, such as virulence factors or antibiotic resistance genes, which help guide treatment and response strategies.

In addition to laboratory-based methods, biotechnology has enabled the development of portable diagnostic tools. **Biosensors** (devices that use biological molecules to detect specific substances) can identify pathogens quickly and often in real time. These devices may use antibodies, nucleic acids, or enzymes to detect specific biological signatures. Portable diagnostic systems are especially valuable in field settings, where rapid decisions are required. They can be used at points of care, in environmental monitoring, or in emergency response situations where access to full laboratory facilities may be limited. Surveillance systems integrate data from multiple sources to monitor public health trends. By analyzing diagnostic results, hospital reports, and environmental data, these systems can detect unusual patterns that may indicate a biological threat. For example, a sudden increase in cases of a rare disease could signal a potential outbreak or intentional release.



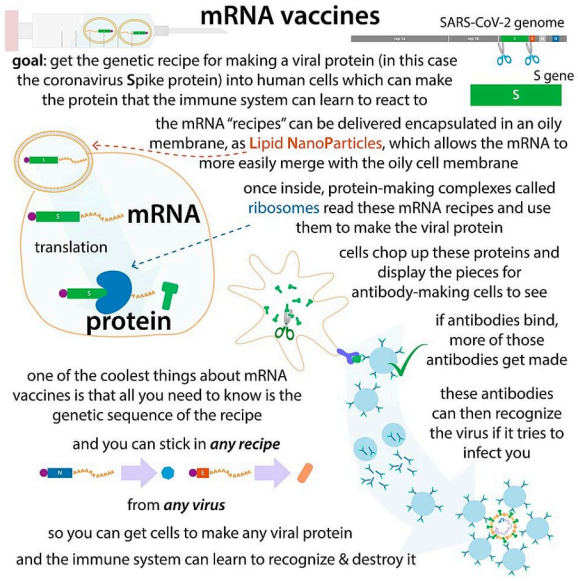
Modern surveillance systems often incorporate bioinformatics tools to analyze large datasets and identify trends in real time. This allows for faster detection of emerging threats and more coordinated responses.

Together, rapid detection technologies and surveillance systems form a critical defense against bioterrorism. They enable early identification, informed decision-making, and timely intervention, all of which are essential for protecting public health.

Protecting Against Biological Threats

Biotechnology is essential for developing vaccines and treatments that protect against biological agents. Once a pathogen is identified, scientists can use its genetic sequence to design targeted countermeasures. Modern approaches rely heavily on **genomics** (the study of an organism's complete DNA sequence) to identify antigens—molecules that trigger an immune response—and to predict which targets will be most effective.

Vaccine design has advanced from whole-pathogen approaches to more precise platforms. These include recombinant protein vaccines, viral vector vaccines, and nucleic acid–based vaccines. In particular, **mRNA vaccines** (vaccines that deliver genetic instructions for cells to produce a target antigen) can be designed rapidly once a pathogen's sequence is known. This allows for faster initial development compared to traditional methods.



Biotechnology also enables **high-throughput screening** (rapid testing of many compounds to identify effective candidates), allowing researchers to evaluate thousands of potential drugs quickly. Promising candidates then move through a structured development pipeline, including preclinical testing and phased clinical trials to assess safety and efficacy. One major class is **monoclonal antibodies** (laboratory-produced antibodies designed to bind to specific targets), which can neutralize pathogens or block key steps in infection. Antiviral drugs are another important category; these compounds interfere with viral replication by targeting enzymes or processes essential to the pathogen's life cycle.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"The World"s Deadliest Biological Weapons" TopTenz https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nY8YH0PKIJk Standard YouTube License. No changes made
Phumlani Tetyana, Poslet Morgan Shumbula and Zikhona Njengele-Tetyana, CC BY 3.0 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0>, via Wikimedia Commons
Biochemlife, CC BY-SA 4.0 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0>, via Wikimedia Commons
GCSE Biology - Monoclonal Antibiodies Cognito https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XrUW54Ea598 Standard YouTube License. No changes made

This page titled 12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology



Bacterial biotechnology is advancing rapidly as new technologies make it easier to understand, engineer, and apply bacteria to solve global challenges. Because bacteria reproduce quickly, are relatively inexpensive to grow, and can be genetically modified with precision, they are expected to play an even greater role in medicine, agriculture, environmental protection, and industrial manufacturing.

One of the most exciting areas of research is synthetic biology, where scientists redesign bacteria to perform new functions. Engineered bacteria are being developed to produce biodegradable plastics such as polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHAs), renewable biofuels, vitamins, industrial enzymes, therapeutic proteins, and specialty chemicals. For example, *Escherichia coli* is commonly engineered to manufacture human insulin, growth hormone, and other pharmaceuticals, while other bacterial species are being modified to produce sustainable alternatives to petroleum-based chemicals.

Genome editing technologies such as CRISPR-Cas systems are making bacterial engineering faster and more precise. Scientists can modify bacterial genomes to improve production efficiency, introduce new metabolic pathways, or create strains capable of manufacturing products that were previously difficult to produce. These advances are expected to lower manufacturing costs while making biomanufacturing more sustainable.

Researchers are also engineering bacteria to improve human health. Beneficial bacteria that naturally live in the human digestive tract are being modified to detect disease, produce therapeutic molecules, or deliver medications directly within the body. Experimental bacterial therapies are being investigated for conditions such as inflammatory bowel disease, diabetes, and certain types of cancer. Other engineered bacteria may one day detect infections or produce drugs only when they encounter specific disease markers.

Environmental applications continue to expand as well. Scientists are developing bacteria that degrade plastics, remove oil spills, detoxify heavy metals such as mercury and arsenic, and break down pesticides and other environmental pollutants. Other bacteria are being engineered to capture carbon dioxide or convert agricultural waste into renewable fuels and valuable industrial chemicals, helping reduce greenhouse gas emissions and dependence on fossil fuels.

Agriculture is another area of rapid growth. Researchers are improving nitrogen-fixing bacteria that naturally provide nutrients to crops, reducing the need for synthetic fertilizers. Other beneficial bacteria are being developed to protect plants from diseases, improve drought tolerance, and promote healthier root growth, leading to more sustainable farming practices.

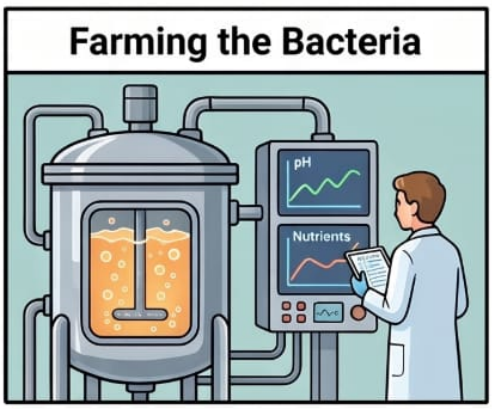
Artificial intelligence, automation, and bioinformatics are accelerating bacterial research by allowing scientists to analyze large genetic datasets, predict bacterial behavior, and rapidly design improved strains. As these technologies continue to advance, bacterial biotechnology will provide innovative solutions for producing medicines, creating sustainable materials, protecting the environment, improving agriculture, and supporting a growing global population.

Attribution:
"Engineering Tomorrow: The Power of Bacterial Biotech" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology

Bacterial biotechnology offers a wide range of careers focused on using bacteria to develop products, improve industrial processes, protect the environment, and advance scientific research. Professionals in this field work in pharmaceutical companies, food manufacturers, environmental laboratories, agricultural biotechnology companies, government agencies, and research institutions. Many positions are well suited for individuals with an associate degree or biotechnology certificate, while opportunities for advancement are available through additional education and experience.



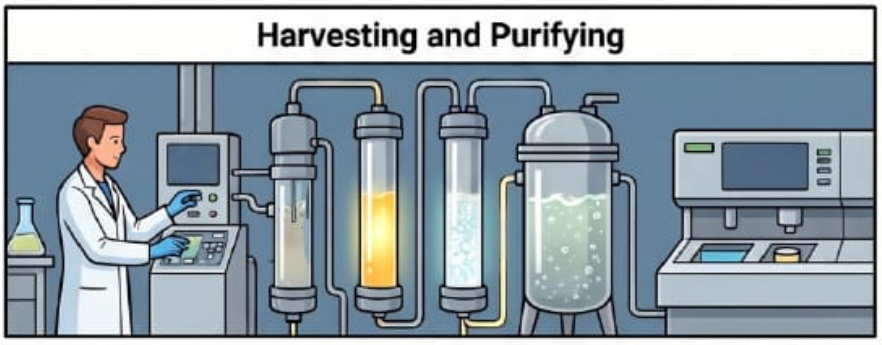
Microbial Fermentation Technicians grow the engineered bacteria in large-scale bioreactors, carefully monitoring pH and nutrients.

Microbial Fermentation Technician

Microbial fermentation technicians grow bacteria in controlled bioreactors to produce valuable products such as insulin, industrial enzymes, vitamins, amino acids, and biofuels. A typical day involves preparing growth media, sterilizing equipment, inoculating fermenters with bacterial cultures, monitoring temperature, pH, oxygen levels, and nutrient concentrations, and collecting samples to evaluate bacterial growth. Technicians also maintain detailed production records and follow Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP) to ensure product quality and safety.

Biomanufacturing Technician

Biomanufacturing technicians help manufacture biologic products using genetically engineered bacteria. After bacterial cells produce a desired protein, technicians harvest the cultures and purify the product using techniques such as centrifugation, filtration, and chromatography. They routinely perform quality control testing, operate automated manufacturing equipment, and document every step of the production process. Products may include therapeutic proteins, vaccines, enzymes, and diagnostic reagents.



Biomanufacturing Technicians extract the desired proteins or enzymes from the bacterial cultures using filtration and chromatography.

Molecular Biology Technician

Molecular biology technicians modify bacteria to create organisms capable of producing useful molecules or serving as research tools. Their daily activities may include cloning genes into plasmids, transforming bacterial cells, growing bacterial cultures, isolating plasmid DNA, performing polymerase chain reaction (PCR), analyzing DNA with gel electrophoresis, and confirming successful genetic modifications through DNA sequencing. These technicians support research aimed at developing new medicines, agricultural products, and industrial enzymes.

Quality Control Technician

Quality control technicians ensure that bacterial cultures and biotechnology products meet strict safety and quality standards. They perform microbial contamination testing, verify bacterial strain identity, monitor product purity, calibrate laboratory instruments, and analyze samples using microbiological and biochemical techniques. Careful documentation and adherence to regulatory guidelines are essential parts of the job. Quality control technicians play a critical role in ensuring that products are safe for consumers and patients.



Quality Control Technicians perform rigorous testing to ensure the final product meets strict safety standards before it reaches consumers.

Industrial Enzyme Production Technician

Many industries rely on bacterial enzymes for manufacturing processes. Industrial enzyme production technicians culture bacteria that produce enzymes used in laundry detergents, paper production, textiles, biofuels, food processing, and molecular biology research. They optimize bacterial growth conditions, monitor enzyme production, harvest bacterial cultures, and assist with enzyme purification and testing. Their work helps improve manufacturing efficiency while reducing energy use and chemical

waste.



Research Laboratory Technician

Research laboratory technicians assist scientists investigating bacterial genetics, metabolism, antibiotic resistance, and synthetic biology. Their responsibilities include preparing bacterial cultures, maintaining laboratory equipment, conducting experiments, collecting and analyzing data, and documenting results. Research technicians often use molecular biology techniques such as PCR, DNA sequencing, bacterial transformation, CRISPR gene editing, and fluorescence microscopy. Their work contributes to scientific discoveries that may lead to new medicines, diagnostics, and biotechnology products.

Clinical Microbiology Laboratory Technician

Clinical microbiology laboratory technicians identify disease-causing bacteria from patient samples to assist physicians in diagnosing infections. They culture bacteria from blood, urine, or tissue samples, perform biochemical identification tests, use molecular diagnostic methods such as PCR, and determine antibiotic susceptibility. Accuracy and attention to detail are essential because test results directly influence patient treatment decisions.

Synthetic Biology Technician

Synthetic biology technicians design and build engineered bacterial systems that perform useful tasks. They assemble genetic circuits, modify bacterial metabolic pathways, test engineered organisms, and evaluate their performance using automated laboratory equipment. Projects may include engineering bacteria to manufacture biodegradable plastics, detect environmental toxins, produce renewable chemicals, or synthesize pharmaceutical compounds. This rapidly growing field combines microbiology, molecular biology, genetics, engineering, and computer science.

Attributions:
Images AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action



Clostridium autoethanogenum Industrial bioreactors Dr. Jennifer Holmgren

Every day, steel mills, chemical plants, and other manufacturing facilities release large amounts of carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide as byproducts of industrial processes. Traditionally, these gases have been considered waste and are either burned or released into the atmosphere, where they contribute to climate change. Scientists at the biotechnology company LanzaTech saw these emissions not as pollution, but as a valuable resource that could be recycled into useful products through bacterial biotechnology.

Under the leadership of Dr. Jennifer Holmgren, LanzaTech's team of microbiologists, fermentation scientists, metabolic engineers, molecular biologists, and bioprocess technicians developed a commercial manufacturing process that uses the naturally occurring bacterium *Clostridium autoethanogenum*. Instead of consuming sugars like many industrial microorganisms, this bacterium uses carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and hydrogen as its food source. Inside large industrial bioreactors, the bacteria convert these waste gases into ethanol through a process known as gas fermentation. The ethanol then serves as a building block for manufacturing sustainable aviation fuel, plastics, polyester fibers, detergents, fragrances, packaging materials, and many other everyday products.

Developing this technology required years of research and collaboration across multiple scientific disciplines. Microbiologists investigated how the bacterium naturally metabolizes carbon-containing gases, while molecular biologists and metabolic engineers optimized its metabolic pathways to increase ethanol production. Fermentation scientists designed the conditions needed to grow the bacteria at an industrial scale, carefully monitoring temperature, pH, gas flow, and nutrient availability to maximize productivity. Bioprocess technicians operated and maintained the fermentation systems, collected samples for quality testing, and ensured the bacteria remained healthy throughout production. Downstream processing specialists then purified the ethanol and prepared it for conversion into commercial products. Together, these teams transformed a naturally occurring microorganism into the foundation of a sustainable manufacturing platform.

Today, LanzaTech's technology operates at commercial facilities in several countries, where industrial waste gases are captured and recycled instead of being released into the atmosphere. The company has partnered with major steel manufacturers, airlines, and consumer brands to convert recycled carbon into valuable products. Sustainable aviation fuel produced using LanzaTech's process has powered commercial demonstration flights, while recycled carbon has been incorporated into clothing made from polyester fibers, cosmetic ingredients, packaging materials, and household products. Rather than relying solely on fossil fuels, these products begin with carbon emissions that would otherwise contribute to air pollution.

LanzaTech's success demonstrates how bacterial biotechnology can transform an environmental problem into an economic opportunity. By combining microbiology, fermentation technology, metabolic engineering, and industrial bioprocessing, scientists developed a process that reduces greenhouse gas emissions while creating renewable products used every day. It also highlights the wide variety of careers available in bacterial biotechnology, from laboratory research and strain development to large-scale biomanufacturing and process engineering.

Attributions:
Clostridium autoethanogenum AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed

under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
"Industrial bioreactors" AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.
Dr. Jennifer Holmgren https://www.google.com/search?sca_es...SggQARgBIAEoAQ

This page titled 12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13: MEDICAL BIOTECHNOLOGY

Medical biotechnology (the application of biological science and engineering to improve human health through the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disease) uses living organisms, cells, and biological molecules to develop new ways to diagnose, prevent, and treat disease. Advances in this field have led to innovative therapies, improved diagnostics, vaccines, and personalized treatments for conditions such as diabetes, cancer, and genetic disorders.

This chapter explores four key areas of medical biotechnology: **biopharmacy** (the discovery, development, manufacturing, regulation, and clinical use of biologically derived medicines), **biopharmaceuticals** (medicines produced using living cells or organisms), **pharmacogenomics** (the study of how genetic differences influence an individual's response to medications), and **nanomedicine** (the use of nanoscale materials and technologies to diagnose and treat disease). Together, these technologies are transforming modern healthcare and improving patient outcomes.

13.1: Biopharmaceuticals

13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins

13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines

13.1.3: Gene Therapies

13.1.4: Cell Therapies

13.2: Biopharmacy

13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals

13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability

13.3: Pharmacogenomics

13.4: Nanomedicine

13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology

13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology

13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action

This page titled 13: Medical Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

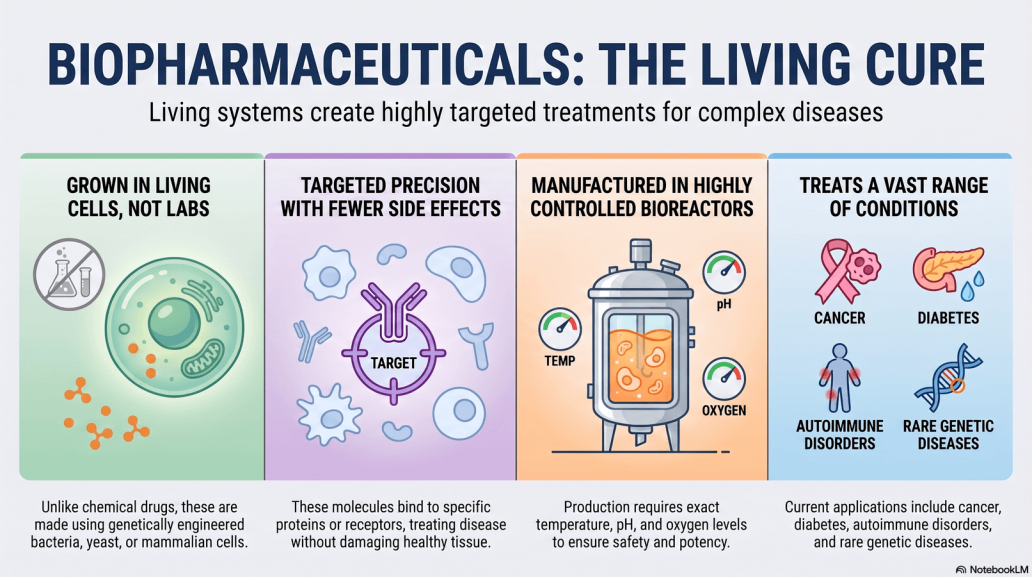
13.1: BIOPHARMACEUTICALS

Biopharmaceuticals (medicines produced using living cells or organisms through biotechnology) are biologic medicines that are used to prevent, diagnose, and treat disease. Unlike traditional pharmaceuticals, which are synthesized through chemical reactions, biopharmaceuticals are manufactured using genetically engineered bacteria, yeast, mammalian cells, or other living systems. Because they are produced by living organisms, biopharmaceuticals are large, complex molecules that are much more difficult to manufacture than conventional drugs and require carefully controlled production processes.

Most biopharmaceuticals are proteins or other biological molecules that are naturally found in the human body. Scientists use recombinant DNA technology to insert a human gene into a host cell, enabling the cell to produce the desired therapeutic protein. The genetically engineered cells are grown in large **bioreactors** (specialized vessels that provide controlled conditions for growing cells and producing biological products), where temperature, pH, oxygen, nutrients, and other environmental conditions are carefully monitored to maximize production while maintaining product quality. After production, the biologic is purified, tested for safety and potency, and formulated into its final dosage form before being distributed to healthcare providers.

One of the greatest advantages of biopharmaceuticals is their ability to target specific biological processes involved in disease. Many biologics bind to a single protein, receptor, or immune cell, allowing them to treat disease more precisely than many traditional medications. This targeted approach often increases treatment effectiveness while reducing damage to healthy tissues and minimizing unwanted side effects. As a result, biopharmaceuticals have transformed the treatment of diseases that previously had few effective treatment options.

Today, biopharmaceuticals are used to treat a wide variety of medical conditions, including diabetes, cancer, rheumatoid arthritis, Crohn's disease, psoriasis, multiple sclerosis, anemia, hemophilia, osteoporosis, asthma, cardiovascular disease, and many rare genetic disorders. They have also played an important role in preventing infectious diseases through recombinant vaccines and treating inherited diseases through gene and cell therapies.



Attributions:
"Biopharmaceuticals: The Living Cure" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins

13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines

13.1.3: Gene Therapies

13.1.4: Cell Therapies

This page titled 13.1: Biopharmaceuticals is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins

Therapeutic proteins (proteins produced through biotechnology for the prevention, diagnosis, or treatment of disease) are one of the largest and most important classes of biopharmaceuticals. Many of these proteins are naturally produced by the human body to regulate normal physiological processes such as growth, metabolism, blood clotting, immune function, and cell signaling. When these proteins are absent, produced in insufficient amounts, or do not function properly because of disease or genetic mutations, recombinant therapeutic proteins can replace or supplement the missing protein and restore normal biological function.

Most therapeutic proteins are produced using recombinant DNA technology. Scientists first identify the human gene that encodes the desired protein and insert it into an expression vector, which is introduced into host cells such as bacteria, yeast, or mammalian cells. These genetically engineered cells are grown in large bioreactors under carefully controlled conditions, where they produce the therapeutic protein. The protein is then purified, tested for quality and safety, and formulated into a medicine suitable for patient use.

Therapeutic proteins are used to treat a wide variety of diseases. One of the earliest and most successful examples is recombinant human insulin, which replaced insulin previously extracted from pigs and cattle and has improved the treatment of diabetes for millions of patients worldwide. Other important therapeutic proteins include **erythropoietin** (a hormone that stimulates red blood cell production), which is used to treat anemia associated with chronic kidney disease and chemotherapy; **human growth hormone** (a hormone that regulates normal growth and metabolism), which is used to treat growth hormone deficiency and certain genetic disorders; and recombinant blood-clotting factors that are used to treat hemophilia by replacing proteins required for normal blood coagulation.

Additional therapeutic proteins include enzymes used to treat inherited metabolic disorders, cytokines that regulate immune responses, and colony-stimulating factors that promote the production of white blood cells following chemotherapy. As protein engineering technologies continue to advance, researchers are developing therapeutic proteins with improved stability, longer half-lives, increased activity, and reduced immunogenicity, allowing patients to receive more effective treatments with fewer doses and fewer side effects.

Because therapeutic proteins are large, complex molecules, they are generally administered by injection or intravenous infusion rather than taken orally. Digestive enzymes rapidly break down proteins in the gastrointestinal tract, preventing them from reaching the bloodstream intact. Researchers are actively developing new delivery technologies, including nanoparticles, sustained-release formulations, and alternative administration routes, to improve patient convenience and treatment outcomes.

Therapeutic proteins have transformed the treatment of many chronic and life-threatening diseases and remain one of the fastest-growing areas of medical biotechnology. As advances in recombinant DNA technology, synthetic biology, and protein engineering continue, new therapeutic proteins are expected to provide increasingly precise and personalized treatments for a wide range of medical conditions.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

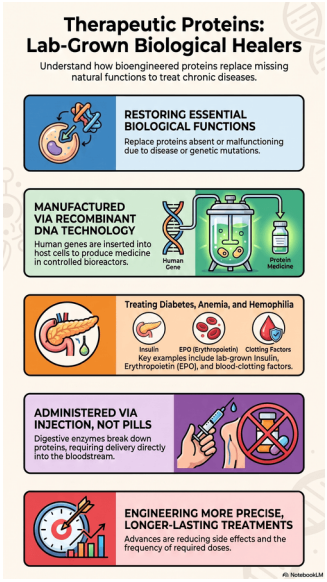
View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Biopharmaceuticals: The development and production of therapeutic proteins. Biotech Exploreres https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OwPuxBzB8ks YouTube standard license. No changes made

This page titled 13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines

Recombinant vaccines (vaccines produced using recombinant DNA technology to generate specific antigens rather than using whole pathogens) are an important class of biopharmaceuticals that protect against infectious diseases by stimulating the immune system to recognize and respond to disease-causing organisms. Unlike traditional vaccines, which often contain weakened or inactivated viruses or bacteria, recombinant vaccines use a single purified protein or antigen produced by genetically engineered cells. This approach improves vaccine safety while generating a strong and specific immune response.



The production of recombinant vaccines begins by identifying a gene that encodes an antigen capable of stimulating protective immunity. This gene is inserted into an expression vector and introduced into host cells such as yeast, bacteria, insect cells, or mammalian cells. As the cells grow, they produce large quantities of the antigen protein, which is then purified and formulated into a vaccine. Because only the antigen is used, recombinant vaccines cannot cause the disease they are designed to prevent.

After vaccination, the immune system recognizes the recombinant antigen as foreign and produces **antibodies** (proteins made by B lymphocytes that specifically recognize and neutralize foreign substances) and activates immune cells that provide long-term protection. If the vaccinated individual is later exposed to the actual pathogen, the immune system can rapidly recognize and eliminate it before illness develops.

Several recombinant vaccines are widely used in modern medicine. The recombinant hepatitis B vaccine was the first genetically engineered vaccine approved for human use and has dramatically reduced hepatitis B infections and liver cancer worldwide. Another important example is the human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine, which protects against HPV strains responsible for most cases of cervical cancer as well as several other cancers. More recently, recombinant protein technologies have also been used to develop vaccines against diseases such as COVID-19, influenza, and respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

Recombinant vaccines offer several advantages over traditional vaccines. Because they do not contain live pathogens, they have an excellent safety profile and can often be administered to individuals with weakened immune systems. They also produce highly consistent vaccine formulations because the antigen is manufactured under carefully controlled conditions using standardized biomanufacturing processes. In addition, recombinant DNA technology allows scientists to rapidly modify vaccine antigens as new pathogen variants emerge.

Advances in biotechnology continue to improve recombinant vaccine design through the use of novel adjuvants, nanoparticle delivery systems, virus-like particles, and computational methods for identifying protective antigens. These innovations are helping scientists develop vaccines that provide stronger, longer-lasting immunity against both infectious diseases and certain cancers, making recombinant vaccines one of the most successful applications of modern medical biotechnology

Attributions:
"Therapeutic Proteins: Lab Grown Biological Healers" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine*

*Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.*

This page titled 13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.1.3: Gene Therapies

Gene therapies (treatments that modify, replace, add, or silence genes to prevent or treat disease) are an emerging class of biopharmaceuticals that address disease at its genetic source. Instead of treating only the symptoms of a disease, gene therapy aims to correct or compensate for the underlying genetic defect responsible for the condition. This approach has the potential to provide long-lasting, and in some cases curative, treatments for inherited disorders, certain cancers, and other diseases.

Most gene therapies work by delivering genetic material into a patient's cells using a **vector** (a carrier that transports therapeutic DNA or RNA into target cells). Modified viruses are the most common vectors because they naturally enter cells and deliver genetic material. Before use, these viruses are engineered so they cannot cause disease while retaining their ability to transport therapeutic genes. Common viral vectors include **adeno-associated viruses (AAVs)**, **adenoviruses**, and **lentiviruses**. Researchers are also developing nonviral delivery systems, such as lipid nanoparticles and other synthetic carriers, to improve safety and expand treatment options.

Gene therapies can treat disease in several ways. A functional copy of a gene may be added to replace one that is missing or defective. In other cases, a disease-causing gene can be inactivated or silenced to prevent the production of a harmful protein. More recently, gene-editing technologies such as **CRISPR-Cas9** have enabled scientists to make precise changes to DNA by correcting, deleting, or inserting specific gene sequences within a patient's genome.

Gene therapies may be performed **in vivo**, where the therapeutic gene is delivered directly into the patient's body, or **ex vivo**, where cells are removed from the patient, genetically modified in the laboratory, and then returned to the body. CAR-T cell therapy, discussed in the previous section, is an example of an ex vivo gene therapy because a patient's T cells are genetically engineered before being reinfused.

Several gene therapies have already been approved to treat inherited diseases. These include treatments for spinal muscular atrophy, inherited retinal disorders that cause blindness, hemophilia, sickle cell disease, and beta-thalassemia. Researchers are also investigating gene therapies for cystic fibrosis, muscular dystrophy, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and many forms of cancer.

Although gene therapy has shown remarkable promise, several challenges remain. Delivering genes to the correct cells, maintaining long-term gene expression, minimizing immune responses to delivery vectors, and ensuring patient safety continue to be active areas of research. In addition, because gene therapies are highly specialized and complex to manufacture, they are often among the most expensive medical treatments available.

Advances in molecular biology, gene editing, vector engineering, and genome sequencing continue to expand the capabilities of gene therapy. As these technologies improve, gene therapies are expected to become increasingly effective and accessible, offering the potential to treat or even cure diseases that were once considered untreatable.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

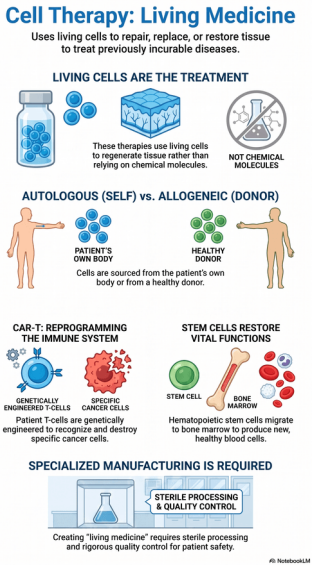
View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"Gene Therapy: Everything You Need to Know" Medical Centric Podcast https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CvJNzxvPCzg Standard YouTube license. No changes made

This page titled 13.1.3: Gene Therapies is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.1.4: Cell Therapies

Cell therapies (treatments that use living cells to repair, replace, or restore normal tissue and organ function) are an emerging class of biopharmaceuticals that treat disease by introducing living cells into a patient. Unlike traditional drugs, which act through chemical or biological molecules, cell therapies use the unique properties of living cells to regenerate damaged tissues, replace missing or dysfunctional cells, or strengthen the body's immune response. This approach has opened new possibilities for treating



diseases that were previously difficult or impossible to cure.

Cell therapies may use cells collected from the patient (**autologous**), reducing the risk of immune rejection, or from a healthy donor (**allogeneic**), allowing treatments to be prepared in advance for multiple patients. Before administration, cells may be isolated, expanded in culture, genetically modified, or differentiated into specialized cell types to improve their therapeutic function.

One of the most successful examples of cell therapy is **hematopoietic stem cell transplantation**, commonly known as a bone marrow transplant. **Hematopoietic stem cells** (stem cells that give rise to all blood and immune cells) are used to restore blood cell production in patients whose bone marrow has been damaged by leukemia, lymphoma, certain inherited blood disorders, or high-dose chemotherapy. Following transplantation, the stem cells migrate to the bone marrow, where they produce new red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets.

Another groundbreaking application is **CAR-T cell therapy**, a form of personalized cancer treatment. In this therapy, a patient's **T lymphocytes** (immune cells that recognize and destroy infected or abnormal cells) are collected and genetically engineered to produce **chimeric antigen receptors (CARs)** (synthetic receptors that enable T cells to recognize specific proteins on cancer cells). The modified T cells are expanded in the laboratory and infused back into the patient, where they seek out and destroy cancer cells. CAR-T cell therapy has shown remarkable success in treating certain leukemias, lymphomas, and multiple myeloma, particularly in patients who have not responded to conventional treatments.

Researchers are also investigating **mesenchymal stem cells** (adult stem cells that can differentiate into bone, cartilage, fat, and other connective tissues) for repairing damaged tissues and reducing inflammation. These cells are being studied as potential treatments for osteoarthritis, spinal cord injuries, heart disease, autoimmune disorders, and chronic wounds. Although many applications remain experimental, stem cell therapies continue to show promise in regenerative medicine.

Despite their tremendous potential, cell therapies present several challenges. Manufacturing living cells requires specialized facilities, sterile processing techniques, and extensive quality control to ensure cell identity, purity, viability, potency, and safety. Some therapies must be customized for each individual patient, making production time-consuming and expensive. Researchers must also address challenges such as immune rejection, long-term safety, and consistent therapeutic outcomes.

Advances in stem cell biology, gene editing, tissue engineering, and regenerative medicine continue to expand the possibilities of cell therapy. As these technologies mature, cell therapies are expected to play an increasingly important role in treating cancer,

genetic disorders, degenerative diseases, and tissue injuries, offering new treatment options where traditional medicines have limited effectiveness.

Attribution:
"Cell Therapy: Living Medicine" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

This page titled 13.1.4: Cell Therapies is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.2: BIOPHARMACY

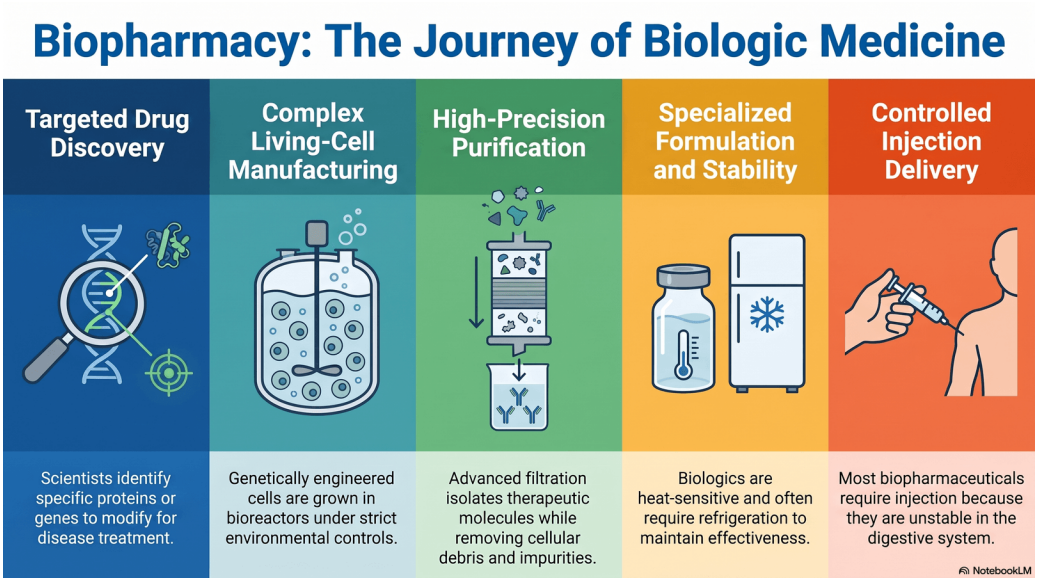
Biopharmacy (the branch of medical biotechnology that focuses on the discovery, development, manufacturing, formulation, quality control, regulation, delivery, and clinical use of biologically derived medicines) encompasses the entire life cycle of a biologic drug. It combines biotechnology, pharmaceutical science, pharmacology, engineering, and regulatory science to ensure that biologic medicines are safe, effective, stable, and consistently produced. While **biopharmaceuticals** are the biologic medicines themselves, biopharmacy is the discipline responsible for bringing these medicines from the research laboratory to the patient.

The biopharmaceutical development process begins with **drug discovery**, where scientists identify the biological cause of a disease and select a target, such as a protein, receptor, or gene, that can be modified to treat the condition. Researchers then design and evaluate potential therapeutic molecules using laboratory experiments and preclinical studies. Promising drug candidates are tested for safety, biological activity, and their ability to produce the desired therapeutic effect before advancing to clinical trials.

Once a candidate has been identified, scientists develop a manufacturing process capable of producing the biologic on a large scale. Because biologic medicines are produced by living cells, manufacturing is considerably more complex than producing traditional pharmaceuticals. Genetically engineered bacteria, yeast, or mammalian cells are grown in large bioreactors under carefully controlled conditions. Temperature, pH, oxygen concentration, nutrient availability, and other environmental factors must be continuously monitored to ensure that the cells produce a consistent, high-quality product.

After production, the biologic undergoes a series of purification steps to remove cells, cellular debris, host proteins, DNA, viruses, and other impurities. Techniques such as filtration, centrifugation, and chromatography are used to isolate the therapeutic molecule while preserving its biological activity. The purified product is then formulated with stabilizing ingredients that maintain its structure and effectiveness during storage and transportation. Because many biologic medicines are proteins, they are sensitive to heat and physical stress and often require refrigeration throughout the distribution process.

Another important aspect of biopharmacy is understanding how these drugs behave in the body. This includes how they are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and eliminated. Many biopharmaceuticals are not stable in the digestive system and must be delivered by injection or infusion. Researchers continue to develop new delivery methods to improve convenience and effectiveness.



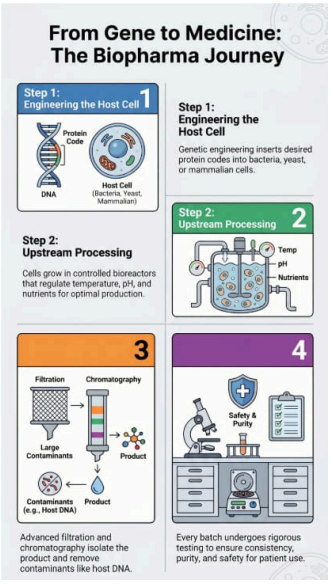
Attribution:
"Biopharmancy: The Journey of Biologic Medicine" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability

This page titled 13.2: Biopharmacy is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals

Biopharmaceuticals are produced through **bioprocessing** (the use of living cells or organisms to produce useful products), a carefully controlled and highly regulated process that transforms genetic information into therapeutic molecules.



The process begins with identifying and isolating a gene that encodes the desired protein. This gene is inserted into a suitable host cell, such as bacteria, yeast, or mammalian cells, using genetic engineering techniques. The choice of host cell depends on the complexity of the protein. For example, simple proteins may be produced in bacteria, while more complex proteins that require specific folding or modifications are often produced in mammalian cells.

Once the engineered cells are created, they are used to establish a production system. This stage is known as upstream processing, where cells are grown and expanded in controlled environments such as bioreactors. These systems regulate key conditions including temperature, pH, oxygen levels, and nutrient supply to optimize cell growth and protein production.

As the cells grow, they synthesize the target biopharmaceutical, which may accumulate in the cell or be secreted into the surrounding medium. After sufficient production is achieved, the process moves to downstream processing, where the product is isolated and purified.

Purification involves multiple steps designed to remove impurities such as host cell proteins, DNA, and other contaminants. Techniques such as filtration, centrifugation, and chromatography are commonly used to achieve high purity. This stage is critical because even small impurities can affect the safety and effectiveness of the final product.

Because biopharmaceuticals are often large and structurally complex molecules, they are highly sensitive to environmental conditions. Factors such as temperature changes, pH shifts, or mechanical stress can alter their structure and reduce their activity. As a result, strict process control is required throughout production.

Quality assurance is a central component of biopharmaceutical manufacturing. Each batch must be tested to ensure consistency, purity, potency, and safety. Regulatory agencies require compliance with **Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP)** (guidelines that ensure products are consistently produced and controlled according to quality standards).

In addition, modern production systems incorporate automation and real-time monitoring technologies to maintain precise control over the process. These systems improve efficiency and reduce variability between batches.

Overall, the production of biopharmaceuticals is a complex, multi-step process that combines genetic engineering, cell culture, and purification technologies. Careful control and rigorous quality standards ensure that these advanced medicines are safe, effective, and reliable for patient use.

Attribution:

"From Gene To Medicine" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

This page titled 13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability

Drug Delivery and Stability

One of the major challenges in biopharmacy is delivering biological drugs effectively to the correct location in the body while maintaining their activity. Many biopharmaceuticals are proteins or nucleic acids, which are large and structurally complex molecules. These molecules are easily broken down by enzymes in the digestive system, making oral delivery difficult. As a result, many biologic drugs are administered through injection, infusion, or other non-oral routes.

Once inside the body, biopharmaceuticals must reach their target without being degraded or cleared too quickly. This requires careful design of delivery systems. One important strategy involves the use of **nanoparticles** (extremely small particles designed to carry and protect drugs within the body) and **liposomes** (spherical vesicles made of lipid bilayers that can encapsulate drugs for targeted delivery). These systems protect the drug from degradation and can be engineered to deliver the drug to specific tissues or cells.

Targeted delivery improves treatment effectiveness by concentrating the drug at the site of action while minimizing exposure to healthy tissues. This can reduce side effects and increase therapeutic efficiency. Some delivery systems are also designed for controlled release, allowing the drug to be released gradually over time rather than all at once.

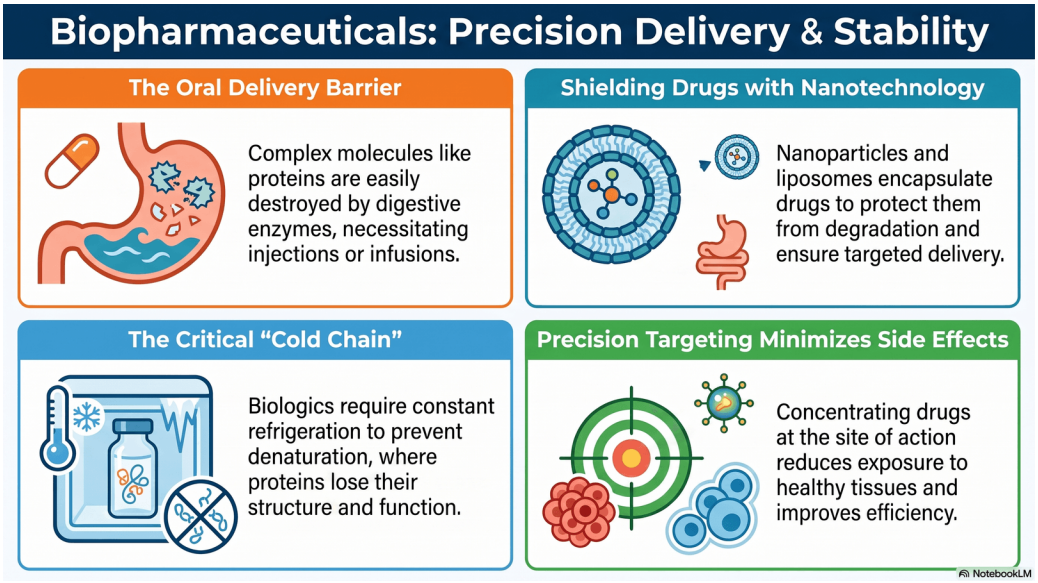
Stability is another critical factor in biopharmacy. Biopharmaceuticals are sensitive to environmental conditions such as temperature, pH, and mechanical stress. Changes in these conditions can lead to **denaturation** (the loss of a protein's three-dimensional structure, resulting in loss of function). Because of this, many biologic drugs must be stored under controlled conditions, often requiring refrigeration. Maintaining stability during storage and transport is known as the cold chain, a system that ensures products remain within a specific temperature range from production to administration. Breaks in the cold chain can compromise the effectiveness of the drug.

In addition to temperature control, formulation strategies are used to improve stability. These may include adding stabilizing agents, optimizing pH, or freeze-drying the product to extend shelf life.

Advances in drug delivery and stabilization technologies are helping overcome many of these challenges. New approaches aim to improve patient convenience, such as developing formulations that can be administered less frequently or through alternative routes.

Biopharmacy has a wide range of applications in modern medicine, particularly in the treatment of complex and chronic diseases. Unlike traditional drugs, biopharmaceuticals are designed to interact with specific biological targets, allowing for more precise and effective therapies.

Therapeutic proteins are one of the most established applications. For example, insulin is used to treat diabetes by replacing a hormone that the body cannot produce in sufficient amounts. Other therapeutic proteins include growth factors, clotting factors, and enzymes used to treat metabolic disorders. These treatments are essential for managing chronic conditions and improving quality of life.



Attribution:
"Biopharmaceuticals: Precision Delivery &Stability" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

This page titled 13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.3: Pharmacogenomics

Pharmacogenomics is an emerging field at the intersection of biotechnology, genetics, and medicine that focuses on how an individual's genetic makeup influences their response to drugs. By understanding genetic variation, healthcare providers can select medications and dosages that are more effective and less likely to cause adverse side effects. This approach represents a major step toward more precise and personalized healthcare. Each person carries small genetic differences that can affect how their body processes medications. These differences can determine whether a drug is effective, ineffective, or even harmful. For example, variations in genes that encode drug-metabolizing enzymes can cause some individuals to process drugs too quickly, reducing effectiveness, or too slowly, increasing the risk of toxicity.

Genetic variation is a key factor in pharmacogenomics. One of the most common types of variation is single nucleotide polymorphism, or SNP, a change of a single DNA base at a precise genomic position. SNPs can influence how strongly a gene is expressed, how well an enzyme functions, how a drug interacts with its target, effectiveness of transport proteins, or metabolic pathways. In practice, these variations often affect enzymes that metabolize drugs, drug targets that mediate a drug's effect, and transport proteins that control the movement of drugs into and out of cells. Because of these effects, individuals carrying different SNPs may process drugs at different speeds, respond to the same dose in distinct ways, or experience varying risks of adverse effects.

In the clinic, these genetic differences help explain why the same drug can have markedly different results in people. They also open the door to precision medicine, where genetic information can guide the choice of therapy and dosing to maximize benefit and minimize harm. However, translating genotype to phenotype is complex: multiple SNPs can interact, factors such as age, liver function, other medications, and disease states can modulate genetic effects. Not all variants have well-established clinical implications. As sequencing becomes more accessible and integrated into healthcare, pharmacogenomics holds the promise of predicting who will benefit from a drug, who may be at risk for adverse reactions, and how best to tailor treatment to the individual.

Drug Metabolism and Enzymes

Drug metabolism is largely carried out by enzymes in the liver, particularly those in the cytochrome P450 family. These enzymes chemically modify drugs so they can be eliminated from the body. Genetic differences in these enzymes can significantly alter drug metabolism. For example, variations in the CYP2D6 gene can affect how patients respond to certain antidepressants and pain medications. This highlights the importance of understanding genetic profiles when prescribing medications, as incorrect dosing can lead to ineffective treatment or harmful side effects.

Applications of Pharmacogenomics

Pharmacogenomics has a wide range of applications in modern medicine. One of the most important is in cancer treatment. Certain cancer therapies are designed to target specific genetic mutations in tumors. By analyzing a patient's genetic profile, doctors can select treatments that are more likely to be effective. Pharmacogenomics is also used to guide the use of common medications, such as blood thinners, antidepressants, and pain relievers. Genetic testing can help determine the safest and most effective dosage for each individual. In addition, pharmacogenomics plays a role in reducing adverse drug reactions, which are a significant cause of hospitalizations. By identifying genetic risk factors, healthcare providers can avoid prescribing drugs that may cause harm.

Despite its potential, pharmacogenomics faces several challenges. One limitation is the complexity of genetic influences on drug response. Many traits are affected by multiple genes as well as environmental factors such as diet, age, and overall health. There are also challenges related to cost, accessibility, and the integration of genetic testing into routine clinical practice. Ethical considerations, including genetic privacy and data security, must also be addressed.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"Pharmacogenomics" Osmosis from Elsevier https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6jro2fokOYY Standard YouTube license No changes made

This page titled 13.3: Pharmacogenomics is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.4: Nanomedicine

Nanomedicine is an innovative area of biotechnology that applies nanoscale materials (typically between 1 and 100 nanometers in size) and technologies to diagnose, treat, and prevent disease. By working at the level of molecules and cells, nanomedicine enables highly targeted and efficient medical interventions. This field is rapidly expanding and is expected to play a major role in the future of healthcare. At this scale, materials exhibit unique physical and chemical properties that differ from those at larger sizes. These properties allow nanoparticles to interact with biological systems in precise ways, such as entering cells or binding to specific molecules. Nanomedicine combines principles from biology, chemistry, physics, and engineering to create new tools for healthcare. One of the most important applications of nanomedicine is targeted drug delivery. Nanoparticles can be engineered to carry drugs directly to specific cells or tissues, reducing side effects and improving treatment effectiveness. These nanoparticles can be designed to recognize specific markers on diseased cells, such as cancer cells. Once they reach their target, they release the drug in a controlled manner. This targeted approach is especially useful in cancer therapy, where traditional treatments often damage healthy cells. Nanoparticles can concentrate the drug at the tumor site, minimizing harm to surrounding tissue.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Several types of nanomaterials are used in medical applications:

- **Liposomes (spherical vesicles made of lipid bilayers used to deliver drugs)** are commonly used to transport medications in the body.
- **Polymeric nanoparticles** are made from biodegradable materials and can be designed for controlled drug release.
- **Gold nanoparticles** are used in imaging and diagnostics due to their unique optical properties.
- **Quantum dots** are fluorescent nanoparticles used in imaging and tracking biological processes.

Each type of nanomaterial has specific properties that make it suitable for different applications.

Nanomedicine in Diagnostics

Nanomedicine is expanding disease detection by bringing sensing capabilities to the nanoscale, enabling the identification of diseases at their earliest stages. Nanoscale sensors can pick up minute amounts of biomarkers—proteins, nucleic acids, or metabolites—in blood, urine, or interstitial fluid, translating these signals into diagnostic insights long before symptoms arise. In imaging, nanoparticles serve as tailored contrast agents that concentrate in specific tissues or cells and enhance signals in modalities like MRI, CT, photoacoustic imaging, or optical techniques. By pairing these contrast enhancements with molecular targeting, clinicians can visualize not just where a disease is, but what its molecular features look like, improving accuracy and guiding treatment decisions. Nanoparticles such as gold or iron oxide cores, sometimes linked to targeting molecules, can highlight tumor margins, detect inflammatory sites, or illuminate distinct cellular environments. Advanced approaches also employ quantum dots or surface-enhanced Raman scattering nanoparticles to report on multiple biomarkers simultaneously, offering a richer molecular picture to inform biopsy choices and therapeutic planning. Despite its promise, nanomedicine faces several challenges. These include ensuring the safety and biocompatibility of nanoparticles, understanding how they interact with the body, and developing standardized regulatory frameworks. Researchers are also working to improve targeting accuracy and control over drug release. Future developments may include nanoscale devices capable of performing complex tasks inside the body, such as repairing tissues or delivering therapies in response to real-time signals.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

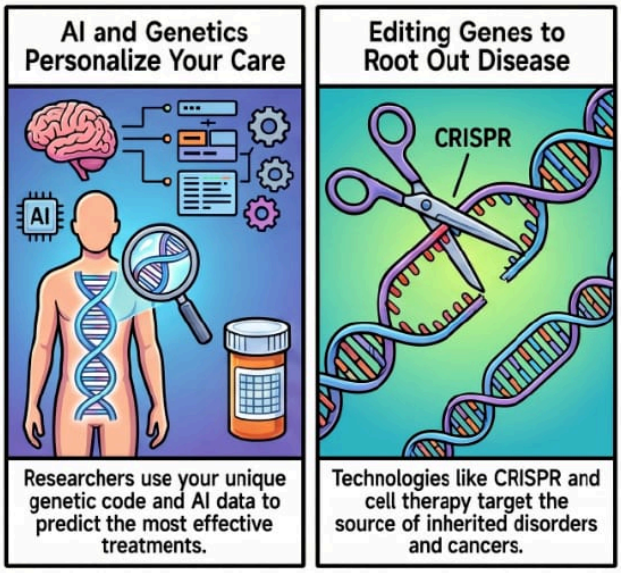
View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"How Nanotechnology is Revolutionizing Science" Tech Horizon https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Re4vQ4TQNMs YouTube Standard License. No changes made
"The Medical Breakthrough Nobody Saw Coming" Undecided with Matt Ferrell https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_myz8gWwf3E Standard YouTube License No changes made

This page titled 13.4: Nanomedicine is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

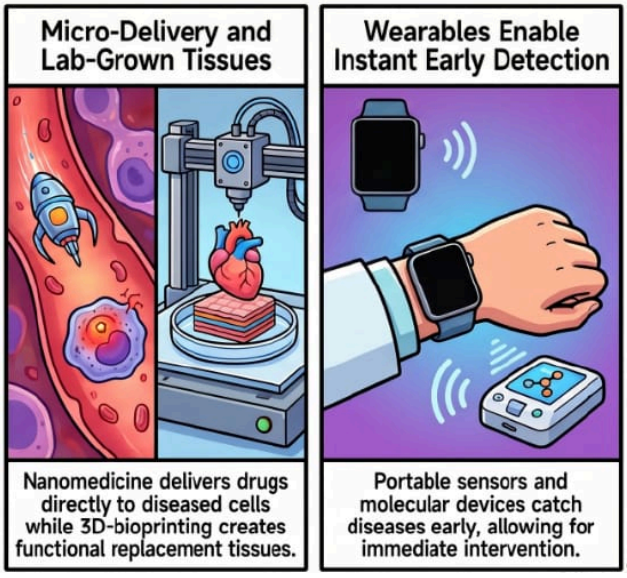
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology

Medical biotechnology is advancing rapidly, transforming how diseases are prevented, diagnosed, and treated. As scientists gain a deeper understanding of human biology, future therapies are expected to become more personalized, precise, and effective. Many emerging technologies aim to treat the underlying causes of disease rather than simply managing symptoms, offering the potential for longer-lasting and even curative treatments.



One of the most promising areas is precision medicine, which uses a patient's genetic information, lifestyle, and environment to guide healthcare decisions. Advances in artificial intelligence are also helping researchers analyze large medical datasets, identify disease patterns, discover new drug candidates, and predict which treatments are most likely to benefit individual patients.

Gene-editing technologies such as CRISPR continue to expand the possibilities for treating inherited disorders, certain cancers, and rare genetic diseases. Researchers are also developing next-generation cell therapies that use engineered immune cells to target cancer more effectively and regenerative medicine approaches that stimulate the body to repair damaged tissues and organs.

Nanomedicine is expected to improve targeted drug delivery by transporting medications directly to diseased cells while minimizing dama 

ge to healthy tissues. At the same time, advances in biomaterials and three-dimensional bioprinting are moving scientists closer to producing functional tissues that may one day

help address the shortage of donor organs.

Diagnostic technologies are also becoming faster and more accurate. Portable molecular testing devices, wearable biosensors, and continuous health monitoring systems are allowing diseases to be detected earlier and patients to receive more personalized care. These technologies support earlier intervention and may improve long-term health outcomes.

The future of medical biotechnology will rely on collaboration among molecular biologists, biomedical engineers, physicians, data scientists, and regulatory specialists. As new therapies become available, careful attention to safety, ethics, equitable access, and regulatory oversight will remain essential. Together, these innovations have the potential to improve the quality of life for millions of people while reshaping the future of healthcare.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
Images AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**
"The Field of Medical Biotechnology" BioTech Whisperer https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-mXH4U29Hs Standard YouTube License. No changes made

This page titled 13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology

Cell Therapy Manufacturing Technician

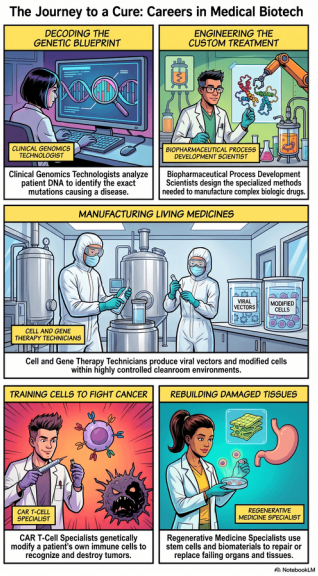
Cell therapy manufacturing technicians produce living cell-based therapies that are used to treat diseases such as leukemia, lymphoma, multiple myeloma, and certain inherited immune disorders. They work in highly controlled clean room environments where sterility is essential because the final product is made from living human cells. Daily responsibilities include isolating cells from patient or donor samples, culturing and expanding cell populations, monitoring cell health, preparing growth media, operating bioreactors, collecting samples for quality testing, and documenting every step of the manufacturing process. They also follow strict Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP) to ensure that each therapy is safe and effective. Examples of products include CAR T-cell therapies that treat blood cancers and stem cell therapies used to rebuild damaged bone marrow after chemotherapy.

Gene Therapy Manufacturing Technician

Gene therapy manufacturing technicians produce the biological materials needed to deliver therapeutic genes into a patient's cells. Much of their work involves growing mammalian cell cultures that produce viral vectors, such as adeno-associated viruses (AAV) or lentiviruses, which serve as delivery vehicles for therapeutic DNA. They prepare sterile media, monitor cell growth, harvest viral vectors, perform purification procedures, and conduct quality testing to verify purity, concentration, and safety. Gene therapies produced by these teams are used to treat inherited disorders such as spinal muscular atrophy, hemophilia, and certain forms of inherited blindness.

CAR T-Cell Manufacturing Specialist

CAR T-cell manufacturing specialists create personalized cancer treatments by genetically modifying a patient's own T cells to recognize and destroy cancer cells. Each therapy is manufactured specifically for an individual patient. These specialists isolate



immune cells from blood samples, genetically engineer the cells using viral vectors, expand the modified cells in culture, perform quality control testing, and prepare the final product for infusion back into the patient. Their work has dramatically improved treatment options for patients with leukemia, lymphoma, and multiple myeloma that no longer respond to conventional therapies.

Clinical Genomics Technologist

Clinical genomics technologists analyze patient DNA to identify genetic changes associated with inherited diseases, cancer, and rare disorders. They perform DNA extraction, next-generation sequencing, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), and bioinformatics

analysis to identify mutations that may influence diagnosis or treatment decisions. Their findings help physicians diagnose conditions such as cystic fibrosis, Duchenne muscular dystrophy, hereditary breast cancer, and rare metabolic disorders. They also contribute to precision medicine by identifying genetic variants that predict how a patient may respond to certain medications.

Companion Diagnostics Scientist

Companion diagnostics scientists develop laboratory tests that identify which patients are most likely to benefit from specific therapies. They work closely with pharmaceutical companies during drug development to design diagnostic assays that detect biomarkers associated with treatment response. Daily activities include validating molecular assays, analyzing patient samples, interpreting biomarker data, and collaborating with clinicians and regulatory teams. For example, a companion diagnostic may detect mutations in the EGFR or HER2 genes to determine whether a patient is likely to benefit from a targeted cancer therapy.

Regenerative Medicine Scientist

Regenerative medicine scientists develop therapies that repair, replace, or regenerate damaged tissues and organs. They study stem cells, tissue engineering, biomaterials, and growth factors to restore normal tissue function after injury or disease. Their research may involve culturing stem cells, designing tissue scaffolds, evaluating biomaterials, and testing engineered tissues in laboratory models. Current applications include engineered skin for burn patients, cartilage replacement for joint injuries, laboratory-grown corneas, and experimental tissues designed to repair damaged heart muscle following a heart attack.

Immunotherapy Scientist

Immunotherapy scientists develop treatments that harness the body's immune system to fight disease. They investigate monoclonal antibodies, therapeutic cancer vaccines, immune checkpoint inhibitors, engineered immune cells, and cytokine therapies. Their daily work includes designing experiments, culturing immune cells, testing antibody function, analyzing immune responses, and evaluating new therapeutic targets. Examples include developing monoclonal antibodies that block cancer cell growth, checkpoint inhibitor therapies for melanoma, and therapeutic vaccines designed to stimulate immune responses against cancer.

Pharmacogenomics Scientist

Pharmacogenomics scientists study how genetic variation affects a person's response to medications. Their research helps physicians select drugs that are both safer and more effective for individual patients. They analyze genomic data, identify genetic biomarkers associated with drug metabolism, evaluate clinical studies, and collaborate with physicians and pharmaceutical companies to develop personalized treatment guidelines. For example, pharmacogenomic testing can help determine the correct dose of the blood thinner warfarin, predict whether a patient will respond to certain antidepressants, or identify cancer patients who are likely to benefit from targeted therapies while avoiding unnecessary side effects.

These careers represent some of the most rapidly advancing areas of biotechnology. As personalized medicine, gene editing, regenerative medicine, and cell-based therapies continue to expand, professionals in these fields will play an increasingly important role in developing the next generation of life-saving medical treatments.

Attributions:
"The Journey to a Cure" AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**

This page titled 13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

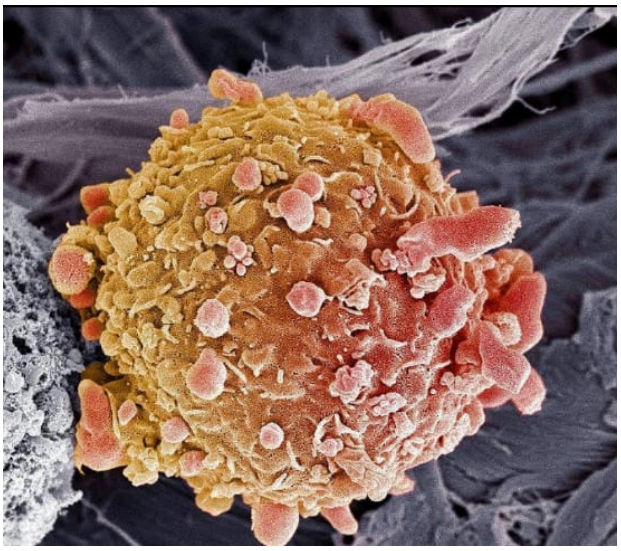
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action



Stéphane Bancel



Sterile Biomanufacturing Facility at Moderna



Melanoma cells viewed under a microscope

For decades, cancer treatments such as chemotherapy and radiation have targeted both cancer cells and healthy cells, often causing significant side effects. Scientists have long hoped to develop treatments that could teach a patient's own immune system to recognize and destroy cancer cells while leaving healthy tissue unharmed.

At Moderna, teams of molecular biologists, bioinformaticians, immunologists, laboratory technicians, and biomanufacturing specialists are making that vision a reality. Under the leadership of CEO Stéphane Bancel and in collaboration with reserevisearchers at Merck, employees developed a personalized mRNA cancer vaccine called mRNA-4157 (V940). Unlike traditional vaccines that prevent infectious diseases, this vaccine is created specifically for each individual patient. After a tumor is surgically removed, scientists sequence its DNA to identify unique mutations found only in that person's cancer. Powerful computer algorithms then select the mutations most likely to trigger an immune response, and laboratory teams manufacture a custom mRNA vaccine designed specifically for that patient.

The personalized vaccine is administered together with the immunotherapy drug Keytruda®. Once inside the body, the mRNA instructs cells to temporarily produce proteins that resemble the patient's tumor-specific mutations. This trains the immune system to recognize and attack any remaining cancer cells that may have been left behind after surgery. In a Phase 2 clinical trial

involving patients with advanced melanoma, the combination therapy reduced the risk of cancer recurrence or death by nearly 50% compared with immunotherapy alone. The promising results have led to ongoing Phase 3 clinical trials involving patients with melanoma and several other types of cancer.

Developing a personalized cancer vaccine requires collaboration across many areas of medical biotechnology. Bioinformaticians analyze genomic data, molecular biologists design the mRNA sequence, laboratory scientists perform quality testing, manufacturing technicians produce each individualized vaccine under sterile conditions, and clinical research teams evaluate safety and effectiveness in patients. Each patient's vaccine is unique, making precision, speed, and teamwork essential throughout the manufacturing process.

This breakthrough demonstrates how medical biotechnology is transforming cancer treatment through personalized medicine. Instead of creating one medicine for everyone, scientists are developing therapies tailored to each patient's unique genetic profile. As advances in genomics, artificial intelligence, and mRNA technology continue, personalized treatments like these may become a routine part of healthcare, offering new hope for patients with cancer and many other diseases.

Attributions:
Stéphane Bancel Sterile In*vestment Reports* *https://www.investmentreports.co/int...ne-bancel-1141*
"*B*iomanufacturing Facility at Moderna" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"Melanoma Cells Viewed Under a Microscope" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14: ENVIRONMENTAL BIOTECHNOLOGY

Environmental and agricultural biotechnology uses living organisms, biological systems, and biological processes to protect environmental quality and support sustainable resource use. It combines microbiology, molecular biology, ecology, chemistry, and engineering to address issues such as wastewater treatment, solid waste management, nutrient pollution, renewable energy production, greenhouse gas reduction, and environmental monitoring. Microorganisms are especially important because bacteria, archaea, fungi, and algae carry out many natural chemical transformations in water, soil, air, and engineered treatment systems.

14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy

14.2: Biofuels

14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology

14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology

14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action

This page titled 14: Environmental Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy

A central idea in environmental biotechnology is that waste can often be treated as a valuable resource rather than simply something to dispose of. Sewage, food waste, agricultural residues, industrial effluents, and other waste materials frequently contain organic matter, nutrients, and stored chemical energy that can be recovered and reused. If released into the environment without proper treatment, these materials can contaminate soil and water, contribute to greenhouse gas emissions, deplete oxygen in aquatic ecosystems, and threaten both environmental and human health.

Environmental biotechnology uses microorganisms, enzymes, and biological processes to convert these waste materials into useful products. During wastewater treatment, microorganisms break down organic matter while removing excess nitrogen and phosphorus that could otherwise cause **harmful algal blooms** (rapid overgrowth of algae or cyanobacteria caused by excess nutrients in water). While some algal blooms are harmless, others are known as **harmful algal blooms (HABs)** because they produce toxins that can kill fish, birds, marine mammals, livestock, and pets, and can cause illness in humans. Even non-toxic blooms can be harmful. As large numbers of algae die, microorganisms decompose them, consuming dissolved oxygen in the water. This process can create **hypoxic** (low-oxygen) conditions or even "dead zones" where fish and other aquatic organisms cannot survive.

Organic wastes can also be processed through anaerobic digestion to produce biogas, a renewable fuel composed primarily of methane, while the remaining material can be used as a nutrient-rich fertilizer. Agricultural residues, food processing byproducts, and industrial organic wastes can be converted into biofuels, biodegradable plastics, industrial enzymes, and other bio-based chemicals.

This approach supports a circular economy by recovering valuable resources that would otherwise be discarded. Instead of viewing waste as an environmental burden, environmental biotechnology transforms it into renewable energy, valuable raw materials, and products that reduce reliance on nonrenewable resources while helping protect ecosystems and improve environmental sustainability.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

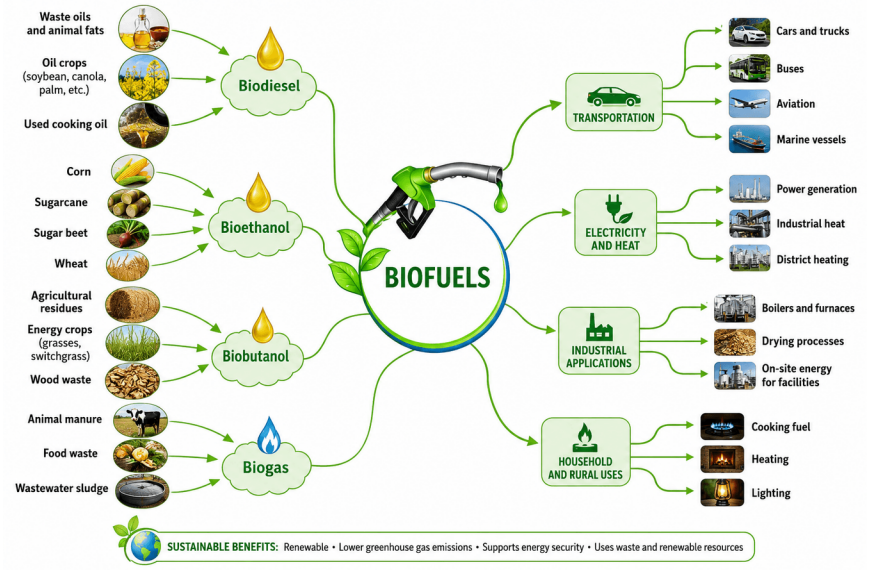
View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"Environmental Biotechnology: Intro, Fundamentals and Genetic Manipulation" Discover Biotech https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y10g6oqJISs standard Youtube license No changes made

This page titled 14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14.2: Biofuels

Bacteria play an increasingly important role in the development of renewable energy sources. Through biotechnology, bacterial systems can be used to convert biological materials into fuels that can replace or supplement fossil fuels. These processes offer more sustainable alternatives and contribute to efforts to reduce greenhouse gas emissions. Biofuels are fuels derived from biological materials such as plant biomass, agricultural waste, or microorganisms. Unlike fossil fuels, which form over millions of years, biofuels can be produced relatively quickly from renewable resources. Bacteria contribute to biofuel production by breaking down complex organic materials and converting them into usable energy products such as ethanol, hydrogen, and other bio-based fuels.



One of the primary ways bacteria produce biofuels is through fermentation. During fermentation, bacteria break down sugars derived from plant material into simpler compounds such as ethanol. This process is widely used in bioethanol production, where biomass such as corn or sugarcane is converted into fuel. Some bacteria are also capable of producing other biofuels, including butanol and organic acids that can be further processed into fuel products. Advances in genetic engineering allow scientists to modify bacterial metabolic pathways to increase yield and efficiency.

Through genetic engineering, scientists can modify bacterial metabolic pathways to produce specific fuel molecules more efficiently. For example, engineered bacteria can be designed to produce higher yields of ethanol or to generate entirely new types of fuels. Some bacteria are also being studied for their ability to produce hydrogen gas, which can be used as a clean energy source. Synthetic biology approaches allow researchers to redesign bacterial systems to optimize fuel production. These innovations are helping to overcome limitations of traditional biofuel production and expand the range of possible energy sources.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Advantages and Challenges

Bacterial biofuel production offers several advantages. It uses renewable resources, reduces dependence on fossil fuels, and

can lower greenhouse gas emissions. The ability to use waste materials further enhances sustainability. However, there are also challenges. Efficiently converting biomass into fuel can be technically complex, and large-scale production requires significant infrastructure. In addition, optimizing bacterial systems for maximum yield remains an area of active research. Despite these challenges, continued advances in biotechnology are improving the feasibility and efficiency of bacterial biofuel production.

Advantages and Challenges of Bacterial Biofuel Production

Advantages	Challenges
Bacteria grow rapidly and reproduce quickly	Large-scale production can be expensive
Can use renewable waste materials as nutrients	Maintaining optimal growth conditions can be difficult
Some bacteria can produce biofuels directly	Biofuel yields may be low
Requires less land than many crop-based biofuels	Contamination can reduce production efficiency
Can be genetically modified to improve production	Genetic modifications may be unstable over time
Helps reduce dependence on fossil fuels	Some processes require high energy input
May reduce greenhouse gas emissions	Harvesting and purification can be costly
Can grow in diverse environments	Scaling laboratory methods to industry is challenging
Supports sustainable biotechnology development	Industrial systems require careful monitoring and regulation
Potential to produce multiple fuel types such as ethanol, butanol, and hydrogen	Some bacterial strains are sensitive to environmental changes

Attributions:
"Biofuels" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"GCSE" Physics - Biofuels - How they Work Pros & Cons" Cognito https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y10g6oqJISs Standard YouTube license No changes made.
"Advantages and challenges of Bacterial feul Production" *AI-generated using ChatGPT. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 14.2: Biofuels is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology

Environmental biotechnology is becoming an increasingly important tool for addressing global challenges such as pollution, climate change, water scarcity, and the loss of biodiversity. Advances in genetics, synthetic biology, artificial intelligence, and environmental monitoring are allowing scientists to develop more effective and sustainable solutions for protecting natural ecosystems while supporting human health and industry.

One promising area is the development of engineered microorganisms that can break down pollutants more efficiently than naturally occurring microbes. Researchers are modifying bacteria and fungi to degrade plastics, petroleum products, pesticides, and toxic industrial chemicals that persist in the environment. For example, scientists are engineering bacteria capable of breaking down polyethylene terephthalate (PET), the plastic commonly used in beverage bottles, while other microorganisms are being developed to clean up oil spills and remove chlorinated solvents from contaminated groundwater.

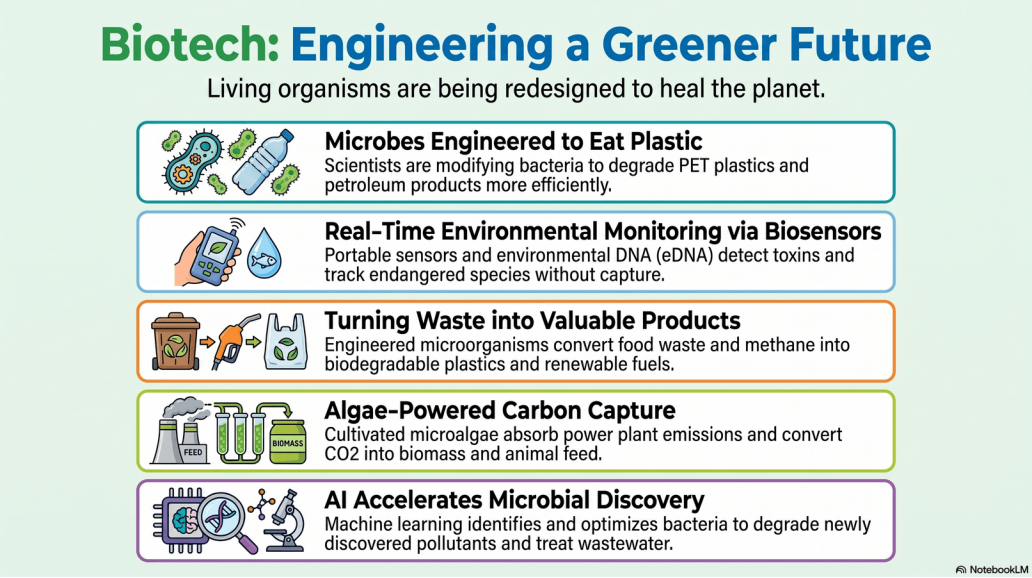
Advances in microbial ecology are also improving bioremediation by enhancing the activity of native microorganisms already present in contaminated environments. Instead of introducing new species, scientists can stimulate existing microbial communities by supplying nutrients or oxygen that encourage the growth of pollutant-degrading microbes. This approach has been used to restore groundwater contaminated with petroleum products and industrial solvents.

Environmental monitoring is becoming faster and more accurate through the use of biosensors, environmental DNA (eDNA), drones, satellites, and artificial intelligence. Portable biosensors can rapidly detect contaminants such as lead, mercury, arsenic, harmful algal toxins, or disease-causing microorganisms in drinking water. Environmental DNA collected from rivers, lakes, or oceans allows scientists to monitor endangered species such as salmon, detect invasive organisms like zebra mussels, or identify aquatic pathogens without capturing the organisms themselves.

Biotechnology is also helping create a circular economy by converting waste into valuable products. Engineered microorganisms can transform agricultural residues, food waste, municipal wastewater, and industrial byproducts into renewable fuels, biodegradable plastics, fertilizers, and specialty chemicals. For example, bacteria are being used to convert methane from landfills into biodegradable plastics, while algae can produce biofuels using nutrients recovered from wastewater.

Another rapidly expanding field is biological carbon capture. Scientists are engineering algae, cyanobacteria, and plants that absorb carbon dioxide more efficiently and convert it into biomass or commercially valuable products. Microalgae are already being cultivated to capture carbon emissions from power plants while producing biofuels, animal feed, nutritional supplements, and industrial chemicals. Researchers are also investigating microorganisms that convert carbon dioxide into ethanol, biodegradable polymers, and other renewable materials.

Artificial intelligence and bioinformatics are expected to accelerate environmental biotechnology by helping scientists analyze complex environmental datasets, predict microbial behavior, and design engineered organisms for specific applications. Machine learning can identify microorganisms capable of degrading newly discovered pollutants or optimize microbial communities used in wastewater treatment and biomanufacturing.



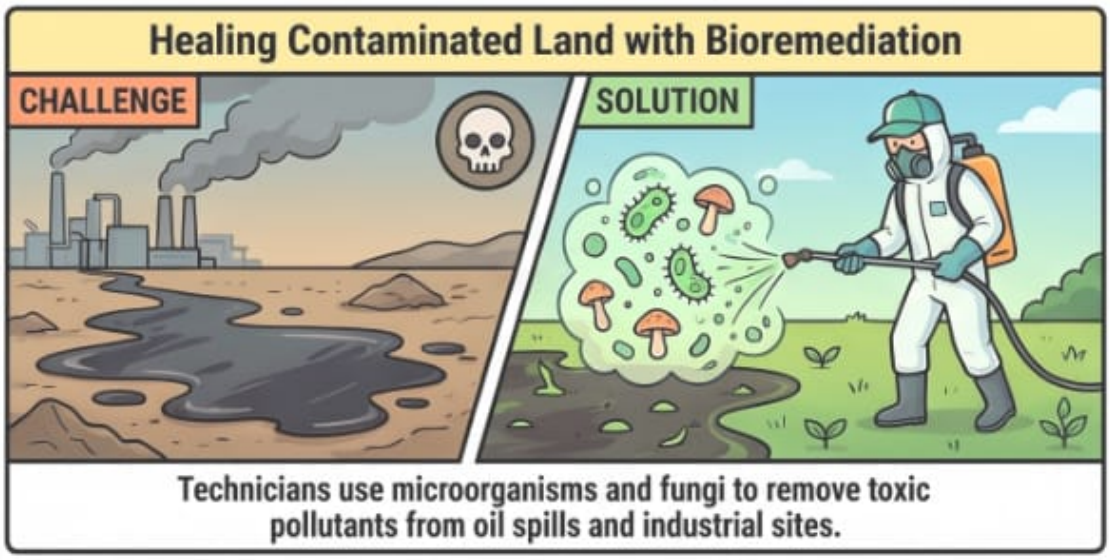
The future of environmental biotechnology will rely on collaboration among microbiologists, environmental engineers, chemists, computer scientists, and policymakers. Innovations such as plastic-degrading bacteria, carbon-capturing algae, AI-assisted pollution monitoring, engineered wetlands that naturally remove contaminants, and sustainable waste-to-energy technologies have the potential to create cleaner water, healthier ecosystems, and more sustainable industries while helping society address the environmental challenges of the future.

Attribution:
"Biotech: Engineering a Greener Future" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology

Environmental biotechnology offers careers focused on protecting natural resources, reducing pollution, developing sustainable technologies, and restoring damaged ecosystems. Professionals in this field work for environmental consulting firms, biotechnology companies, water and wastewater treatment facilities, government agencies, research laboratories, renewable energy companies, and nonprofit conservation organizations. Their work combines biology, chemistry, engine



ering, and environmental science to develop practical solutions for environmental challenges.

Environmental Biotechnology Technician: Environmental biotechnology technicians perform laboratory and field work to monitor environmental quality and evaluate biological solutions to pollution. They collect water, soil, and air samples, culture microorganisms, analyze environmental DNA (eDNA), perform polymerase chain reaction (PCR), and measure chemical contaminants. They may monitor bacterial populations at a groundwater cleanup site, test river water for harmful microorganisms after a flood, or analyze soil samples from a former industrial property.

Bioremediation Technician: Bioremediation technicians use microorganisms, plants, or fungi to remove pollutants from contaminated environments. They monitor microbial growth, measure contaminant levels, collect environmental samples, and evaluate the progress of cleanup projects. These technicians work at former industrial sites, oil spill locations, mining operations, and hazardous waste facilities, tracking bacteria that degrade petroleum or microorganisms that remove toxic solvents from groundwater.

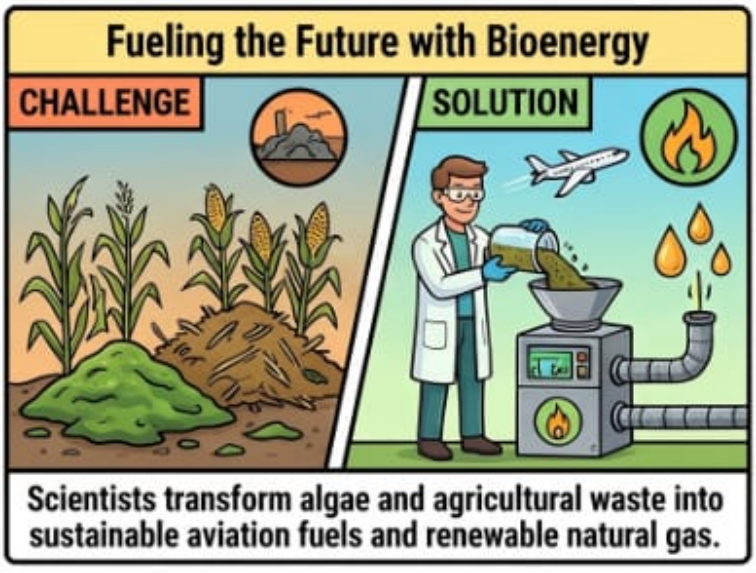
Water Quality Analyst: Water qu



ality analysts ensure that drinking water, wastewater, lakes, rivers, and coastal waters meet environmental safety standards. They perform microbiological and chemical testing, identify contaminants, analyze water samples, and prepare reports for regulatory agencies. Their work includes testing municipal drinking water for coliform bacteria, monitoring nutrient levels that contribute to harmful algal blooms, and evaluating wastewater treatment efficiency before treated water is released into the environment.

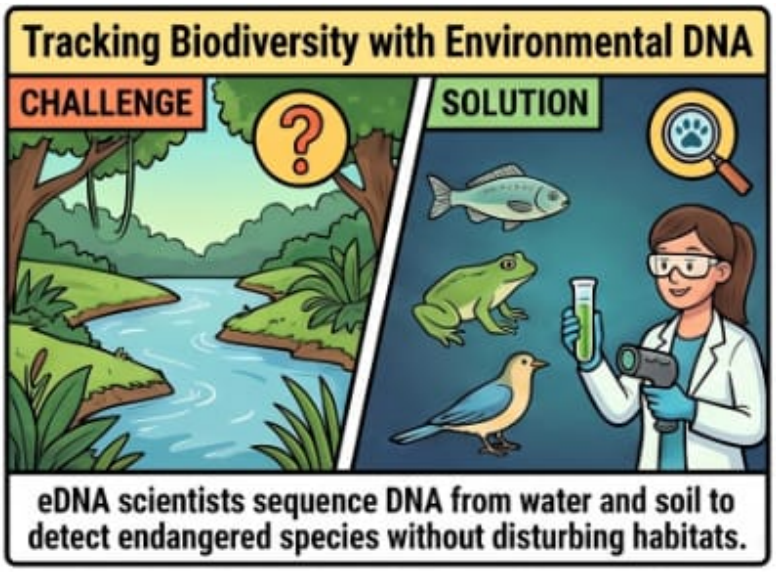
Environmental Microbiologist: Environmental microbiologists study microorganisms that live in soil, water, oceans, and extreme environments. They investigate how microbial communities recycle nutrients, degrade pollutants, and support ecosystem health. Their research may lead to the discovery of bacteria that naturally degrade crude oil, fungi capable of breaking down plastics, or microorganisms that remove heavy metals from contaminated soils.

Wastewater Process Technician: Wastewater process technicians operate biological treatment systems that use micro



organisms to remove organic waste, nutrients, and harmful microorganisms from sewage and industrial wastewater. They monitor microbial activity, adjust treatment conditions, operate laboratory equipment, and ensure treated water meets environmental regulations. Their efforts help protect rivers, lakes, and coastal ecosystems while maintaining safe drinking water supplies.

Algal Biotechnology Specialist: Algal biotechnology specialists grow and study algae for environmental and industrial applications. They cultivate algae in ponds or photobioreactors, monitor growth conditions, harvest biomass, and evaluate products derived from algae. Their projects may involve producing biofuels, capturing carbon dioxide from industrial emissions, removing excess nutrients from wastewater, or manufacturing nutritional supplements such as omega-3 fatty acids.

Environmental DNA (eDNA) Scientist: Environmental DNA scientists use DNA released into the environment to monitor bi 

odiversity without directly observing or capturing organisms. They collect water or soil samples, extract DNA, perform sequencing, and analyze species diversity using bioinformatics tools. This approach allows researchers to detect endangered fish populations, identify invasive species before they become widespread, and monitor wildlife diseases with minimal disturbance to ecosystems.

Bioenergy Research Associate: Bioenergy research associates develop renewable fuels produced from microorganisms, algae, agricultural waste, and other biological materials. They culture microorganisms, optimize fermentation processes, analyze fuel production, and evaluate new feedstocks for biofuel manufacturing. Their research supports the development of ethanol, biodiesel, sustainable aviation fuel, renewable natural gas, and other alternatives to petroleum-based fuels.



Sustainability Scientist: Sustainability scientists develop biological solutions that reduce waste, conserve resources, and improve environmental performance. They evaluate manufacturing processes, develop biodegradable materials, improve recycling technologies, and help organizations reduce their environmental impact. Their work may include converting agricultural waste into biodegradable plastics, developing microbial systems that transform food waste into renewable chemicals, or improving the sustainability of industrial manufacturing.

Environmental biotechnology careers combine laboratory science with environmental stewardship to solve real-world challenges. Whether restoring contaminated ecosystems, protecting drinking water, developing renewable fuels, or monitoring biodiversity using environmental DNA, these professionals help create cleaner, healthier, and more sustainable communities while advancing innovative biological technologies.

Attribution:
Images AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under **CC BY-NC-SA**.

This page titled 14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action





On March 24, 1989, the *Exxon Valdez* oil tanker struck a reef in Prince William Sound, Alaska, releasing approximately 11 million gallons of crude oil into the ocean. The spill contaminated more than 1,000 miles of shoreline, killing hundreds of thousands of seabirds, marine mammals, fish, and other wildlife. Traditional cleanup methods, such as skimming, burning, and washing beaches with high-pressure hot water, removed much of the oil but were unable to eliminate contamination trapped beneath rocks and gravel.

Environmental scientists from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), working with other researchers, developed a biotechnology-based solution using **bioremediation**. Instead of introducing new microorganisms, they stimulated naturally occurring oil-degrading bacteria already living on the beaches. By applying fertilizers that supplied nitrogen and phosphorus, the scientists provided the nutrients the bacteria needed to grow rapidly and consume the hydrocarbons in the spilled oil.

Field studies showed that treated beaches experienced oil degradation rates two to five times faster than untreated areas. The success of these trials led to one of the largest environmental bioremediation projects ever conducted and demonstrated that naturally occurring microorganisms could become powerful partners in environmental cleanup. The techniques developed during the Exxon Valdez response have since influenced oil spill cleanup strategies around the world and continue to guide

environmental biotechnology research today.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"What is Bioremediation? Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Cleanup" The Breathing Environment https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sjfbd-kqW50 Standard YouTube license No changes made.

This page titled 14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15: AGRICULTURAL BIOTECHNOLOGY

Agricultural biotechnology is the branch of biotechnology that uses living organisms, cells, genes, and molecular techniques to improve crops, livestock, and agricultural practices. The field includes the development of genetically modified organisms (GMOs), in which specific genes are inserted into plants to provide beneficial traits such as pest resistance, herbicide tolerance, improved nutrition, or increased yield. One method used to create GMOs is the gene gun, a device that shoots microscopic particles coated with DNA into plant cells so the new genes can become part of the plant's genome. Agricultural biotechnology also includes the production of edible vaccines, where crops such as bananas, potatoes, tomatoes, or rice are genetically engineered to produce vaccine proteins. When consumed, these crops can stimulate an immune response and may provide a low-cost method of delivering vaccines, particularly in developing regions. Overall, agricultural biotechnology helps increase food production, improve resistance to pests, diseases, and environmental stresses, enhance nutritional value, reduce the use of chemical pesticides, and support more sustainable farming practices while contributing to global food security.

15.1: Fermentation

15.2: Nutritional Enhancement

15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety

15.4: Gene Guns

15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods

15.6: Antisense Technology

15.7: Genetic Pesticides

15.8: Edible Vaccines

15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology

15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology

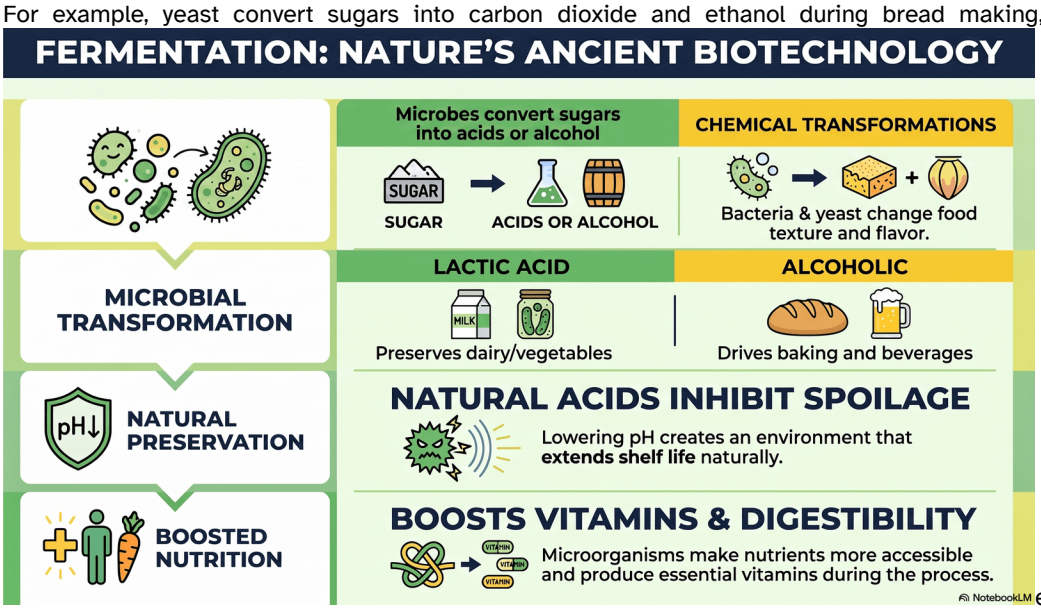
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action

This page titled 15: Agricultural Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.1: Fermentation

One of the oldest and most important forms of food biotechnology is fermentation. Fermentation has been used for thousands of years across cultures to preserve food and enhance its sensory and nutritional qualities. During fermentation, microorganisms convert sugars into other compounds such as acids, gases, or alcohols through metabolic processes.

At the core of fermentation are microorganisms (such as bacteria and yeast) that carry out these chemical transformations. For example, yeast convert sugars into carbon dioxide and ethanol during bread making, causing dough to rise and develop texture. In contrast, certain bacteria produce lactic acid, which is responsible for the tangy flavor and preservation of foods like yogurt, cheese, and fermented vegetables. Different types of fermentation are classified based on the end products formed. **Lactic acid fermentation (a process in which sugars are converted into lactic acid)** is common in dairy and vegetable products, while **alcoholic fermentation (a process in which sugars are converted into ethanol and carbon dioxide)** is used in baking and beverage production.



Fermentation offers several important advantages. It enhances flavor and aroma by producing complex compounds that contribute to the sensory characteristics of food. It also improves texture, such as the soft structure of bread or the creaminess of yogurt addition, fermentation extends shelf life by creating conditions that inhibit the growth of harmful microorganisms. The production of acids or alcohol lowers the pH or alters the environment, making it less suitable for spoilage organisms.

Fermentation can also improve nutritional value. In some cases, microorganisms produce vitamins or break down compounds that are difficult to digest, making nutrients more accessible. This is particularly important in foods such as fermented dairy products and vegetables.

Although fermentation is an ancient practice, it remains highly relevant in modern biotechnology. Industrial fermentation processes are now carefully controlled to ensure consistency, safety, and efficiency. These processes build on traditional knowledge while incorporating advances in microbiology and engineering.

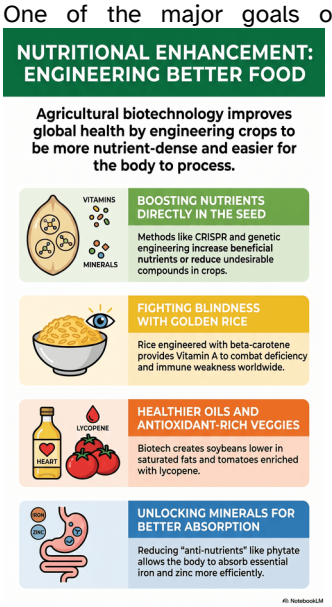
Overall, fermentation demonstrates how naturally occurring biological processes can be harnessed to transform raw ingredients into safe, nutritious, and desirable food products.

Attribution:
"Fermentation: Nature's Ancient Biotechnology" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 15.1: Fermentation is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.2: Nutritional Enhancement

One of the major goals of agricultural biotechnology is to improve the nutritional value of crops. This process, known as nutritional enhancement, uses biotechnology to increase beneficial nutrients, reduce undesirable compounds, or improve the availability of nutrients that are already present in food. Nutritionally enhanced crops can help address vitamin and mineral deficiencies, improve public health, and provide more nutritious foods without changing eating habits.



Scientists enhance the nutritional content of crops by identifying genes involved in nutrient production and then modifying or introducing those genes through genetic engineering or gene editing. In some cases, genes from another organism are added to increase the production of a nutrient. In other cases, CRISPR-Cas9 is used to activate, deactivate, or modify a plant's own genes to improve nutrient levels without introducing foreign DNA. Conventional breeding assisted by molecular markers can also be used to combine naturally occurring traits that improve nutritional quality.

One of the best-known examples is Golden Rice, which was engineered to produce beta-carotene, the precursor to vitamin A, in the rice grain. Vitamin A deficiency affects millions of people worldwide and can lead to blindness and weakened immune function. By introducing genes involved in the beta-carotene biosynthetic pathway, scientists developed rice that produces this important nutrient in the edible portion of the grain.

Other examples of nutritional enhancement include soybeans with healthier fatty acid profiles that produce oils lower in saturated fats and free of trans fats, potatoes with increased levels of antioxidants, tomatoes enriched with lycopene, and cassava varieties engineered to contain higher amounts of iron, zinc, and vitamin A. Researchers have also developed crops with increased protein content, elevated folate levels, and improved amino acid composition to better meet human nutritional needs.

Biotechnology can also reduce naturally occurring compounds that interfere with nutrient absorption. For example, scientists have developed crop varieties with lower levels of phytate, a compound that binds minerals such as iron and zinc and reduces their absorption by the body. Lower-phytate grains improve the bioavailability of these essential nutrients, allowing the body to absorb them more efficiently.

Nutritional enhancement continues to evolve as advances in genomics, gene editing, and synthetic biology provide scientists with more precise ways to improve crop quality. These technologies are helping develop foods that not only produce higher yields but also contribute to better nutrition, improved health, and greater food security for a growing global population.

Attribution:
"Nutritional Enhancement: Engineering Better Food" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 15.2: Nutritional Enhancement is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety

Modern food production relies on advanced scientific tools to ensure that food products are safe to consume and consistently meet high quality standards. As food production and distribution become increasingly global, foods often travel thousands of miles before reaching consumers. This complex supply chain creates more opportunities for contamination, spoilage, food fraud, and labeling errors. Molecular technologies help detect hazards quickly, monitor production processes, and verify the identity and quality of food products from farm to table.

One of the most important applications is molecular detection. Techniques such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) allow scientists to identify harmful microorganisms by detecting their DNA. Unlike traditional culture methods, which may require several days to grow microorganisms before they can be identified, PCR can often provide results within hours. This rapid detection allows food manufacturers to identify contamination early, preventing contaminated products from reaching consumers. PCR is routinely used to detect foodborne pathogens such as *Salmonella*, *Escherichia coli* O157, *Listeria monocytogenes*, and *Campylobacter*, all of which can cause serious illness. PCR can also identify viruses such as norovirus and hepatitis A that may contaminate fresh produce or shellfish.

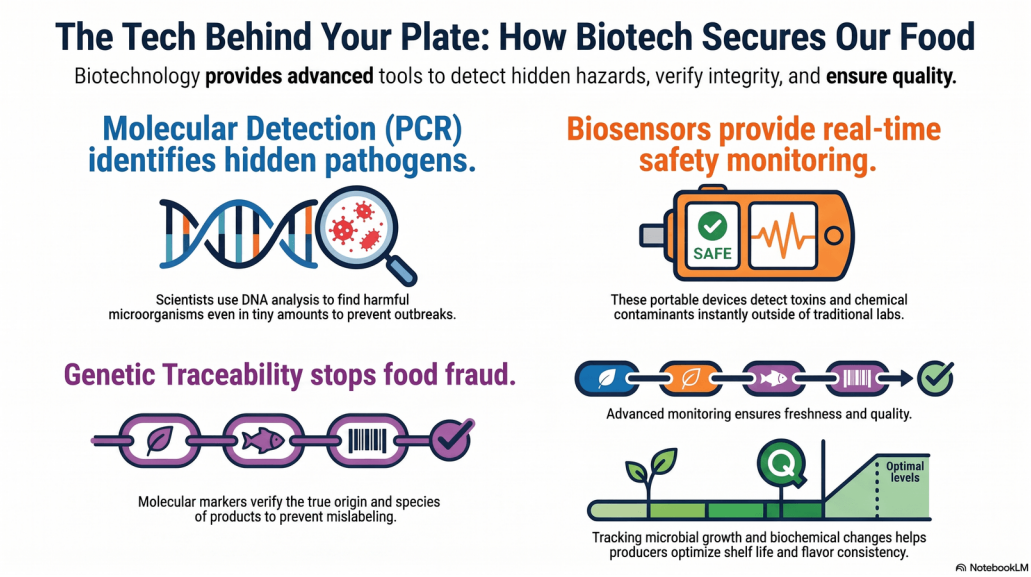
Another important tool is the biosensor (a device that uses biological molecules to detect specific substances), which provides rapid, sensitive detection of contaminants. Biosensors contain biological recognition molecules such as antibodies, enzymes, or nucleic acids that bind to a specific target. When the target is detected, the device produces a measurable signal, allowing food processors to quickly identify contamination. Biosensors are increasingly used to detect bacterial toxins, pesticides, heavy metals, allergens, antibiotic residues, and environmental contaminants. For example, they can rapidly detect peanut proteins in processed foods to help prevent accidental allergen exposure or identify aflatoxins produced by molds that contaminate grains and nuts. Because many biosensors are portable, they can be used directly in food processing facilities, warehouses, or distribution centers without requiring a fully equipped laboratory.

Molecular testing also helps manufacturers monitor production processes and maintain product quality. In fermented foods such as yogurt, cheese, kefir, kimchi, sauerkraut, soy sauce, and sourdough bread, scientists monitor beneficial microorganisms to ensure they remain healthy and active throughout production. At the same time, testing confirms that harmful microorganisms are absent. Maintaining the proper balance of microbial populations helps produce consistent flavor, texture, aroma, nutritional value, and shelf life from one batch to the next.

Another important application is traceability (the ability to track a product through all stages of production, processing, and distribution). DNA-based identification methods and molecular markers allow producers and regulatory agencies to verify the identity and origin of food products. This helps detect food fraud, substitution, and mislabeling while improving consumer confidence. For example, DNA barcoding can distinguish between closely related fish species, preventing inexpensive fish from being sold as premium seafood. Similar methods verify the authenticity of meat products, identify plant varieties used in specialty foods, and confirm the geographic origin of products such as olive oil, coffee, rice, and wine.

Quality control also depends on monitoring spoilage and product freshness. As foods age, microorganisms multiply and produce metabolic by-products that alter taste, odor, texture, and appearance. Molecular testing allows producers to monitor microbial growth before visible spoilage occurs, helping determine shelf life and optimize storage conditions. Some manufacturers also use biosensors to detect gases or other compounds released during spoilage, allowing products to be removed before they become unsafe.

Together, these technologies help manufacturers identify potential problems early, reduce waste, improve efficiency, and ensure that consumers receive food that is safe, authentic, and consistently high in quality. As food systems continue to evolve, these tools will remain essential for protecting public health and maintaining confidence in the global food supply.



Attribution:
"The Tech Behind Your Plate: HowBiotech Secures Our Food" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.

This page titled 15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.4: Gene Guns

Gene guns (also known as microprojectile bombardment or biolistics) are a method used in plant biotechnology to introduce foreign DNA directly into plant cells. This technique involves propelling extremely small metal particles, usually gold or tungsten, that are coated with DNA into embryonic plant cells or actively dividing tissues. The particles are accelerated at high speed so they can penetrate the plant cell wall and membrane, allowing the DNA to enter the cell.

Once inside the cell, the DNA may be delivered to either the nucleus or the chloroplast, depending on the experimental goal. When the DNA reaches the nucleus, it can integrate into the plant's nuclear genome and be passed on as the cell divides. When targeted to the chloroplast, the introduced genes can be expressed at high levels and are less likely to spread through pollen, since chloroplast DNA is typically inherited maternally in most plants.

To identify which cells have successfully taken up and incorporated the new genetic material, scientists include marker genes—genes that produce an easily detectable trait. A common marker used in gene gun experiments is antibiotic resistance, which allows transformed cells to survive in the presence of a specific antibiotic. After transformation, plant cells are grown on media containing the antibiotic, and only the genetically transformed cells survive and continue to grow.

Gene gun technology is especially useful for plant species that are resistant to *Agrobacterium*-mediated gene transfer. Many important crops, including several cereal grains, do not respond well to bacterial infection, making gene guns an effective alternative for introducing new traits. For example, gene guns have been used to introduce genes for insect resistance into maize (corn), resulting in varieties that produce *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) proteins. These proteins protect plants from damaging insect pests, reducing crop losses and decreasing the need for chemical insecticide applications. This application demonstrates how gene gun technology can be used in agricultural biotechnology to develop crops with improved pest resistance and higher productivity.

Gene guns offer several advantages. They can be used to transform a wide variety of plant species, including those that are difficult to modify using *Agrobacterium*. The technique can also deliver DNA directly into chloroplasts, a task that is often challenging with bacterial transformation methods. In addition, gene gun technology does not rely on a biological vector, making it broadly applicable across many plant types and experimental systems.

However, the method also has several disadvantages. The high-speed particles can damage plant cells and tissues, reducing transformation efficiency. DNA insertion is often less precise than with *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation, and multiple copies of the introduced gene may integrate into random locations within the genome. This can lead to unpredictable levels of gene expression or unintended effects on other genes. Gene gun equipment is also relatively expensive and requires specialized materials such as gold or tungsten particles.

Despite these limitations, gene gun technology remains a powerful and widely used tool in plant biotechnology. Its ability to transform species that are difficult to modify using other methods makes it an important technique for crop improvement, genetic research, and the development of plants with valuable agricultural traits.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"Microprojection Bombardment (Gene Gun Method): Principle, Steps & Application, Molecular Biology" Information BoxTicket Lifestyles https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DiBmTpbst_Q Standard YouTube License No Changes Made.

This page titled 15.4: Gene Guns is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods

Genetically modified (GM) crops are a type of genetically modified organism (GMO), meaning their genetic material has been altered using biotechnology. In agriculture, GM crops are developed to provide beneficial traits such as herbicide resistance, delayed ripening, and improved nutritional content. Examples include Roundup Ready® soybeans, which tolerate certain herbicides; Flavr Savr® tomatoes, which were engineered to delay spoilage; and Golden Rice, which was developed to produce vitamin A precursors.

One of the most common methods for creating transgenic plants uses *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, a rod-shaped, Gram-negative soil bacterium. In nature, *A. tumefaciens* causes crown gall disease by transferring a segment of its DNA into wounded plant cells. This transferred DNA stimulates the formation of tumor-like growths called galls, which can interfere with water and nutrient transport, weakening the plant and reducing crop productivity. Crown gall disease affects many economically important crops, including grapevines, walnuts, stone fruits, nut trees, sugar beets, and rhubarb.

Plant biotechnologists have adapted this natural gene-transfer system for genetic engineering. The bacterium normally carries a large plasmid known as the Ti (tumor-inducing) plasmid, which contains the DNA transferred to plant cells. To create a genetically modified plant, scientists remove the disease-causing genes from the Ti plasmid and replace them with a gene of interest. The engineered *Agrobacterium* is then exposed to plant tissues, such as leaf discs or embryos, where it transfers the modified DNA, known as T-DNA, into plant cells.

Once inside the plant cell, the T-DNA travels to the nucleus and integrates into the plant's chromosomes. The introduced gene can then be expressed by the plant and inherited by future generations. To identify cells that have successfully incorporated the new DNA, marker genes are included alongside the desired gene. These transformed cells are selected in tissue culture and regenerated into whole plants containing the new trait.

This approach has been used to develop numerous agricultural crops. For example, *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation has been employed to introduce *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) genes into plants, enabling them to produce proteins that protect against certain insect pests. By exploiting the bacterium's natural ability to transfer DNA, scientists can efficiently introduce beneficial traits into crop plants and improve agricultural productivity.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attribution:
"B3.12 Genetically Modified Organisms" Mr G's Science Tutorials https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eLw7vax1x4k Standard YouTube license No changes made

This page titled 15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.6: Antisense Technology

Antisense technology is a plant biotechnology technique used to reduce or silence the expression of a specific gene rather than introduce a new one. The process works by inserting a modified copy of a target gene into a plant's genome in the reverse, or complementary, orientation. As a result, the plant produces an antisense RNA molecule whose nucleotide sequence is complementary to the messenger RNA (mRNA) produced by the target gene. Because mRNA carries the genetic instructions needed to synthesize proteins, it serves as the critical link between a gene and its observable effect.

When the antisense RNA binds to the corresponding mRNA, the resulting double-stranded RNA molecule cannot be efficiently translated by ribosomes into a protein. In some cases, the bound mRNA is also degraded by cellular enzymes. By preventing or reducing protein production, antisense technology effectively "turns down" the activity of a specific gene. Unlike many genetic engineering approaches that add a new trait, antisense technology modifies an existing trait by reducing the expression of a gene already present in the organism.

This approach allows scientists to regulate specific biological processes in plants. One of the best-known examples is the **Flavr Savr® tomato**, which was engineered to delay fruit softening during ripening. Researchers used antisense technology to reduce the production of polygalacturonase, an enzyme involved in breaking down pectin within plant cell walls. Because less of this enzyme was produced, the tomatoes softened more slowly and remained firm for a longer period after harvest. This extended shelf life allowed the fruit to ripen more fully on the vine while still maintaining its quality during transportation and storage. In 1994, the Flavr Savr tomato became the first genetically engineered food approved for human consumption by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

Today, antisense technology and related gene-silencing methods, such as RNA interference (RNAi), are widely used in both plant research and agricultural biotechnology. These techniques help scientists investigate gene function by selectively reducing the activity of specific genes and are used to improve traits such as shelf life, texture, flavor, disease resistance, and tolerance to environmental stresses. By allowing precise control over gene expression, antisense technology demonstrates how biotechnology can fine-tune existing genetic pathways to enhance crop performance and food quality without necessarily introducing entirely new genes.

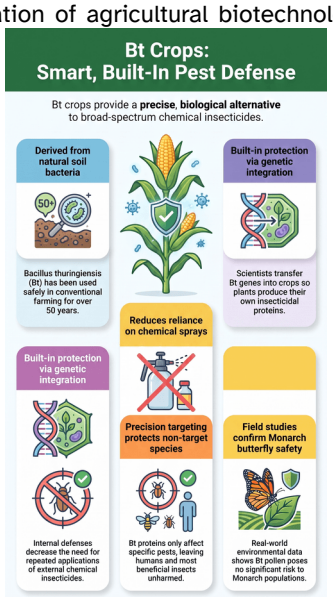


Click on the image above to watch the video

This page titled 15.6: Antisense Technology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.7: Genetic Pesticides

Genetic pesticides are an important application of agricultural biotechnology and are designed to protect crops from insect damage while reducing reliance on chemical insecticides. One of the most widely used examples involves *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt), a naturally occurring soil bacterium that produces proteins that are toxic to specific groups of insect pests and their larvae. When susceptible insects consume these proteins, the proteins damage the lining of the insect's digestive tract, causing the insect to stop feeding and eventually die. Because Bt proteins target specific insect groups, they are generally considered safe for humans and most non-target organisms. In fact, Bt bacteria have been used as a biological pesticide in conventional agriculture for more than 50 years, long before the development of genetically engineered crops.



Advances in genetic engineering have enabled scientists to transfer Bt genes directly into crop plants. To create a Bt crop, researchers first isolate the gene from *B. thuringiensis* that codes for the insecticidal protein. The gene is then inserted into plant cells using genetic engineering techniques, most commonly through *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*-mediated transformation or, in some crops, by using a gene gun. Once the Bt gene becomes integrated into the plant's chromosomes, the transformed cells are grown in tissue culture and regenerated into whole plants. As the plants grow, they express the Bt gene and produce the Bt protein in their tissues. As a result, when susceptible insect pests feed on the plant, they ingest the protein and are controlled before causing significant crop damage.

The ability of plants to produce their own Bt protein creates a built-in defense against specific insect pests, reducing crop losses and decreasing the need for repeated applications of chemical insecticides. Crops engineered with Bt genes, including corn, cotton, and several other commercially important crops, have contributed to increased agricultural productivity and reduced pesticide use in many farming systems.

Despite these benefits, Bt crops have also been the subject of public controversy, particularly regarding their potential impact on non-target organisms such as Monarch butterflies. In the late 1990s, laboratory studies suggested that Monarch caterpillars exposed to high concentrations of Bt corn pollen could experience negative effects. A widely publicized 1999 study reported harmful impacts when caterpillars were fed milkweed leaves coated with Bt corn pollen under controlled laboratory conditions. As a result, the Monarch butterfly became an important symbol in the public debate over genetically modified crops.

YouTube Video

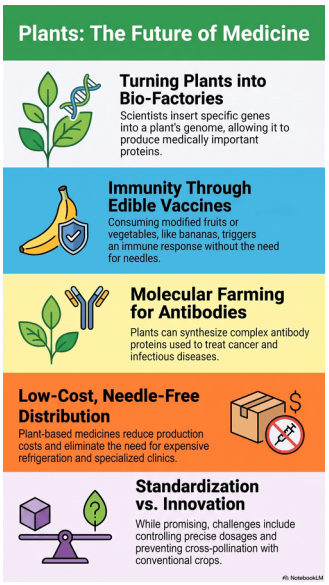
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"Bt Crops: Smart, Buiolt-In Pest Defense" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"Bt Crops: Biotechnology and its Applications: Biology: Kan Academy" Khan Academy India - English https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xw8hcX-bwL4 YouTube standard license, no changes made.

This page titled 15.7: Genetic Pesticides is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.8: Edible Vaccines



Plant biotechnology has opened the door to the development of edible vaccines and plant-produced antibodies, two innovative applications that use genetically modified plants to manufacture medically important proteins. An antigen is a molecule, usually a protein or part of a protein, that is recognized by the immune system and triggers an immune response. In response to an antigen, the body produces antibodies, specialized proteins that bind to the antigen and help neutralize or destroy the pathogen carrying it. By introducing genes that code for specific antigens or antibodies into a plant's genome, scientists can transform plants into biological factories capable of producing pharmaceutical compounds in a cost-effective and scalable manner.

To create an edible vaccine, scientists isolate a gene that codes for a pathogen-specific antigen and insert it into the genome of a food plant, such as a potato, tomato, banana, or lettuce. The genetically modified plant then produces the antigen in its edible tissues. When a person consumes the plant, the antigen is recognized by the immune system, stimulating the production of antibodies and immune cells that provide protection against future infection. Because the antigen is harmless by itself, it can trigger immunity without causing disease.

A well-known example is the development of experimental hepatitis B vaccines in potatoes and bananas. Scientists inserted a gene encoding the hepatitis B surface antigen into the plant genome, causing the plants to produce the antigen in their edible tissues. When consumed, these plant tissues stimulated an immune response similar to that produced by conventional vaccines, encouraging the body to generate antibodies against the hepatitis B virus.

In addition to producing vaccine antigens, genetically engineered plants can also be used to manufacture therapeutic antibodies. In this process, genes encoding a desired antibody are inserted into the plant genome. As the plant grows, it synthesizes the antibody proteins, which can then be harvested and purified for medical use. These plant-produced antibodies have been investigated for the treatment of infectious diseases, cancer, and other medical conditions. This approach, often referred to as molecular farming, allows large quantities of pharmaceutical proteins to be produced without the expensive cell-culture facilities typically required for traditional drug manufacturing.

Plant-based vaccines and antibodies offer several important advantages. Plants can be grown inexpensively on a large scale using sunlight, water, and basic nutrients, reducing production costs. Because plants do not harbor human pathogens, the risk of contamination with human disease-causing microbes is lower than in some animal-based production systems. Edible vaccines may eliminate the need for needles and could reduce dependence on refrigeration and complex distribution networks, making vaccines more accessible in regions with limited healthcare infrastructure. In addition, large numbers of vaccine doses or therapeutic proteins can potentially be produced rapidly by cultivating additional plants.

Despite these benefits, plant-derived pharmaceuticals also present several challenges. The amount of antigen or antibody produced can vary among individual plants, making dosage standardization difficult. For edible vaccines, the amount of vaccine received may depend on the size and ripeness of the plant tissue consumed, complicating the delivery of a precise dose.

Some plant-produced proteins may require extensive purification before they can be used safely and effectively as medicines. Regulatory approval, quality control, and public acceptance of genetically modified plants used for pharmaceutical production also remain important concerns. Furthermore, there is a need to prevent pharmaceutical-producing crops from accidentally entering the food supply or cross-pollinating with conventional crops.

YouTube Video

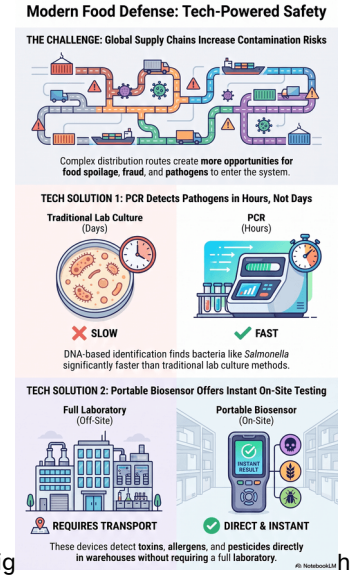
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Attributions:
"Plants: The Futures of Medicine" *AI-generated using NotebookLM. Modified by Emalee Mackenzie, Irvine Valley College. Licensed under* ***CC BY-NC-SA***.
"All About Edible Vaccines in 7 Minutes" BioTech Whisperer https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8n4hONDoSSc Standard YouTube license No changes made

This page titled 15.8: Edible Vaccines is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

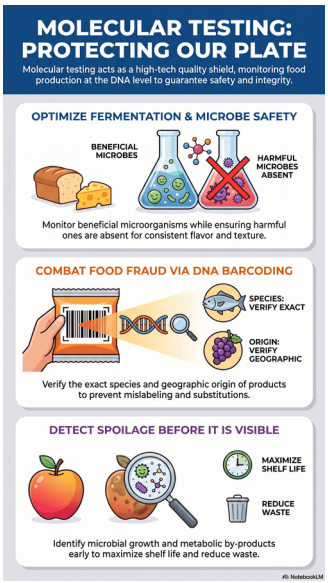
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology

Modern food production relies on advanced scientific tools to ensure that food products are safe to consume and consistently meet hig 

h quality standards. As food production and distribution become increasingly global, foods often travel thousands of miles before reaching consumers. This complex supply chain creates more opportunities for contamination, spoilage, food fraud, and labeling errors. Molecular technologies help detect hazards quickly, monitor production processes, and verify the identity and quality of food products from farm to table.

One of the most important applications is molecular detection. Techniques such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) allow scientists to identify harmful microorganisms by detecting their DNA. Unlike traditional culture methods, which may require several days to grow microorganisms before they can be identified, PCR can often provide results within hours. This rapid detection allows food manufacturers to identify contamination early, preventing contaminated products from reaching consumers. PCR is routinely used to detect foodborne pathogens such as *Salmonella*, *Escherichia coli* O157, *Listeria monocytogenes*, and *Campylobacter*, all of which can cause serious illness. PCR can also identify viruses such as norovirus and hepatitis A that may contaminate fresh produce or shellfish.

Another important tool is the biosensor (a device that uses biological molecules to detect specific substances), which provides rapid, sensitive detection of contaminants. Biosensors contain biological recognition molecules such as antibodies, enzymes, or nucleic acids that bind to a specific target. When the target is detected, the device produces a measurable signal, allowing food processors to quickly identify contamination. Biosensors are increasingly used to detect bacterial toxins, pesticides, heavy metals, allergens, antibiotic residues, and environmental contaminants. For example, they can rapidly detect peanut proteins in processed foods to help prevent accidental allergen exposure or identify aflatoxins produced by molds that contaminate grains and nuts. Because many biosensors are portable, they can be used directly in food processing facilities, warehouses, or distribution centers without requiring a fully equipped laboratory.



Molecular testing also helps manufacturers monitor production processes and maintain product quality. In fermented foods such as yogurt, cheese, kefir, kimchi, sauerkraut, soy sauce, and sourdough bread, scientists monitor beneficial microorganisms to ensure they remain healthy and active throughout production. At the same time, testing confirms that harmful microorganisms are absent. Maintaining the proper balance of microbial populations helps produce consistent flavor, texture, aroma, nutritional value, and shelf life from one batch to the next.

Another important application is traceability (the ability to track a product through all stages of production, processing, and distribution). DNA-based identification methods and molecular markers allow producers and regulatory agencies to verify the identity and origin of food products. This helps detect food fraud, substitution, and mislabeling while improving consumer confidence. For example, DNA barcoding can distinguish between closely related fish species, preventing inexpensive fish from being sold as premium seafood. Similar methods verify the authenticity of meat products, identify plant varieties used in specialty foods, and confirm the geographic origin of products such as olive oil, coffee, rice, and wine.

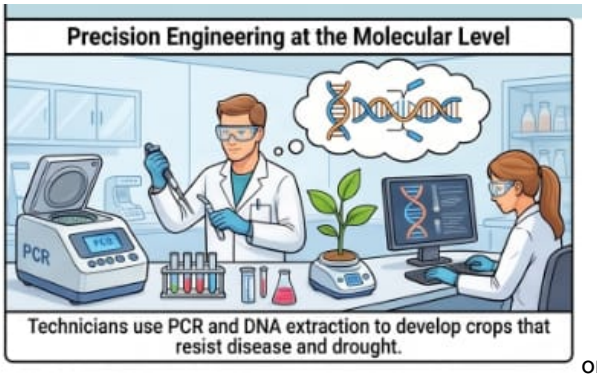
Quality control also depends on monitoring spoilage and product freshness. As foods age, microorganisms multiply and produce metabolic by-products that alter taste, odor, texture, and appearance. Molecular testing allows producers to monitor microbial growth before visible spoilage occurs, helping determine shelf life and optimize storage conditions. Some manufacturers also use biosensors to detect gases or other compounds released during spoilage, allowing products to be removed before they become unsafe.

Together, these technologies help manufacturers identify potential problems early, reduce waste, improve efficiency, and ensure that consumers receive food that is safe, authentic, and consistently high in quality. As food systems continue to evolve, these tools will remain essential for protecting public health and maintaining confidence in the global food supply.

This page titled 15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

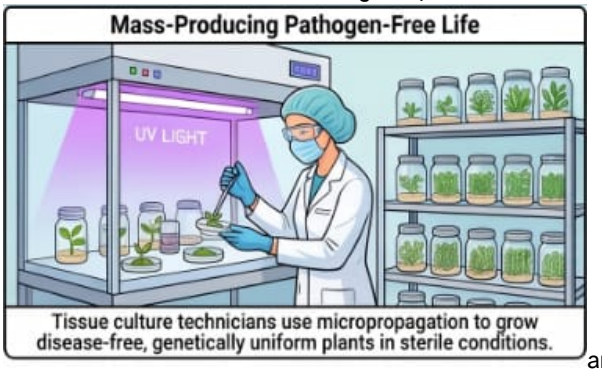
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology

Agricultural biotechnology offers a wide variety of career opportunities for individuals who enjoy science and want to help improve food production, environmental sustainability, and global food security. Professionals in this field apply molecular biology, microbiology, genetics, plant science, and engineering to develop healthier crops, improve livestock production, create sustainable farming practices, and produce innovative agricultural products. They work for seed companies, agricultural biotechnology companies, food manufacturers, universities, government agencies, contract research organizations, and environmental consulting firms. Examples of employers include Bayer Crop Science, Corteva Agriscience, Syngenta, BASF Agricultural Solutions, the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), and university agricultural research centers.



Agricultural biotechnology laboratory technicians support research by extracting DNA, performing polymerase chain reaction (PCR), preparing reagents, conducting gel electrophoresis, maintaining laboratory equipment, recording data, and following Good Laboratory Practices (GLP) and standard operating procedures (SOPs). Laboratory technicians often assist scientists who are developing crops that resist fungal diseases, identifying genes associated with drought tolerance, or testing plants that have been modified using CRISPR gene editing.

Plant tissue culture technicians grow plants under sterile laboratory conditions using micropropagation techniques. They prepare nutrient media, transfer plant tissues to fresh culture vessels, monitor growth, and produce disease-free plants for agriculture and horticulture. Tissue culture is commonly used to produce banana, strawberry, potato, orchid, and fruit tree plants that are genetically uniform and free of pathogens.



Greenhouse technicians and field research technicians evaluate new crop varieties before they are released to farmers. Greenhouse technicians maintain controlled environmental conditions and monitor plant growth, while field research technicians plant experimental crops, collect data on yield, disease resistance, drought tolerance, and insect damage, and evaluate how crops perform under real farming conditions. For example, they may compare several varieties of corn to determine which produces the highest yield during periods of limited rainfall or evaluate tomato plants for resistance to bacterial wilt.

Molecular breeding technicians combine traditional plant breeding with DNA analysis to identify plants carrying desirable traits such as drought tolerance, insect resistance, disease resistance, or improved nutritional value. By using molecular markers, they help plant breeders develop improved crop varieties more efficiently than with conventional breeding alone. Their work has contributed to improved varieties of wheat, rice, soybeans, and many other crops.

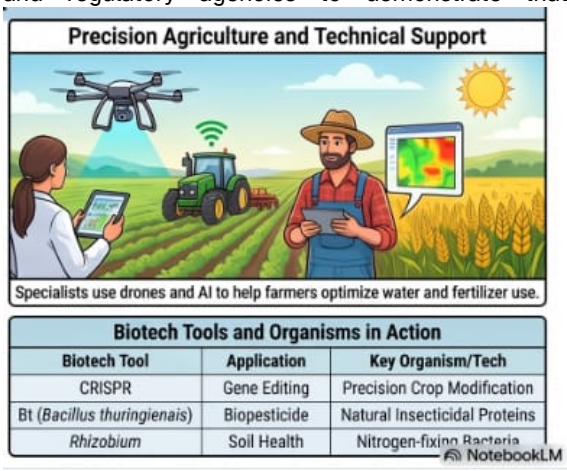
Microbiology technicians study beneficial microorganisms that improve soil health and plant growth. They isolate and identify bacteria and fungi, evaluate microbial products that protect plants from disease, and help develop biological fertilizers and

biopesticides. For example, they may work with nitrogen-fixing *Rhizobium* bacteria that improve legume growth, *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt), which produces natural insecticidal proteins, or fungi that protect plant roots from disease.



Quality control and quality assurance specialists ensure that seeds, plant materials, fertilizers, and agricultural products consistently meet safety and quality standards. They perform laboratory testing, inspect production processes, analyze samples for contamination, verify seed germination rates, and ensure that products meet regulatory requirements before they are distributed to growers.

Regulatory affairs specialists help companies obtain approval for new agricultural products by preparing scientific documentation and ensuring compliance with government regulations. These professionals work closely with researchers, manufacturers, and regulatory agencies to demonstrate that new genetically engineered crops, microbial products, or biological



ical pesticides are safe for people and the environment.

Agricultural biotechnology also offers careers beyond the laboratory. Bioinformatics specialists analyze large genomic datasets to identify genes associated with valuable crop traits and help scientists make data-driven breeding decisions. Precision agriculture specialists combine biology with technologies such as drones, GPS-guided equipment, satellite imaging, soil sensors, and artificial intelligence to improve crop management while reducing water, fertilizer, and pesticide use. Manufacturing technicians produce microbial inoculants, enzymes, biological pesticides, and other agricultural products in large-scale production facilities. Technical sales specialists and field application scientists work directly with farmers, helping them select products, troubleshoot production problems, and implement new agricultural technologies.

Career opportunities continue to expand as agriculture adopts innovations such as genome sequencing, CRISPR gene editing, precision agriculture, artificial intelligence, and sustainable farming practices. Whether working in a laboratory, greenhouse, manufacturing facility, or agricultural field, professionals in agricultural biotechnology play an important role in developing the technologies that help feed a growing global population while protecting natural resources

This page titled 15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action







Healthy citrus tress Trees with greening disease Greenhouse trials The Asian citrus psyllid

Every year, California's citrus industry faces one of its greatest threats: huanglongbing (HLB), also known as citrus greening disease. The disease is caused by the bacterium *Candidatus Liberibacter asiaticus*, which is spread by the Asian citrus psyllid, a small sap-feeding insect that transmits the pathogen as it feeds on citrus trees. Once infected, orange, lemon, grapefruit, and other citrus trees gradually decline, producing small, misshapen, bitter fruit with green patches that are unsuitable for market. Over time, infected trees stop producing fruit and eventually die. Since there is currently no cure, growers must remove infected trees to help slow the spread of the disease. HLB has devastated citrus industries in several regions of the world, including Florida, and poses a significant threat to California's multibillion-dollar citrus industry.

Plant biotechnologists are working to develop long-term solutions that can protect citrus orchards from this destructive disease. Dr. Peggy Lemaux, a plant biotechnologist at the University of California, Berkeley, has collaborated with researchers, government agencies, nonprofit organizations, and California citrus growers to advance biotechnology-based approaches for improving disease resistance in citrus. Rather than relying solely on conventional breeding, which can require decades to produce improved fruit trees, scientists are using gene editing and genetic engineering to develop citrus varieties that are better able to resist HLB while maintaining the flavor, appearance, and fruit quality that consumers expect.

Developing disease-resistant citrus requires expertise from many areas of agricultural biotechnology. Molecular biologists identify genes involved in plant immunity and determine how citrus trees respond to bacterial infection. Plant tissue culture specialists regenerate whole trees from genetically modified or gene-edited cells, while greenhouse technicians carefully grow young plants under controlled environmental conditions. Plant pathologists evaluate how well the new trees resist infection, and entomologists study the Asian citrus psyllid to better understand how the disease spreads. Field scientists then conduct multi-year orchard trials to determine whether promising citrus varieties remain productive, healthy, and resistant under real growing conditions. Finally, plant breeders, regulatory specialists, and agricultural extension professionals work with growers to evaluate whether new varieties are safe, commercially viable, and suitable for California agriculture.

One promising area of research focuses on using CRISPR gene editing to make precise changes to a citrus tree's own DNA, allowing scientists to enhance natural disease-resistance pathways without introducing genes from unrelated species. Other researchers are investigating antimicrobial proteins, beneficial microorganisms, and RNA-based technologies that may prevent the bacteria from infecting trees or reduce populations of the insect that spreads the disease. Together, these complementary approaches offer multiple strategies for protecting citrus crops in the future.

This page titled 15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16: BIOETHICS

The Ethical Role of Biotechnologists

Biotechnology has the potential to improve human health, increase food production, develop sustainable industrial processes, and address environmental challenges. However, these advances also raise important ethical questions about how new technologies should be developed, tested, and applied. Bioethics (the study of ethical principles that guide research and applications involving living systems) provides a framework for evaluating these issues and making responsible decisions. It brings together science, medicine, law, philosophy, and public policy to help ensure that scientific innovation is balanced with ethical responsibility.

Bioethics examines questions such as how new medical treatments should be tested, how genetic information should be protected, when gene editing should be used, how animals should be treated in research, and how biotechnology can be applied fairly and responsibly. It also considers broader issues such as environmental stewardship, equitable access to new technologies, and the social impact of scientific discoveries.

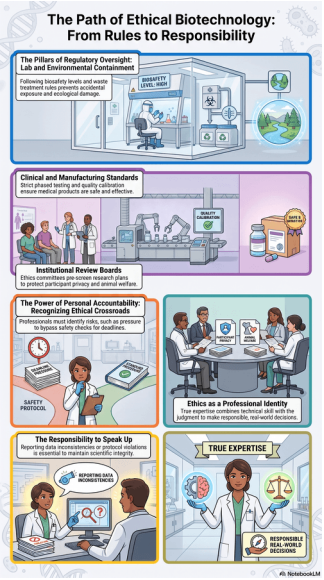
Rather than providing simple right or wrong answers, bioethics encourages scientists and society to carefully weigh the potential benefits of biotechnology against its possible risks. It emphasizes protecting human and animal welfare, respecting individual rights, promoting fairness, and maintaining public trust in science. As technologies such as gene editing, artificial intelligence, stem cell research, personalized medicine, and synthetic biology continue to advance, bioethics plays an essential role in guiding scientific progress so that biotechnology benefits society while minimizing harm.

16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
16.5: Careers in Bioethics
16.6: Bioethics in Action

This page titled 16: Bioethics is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards

Ethical practice in biotechnology is reinforced through laws, regulations, and professional standards that guide how research is conducted and how biotechnology products are developed, tested, and released. These systems exist to protect human health, ensure product quality, safeguard the environment, and maintain public trust. Regulations help translate ethical principles—such as safety, fairness, and accountability—into clear, enforceable requirements.



Regulatory agencies establish rules for laboratory safety, clinical trials, manufacturing quality, and environmental protection. For example, laboratory safety regulations require biotechnologists to follow biosafety levels, use appropriate containment, and receive proper training before working with infectious organisms. In a research lab studying bacteria, these regulations ensure that cultures are handled in designated areas, waste is sterilized before disposal, and accidental exposure risks are minimized. Following these rules protects both laboratory workers and the surrounding community.

In medical and biopharmaceutical biotechnology, laws governing clinical trials are especially important. Before a new drug or vaccine can be tested in humans, it must go through carefully regulated phases of testing to demonstrate safety and effectiveness. For instance, a company developing a new cancer therapy cannot skip early safety trials to speed up approval. Regulations require clear documentation, informed consent from participants, and accurate reporting of side effects. These rules exist to prevent harm to patients and to ensure that medical decisions are based on reliable evidence.

Manufacturing regulations also play a key ethical role. Biopharmaceutical products such as vaccines, insulin, and monoclonal antibodies must be produced under strict quality standards to ensure consistency and safety. In a manufacturing facility, regulations may require routine equipment calibration, environmental monitoring, and detailed batch records. If a technician notices that temperature controls were not maintained during production, ethical and regulatory standards require that the issue be reported and investigated rather than ignored. This protects patients from receiving ineffective or unsafe products.

Environmental regulations guide how biotechnology interacts with ecosystems. For example, facilities that use genetically modified microorganisms must follow rules that limit environmental release and require proper waste treatment. In environmental biotechnology, regulations may govern how bioremediation organisms are introduced into contaminated sites and how their impact is monitored over time. These safeguards help prevent unintended ecological consequences while allowing beneficial environmental applications to move forward responsibly.

Ethics committees and institutional review boards provide another layer of oversight, particularly in research involving humans or animals. Before a study begins, these groups review research plans to ensure risks are minimized and ethical standards are met. For example, a genetic study involving human DNA samples must demonstrate how participant privacy will be protected and how consent will be obtained. This review process helps prevent unethical experimentation and reinforces respect for individual rights.

Despite the presence of laws and oversight systems, ethical responsibility ultimately rests with individual biotechnologists.

Regulations cannot anticipate every situation that may arise in daily work. Professionals must recognize ethical concerns as they occur, ask questions when procedures are unclear, and seek guidance when necessary. For example, if a technician is instructed to bypass a safety check to meet a deadline, ethical judgment requires pushing back and following proper procedures.

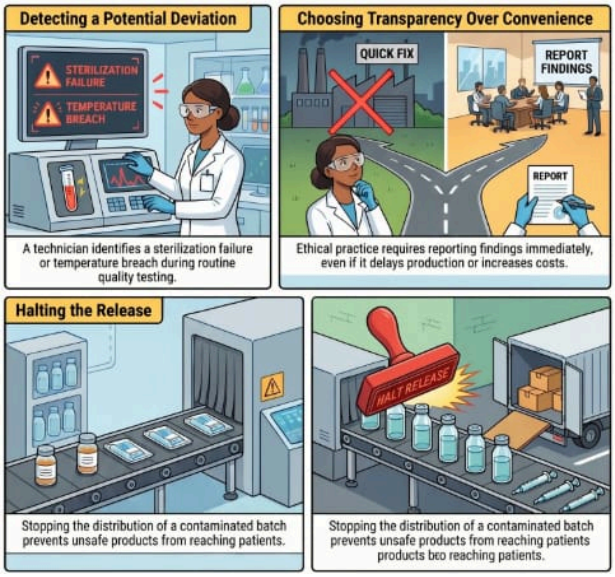
Speaking up when concerns arise is a critical professional responsibility. Reporting safety issues, data inconsistencies, or protocol violations helps prevent harm and supports a culture of integrity. Although raising concerns may feel uncomfortable, ethical action protects coworkers, consumers, and the credibility of the biotechnology field.

Developing ethical judgment is therefore an essential part of professional identity in biotechnology. Alongside technical skills and scientific knowledge, understanding laws, regulations, and professional standards prepares biotechnologists to make responsible decisions in real-world settings. By combining regulatory compliance with personal accountability, biotechnology professionals help ensure that scientific advances are safe, ethical, and beneficial to society.

This page titled 16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

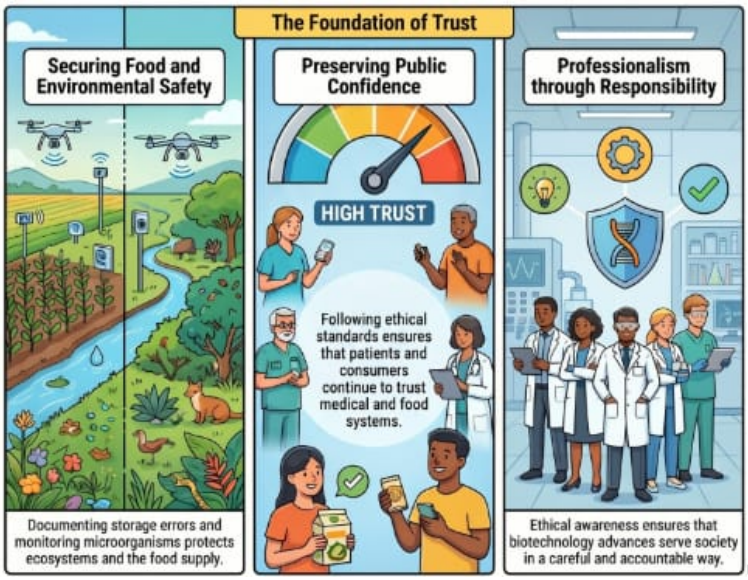
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential

Ethical behavior is essential in biotechnology because the field is built on trust. Patients trust that medical



tests and treatments are accurate and safe, consumers trust that food products meet safety standards, and communities trust that environmental biotechnology will not cause harm. When ethical standards are followed, this trust allows biotechnology to improve health, strengthen food systems, and protect the environment. When ethical standards are ignored, that trust can quickly be lost.

Consider a scenario in a biopharmaceutical manufacturing facility that produces a vaccine. A quality control technician detects a possible contamination during routine sterility testing on a batch scheduled for release. Ethical practice requires the technician to report the finding immediately and stop distribution until the issue is fully investigated. Although this decision may delay production and increase costs, it prevents unsafe products from reaching patients and preserves confidence in the healthcare system. Choosing transparency over convenience demonstrates why ethical practices are essential in biotechnology.



A similar sit uation can arise in food biotechnology. A technician working with enzymes used in food processing notices that storage conditions briefly exceeded approved temperature limits. Even if the product appears unaffected, ethical responsibility requires documenting the deviation and following corrective procedures. Ignoring the issue could place consumers at risk and undermine trust in food safety.

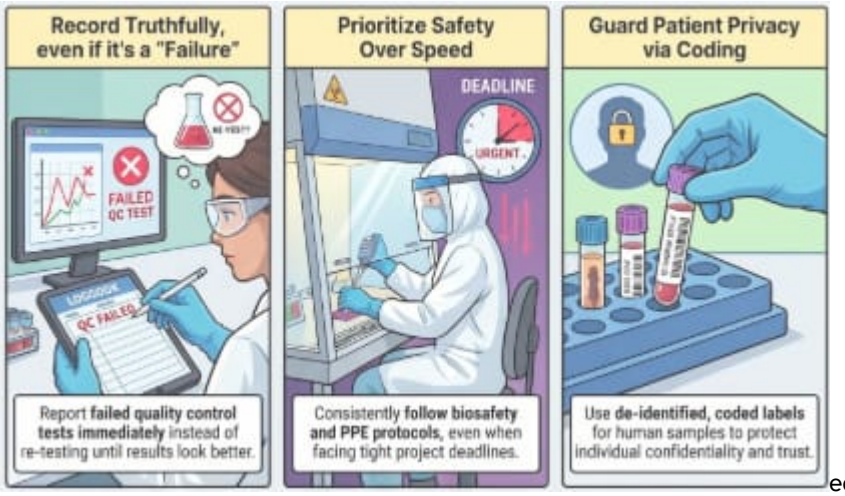
Environmental biotechnology also depends on ethical decision-making. For example, when microorganisms are used to clean

up contaminated soil, ongoing monitoring is required to ensure they do not disrupt surrounding ecosystems. If unexpected effects occur, ethical practice requires reporting and addressing them rather than minimizing concerns to avoid delays. Ethical awareness supports professionalism, protects public safety, and ensures that biotechnology advances serve society in careful, trustworthy, and responsible ways.

This page titled 16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards

Upholding ethical standards in biotechnology is an active, everyday practice. Ethical behavior is demonstrated through consistent actions, careful decision-making, and a willingness to prioritize safety, honesty, and responsibility, even when doing so is inconvenient or challenging. The following examples illustrate practical ways biotechnologists uphold ethical standards in real laboratory and industry settings.



One important way biotechnologists uphold ethics is through accurate data collection and transparent reporting. This means carefully recording all observations, including unexpected or negative results, and reporting them truthfully to supervisors or regulatory bodies. For example, if a quality control test shows that a biopharmaceutical batch does not meet required specifications, an ethical biotechnologist reports the failure immediately rather than repeating the test until a “better” result appears. This practice protects patients from unsafe products and preserves scientific credibility.

Another key ethical practice is strict adherence to safety protocols. Ethical biotechnologists consistently follow biosafety guidelines, use personal protective equipment, and properly handle and dispose of biological materials. For instance, a technician working with human blood samples follows established procedures for labeling, storage, and waste disposal to prevent accidental exposure or contamination. Even when deadlines are tight, ethical professionals do not skip safety steps, because doing so could endanger coworkers or the public.

Protecting privacy and confidentiality is especially important when working with human samples or data. Ethical biotechnologists ensure that patient information is de-identified when required and accessed only by authorized personnel. For example, a biotechnologist performing genetic testing uses coded identifiers rather than patient names and does not discuss results outside approved professional settings. This practice respects individual rights and maintains trust in medical and diagnostic biotechnology.



Ethical standards are also upheld by following regulations and institutional guidelines. Biotechnologists are expected to understand and comply with laws governing laboratory safety, clinical testing, manufacturing quality, and environmental protection. When procedures change or new regulations are introduced, ethical professionals seek training and clarification rather than continuing outdated practices. Compliance ensures consistency, safety, and accountability across the biotechnology field.

Speaking up when concerns arise is another critical ethical responsibility. Ethical biotechnologists report potential safety issues, data inconsistencies, or protocol violations through appropriate channels. For example, if a technician notices that equipment calibration records are incomplete or incorrect, reporting the issue helps prevent faulty results and downstream harm. Although raising concerns can feel uncomfortable, it is an essential part of professional responsibility.



Finally, ethical biotechnologists engage in continuous learning and reflection. Biotechnology evolves rapidly, and new technologies often introduce new ethical challenges. Staying informed about ethical guidelines, participating in training, and discussing ethical questions with colleagues helps professionals make thoughtful decisions. This commitment to ethical growth ensures that biotechnology advances remain aligned with public safety, fairness, and societal benefit.

Together, these practices show that ethics in biotechnology is not abstract or theoretical. It is built into daily actions that protect people, the environment, and the integrity of science.

This page titled 16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed

The importance of ethical practice becomes especially clear when ethical standards are ignored or deliberately violated. Biotechnology relies heavily on trust—trust in data, trust in safety systems, and trust that professionals are acting in the best interest of patients and the public. When that trust is broken, the consequences can be severe and far-reaching.

A well-known example is the case of **Theranos**, a biotechnology startup that claimed to have developed a revolutionary blood-testing technology capable of running hundreds of medical tests from a single drop of blood. Company leadership promoted the technology aggressively, even though internal data showed that the tests were inaccurate and unreliable. Instead of addressing these problems, laboratory data were misrepresented, quality control procedures were bypassed, and the technology was used on real patient samples before it was properly validated.

Employees who raised ethical and scientific concerns were reportedly ignored, pressured, or silenced. Standard practices designed to protect patients—such as confirming test accuracy, documenting failures, and stopping unsafe testing—were not followed. This breakdown in ethical behavior illustrates how ignoring scientific integrity and regulatory standards can escalate from internal problems to widespread harm.

The consequences were significant. Patients received incorrect medical information, including false positives and false negatives, which in some cases led to unnecessary anxiety, additional medical testing, inappropriate treatment decisions, or delays in proper care. Once the truth emerged, the company collapsed, investors lost billions of dollars, executives faced criminal charges, and regulatory agencies intervened. Perhaps most importantly, public trust in diagnostic biotechnology was damaged, making patients and healthcare providers more cautious about new technologies.

This case demonstrates that ethical failures in biotechnology do not remain confined to the laboratory. When honesty, transparency, and accountability are compromised, the effects ripple outward—harming patients, ending careers, and undermining confidence in the entire field. It also shows why ethical responsibility cannot be treated as optional or secondary to innovation or profit. The lesson is clear: cutting corners, ignoring data, or remaining silent about problems can have serious consequences. Ethical practice protects not only the public, but also the integrity of science and the long-term success of biotechnology as a profession.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16.5: Careers in Bioethics

Bioethics offers career opportunities for individuals who are interested in the ethical, legal, and social issues surrounding biotechnology, medicine, and scientific research. Bioethics professionals work with scientists, physicians, healthcare providers, biotechnology companies, universities, government agencies, and regulatory organizations to ensure that research and new technologies are developed responsibly. Their work helps protect research participants, patients, animals, and the environment while balancing scientific progress with ethical considerations. As biotechnology continues to advance in areas such as gene editing, artificial intelligence, personalized medicine, synthetic biology, and regenerative medicine, the need for professionals who can navigate complex ethical questions continues to grow.

Unlike many biotechnology careers that focus primarily on laboratory research, careers in bioethics combine scientific knowledge with communication, critical thinking, policy development, and decision-making. Bioethics professionals frequently collaborate with multidisciplinary teams that include researchers, physicians, attorneys, engineers, public health officials, and community representatives. They help identify potential ethical concerns before research begins, evaluate risks and benefits, ensure compliance with laws and regulations, and communicate scientific issues to both professionals and the public.

Research Compliance Specialist: Research compliance specialists help universities, hospitals, biotechnology companies, and research institutes comply with federal regulations, institutional policies, and ethical guidelines. They conduct laboratory audits, inspect research facilities, review documentation, investigate potential violations, and provide training on responsible research practices. Their work helps ensure that research involving recombinant DNA, genetically modified organisms, infectious agents, laboratory animals, or human biological samples is conducted safely, legally, and ethically.

Clinical Research Coordinator: Clinical research coordinators manage the daily operations of clinical trials evaluating new drugs, vaccines, medical devices, cell therapies, and gene therapies. They recruit study participants, explain informed consent documents, schedule patient visits, collect clinical data, maintain regulatory records, coordinate communication among physicians and researchers, and ensure studies follow approved research protocols. Because they work directly with volunteers, clinical research coordinators play an essential role in protecting participants while ensuring that high-quality scientific data are collected.

Regulatory Affairs Specialist: Regulatory affairs specialists prepare the extensive scientific documentation required for government approval of biotechnology products, biologic drugs, vaccines, medical devices, and diagnostic tests. They work closely with research scientists, manufacturing teams, quality assurance personnel, and regulatory agencies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Throughout product development, they ensure that products meet safety, efficacy, quality, and ethical standards while helping organizations navigate constantly evolving regulations.

Animal Welfare Specialist: Animal welfare specialists oversee research programs involving laboratory animals to ensure that studies meet ethical and legal standards. They review animal research protocols, inspect research facilities, monitor animal housing and care, evaluate enrichment programs, and work closely with veterinarians and researchers to minimize pain and distress. They also promote the principles of the Three Rs—Replacement, Reduction, and Refinement—to encourage alternatives to animal use whenever possible and improve the welfare of animals used in scientific research.

Environmental Health and Safety (EHS) Specialist: Environmental health and safety specialists develop and implement programs that protect laboratory personnel, patients, the public, and the environment from biological and chemical hazards. They perform laboratory safety inspections, evaluate biosafety risks, oversee hazardous waste disposal, develop emergency response procedures, and provide safety training for laboratory personnel. They may also help establish containment procedures for laboratories working with genetically modified microorganisms, recombinant viruses, or emerging infectious diseases.

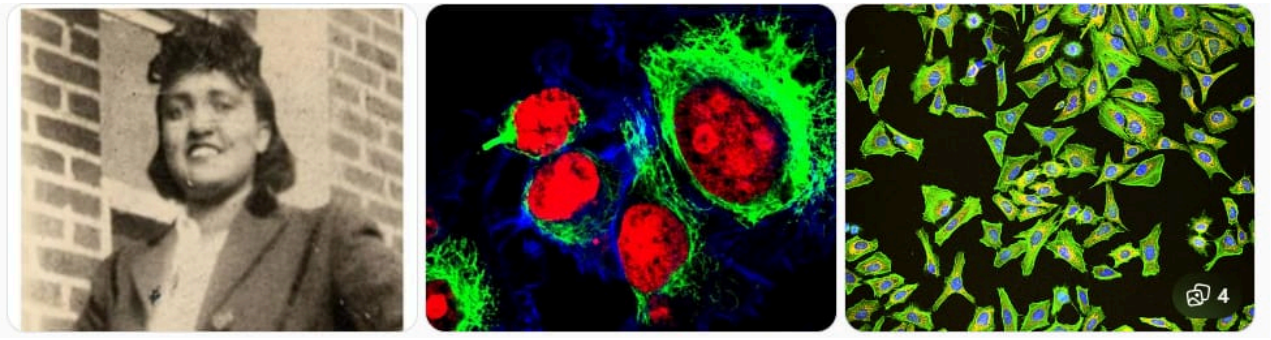
Bioethics Consultant: Bioethics consultants advise hospitals, research institutions, biotechnology companies, and government organizations on complex ethical issues involving medicine and scientific research. They participate in ethics committees, help resolve disagreements involving patient care or research decisions, develop institutional policies, provide ethics education, and assist researchers in addressing emerging ethical challenges. They may evaluate issues involving end-of-life care, the use of artificial intelligence in clinical decision-making, human gene editing, organ transplantation, or equitable access to expensive genetic therapies.

Research Ethics Program Manager: Research ethics program managers oversee institutional ethics programs that support responsible research across large organizations. They coordinate ethics training, develop institutional policies, organize ethics

committee meetings, monitor regulatory compliance, and serve as a resource for investigators facing ethical questions during research. They help create a culture of integrity by ensuring that ethical considerations remain central throughout the research process.

This page titled 16.5: Careers in Bioethics is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

16.6: Bioethics in Action



Henrietta Lacks Fluorescence micrograph of HeLa cells

The story of Henrietta Lacks is one of the most influential examples of why bioethics is essential in modern science. In 1951, Henrietta Lacks, a 31-year-old woman being treated for cervical cancer at Johns Hopkins Hospital, had cancer cells collected during a medical procedure without her knowledge or consent, which was common practice at the time. Unlike other human cells studied by scientists, her cells continued to divide indefinitely in the laboratory, creating the first **immortal cell line** (cells that can continue growing and dividing indefinitely under laboratory conditions). Named HeLa cells after the first letters of her first and last names, they quickly became one of the most important tools in biomedical research.

For more than seven decades, HeLa cells have been used in laboratories around the world. They played a critical role in developing the polio vaccine, advancing cancer research, studying viruses such as HIV and COVID-19, mapping human genes, testing new medications, and supporting breakthroughs in gene editing, in vitro fertilization, and space biology. Scientists estimate that billions of HeLa cells have been grown and used in thousands of research studies.

Although HeLa cells transformed medicine, the way they were obtained raised important ethical concerns. Henrietta Lacks and her family were never informed that her cells had been collected or that they would become one of the most widely used research tools in history. Decades later, advances in DNA sequencing created a new ethical challenge. In 2013, researchers published the complete genome sequence of HeLa cells, raising concerns that genetic information from the cells could reveal private information about Henrietta Lacks' descendants.

Rather than allowing unrestricted public access to the genomic data, bioethicists, scientists, the National Institutes of Health (NIH), and members of the Lacks family worked together to develop a solution that balanced scientific progress with respect for patient privacy. The resulting 2013 NIH–Lacks Family Agreement established controlled access to HeLa genome data. Researchers must now apply for permission to use the genomic information, and members of the Lacks family serve on the committee that reviews requests. Scientists are also expected to acknowledge Henrietta Lacks and her family's contribution in publications that use HeLa genomic data.

This landmark agreement demonstrated how bioethicists can help resolve complex ethical challenges while allowing important scientific research to continue. Today, the story of Henrietta Lacks is taught around the world as a reminder that scientific discoveries must be accompanied by respect for informed consent, patient privacy, transparency, and ethical responsibility. Her legacy continues to shape policies governing the collection, use, and sharing of human biological samples, ensuring that future medical advances are achieved with both scientific excellence and respect for the individuals who make that research possible.

This page titled 16.6: Bioethics in Action is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

17: ABOUT THIS BOOK

17.1: About the Author
17.2: How to Use this Book
17.3: References and Disclosures

This page titled 17: About this Book is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.1: About the Author

About the Author of this Book



Figure 17.1.1: Emalee MacKenzie M.S. Professor of Biotechnology at Irvine Valley College. Photograph by....

Bio

Where you went to school. How long you have been teaching. Any industry background.

This page titled 17.1: About the Author is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.2: How to Use this Book

How to Use this Book

This book is to be paird with..... taught in person/or online..... it is for a 16 week class, could be modified for 8weeks if.....

Canvas Commons Link to LMS project:

This page titled 17.2: How to Use this Book is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.3: References and Disclosures

AI Disclosure

*From **[START DATE]** through **[END DATE]**, the author used **[AI TOOL/PLATFORM]** (**[COMPANY/DEVELOPER; MODEL OR VERSION, IF KNOWN]**) in a limited support capacity for **[DESCRIBE USES—such as brainstorming, outlining, organization, accessibility support, question development, image generation, or light editing related to clarity, grammar, concision, and tone]**.*

The AI tool was not treated as an authoritative source and did not replace the author's subject-matter expertise, research, analysis, or instructional judgment. All AI-assisted content was reviewed, revised, and verified by the author. The author remains responsible for the accuracy, accessibility, licensing, instructional quality, and final presentation of this open educational resource.

This page titled 17.3: References and Disclosures is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

INDEX

A

accuracy
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
acetate
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
acetyl
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
acetyl CoA
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
acidity
3.6: Acids and Bases
activation energy
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
active transport
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
3.9.4.1: ATP
adenosine triphosphate
3.9.4.1: ATP
ADP
3.9.4.1: ATP
aerobic
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
aerobic respiration
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
affinity purification
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
agricultural biotechnology
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
14: Environmental Biotechnology
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
15.6: Antisense Technology
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
15.8: Edible Vaccines
agricultural residues
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
agriculture
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
2: Biology as a Science
Agrobacterium
15.4: Gene Guns
alcoholic fermentation
15.1: Fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
alcohols
3.3: Carbon
aldehydes
3.3: Carbon
allergens
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
amines
3.3: Carbon
amino acids
3.9.3: Proteins
5.2: Genes
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
9.6: Protein Catabolism
anabolism
9: Metabolism
anaerobic
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
anaerobic metabolism
9.4: Fermentation
anaerobic respiration
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
analysis
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
animal biotechnology
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
11.3: Cloning
animal cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
animal welfare
16: Bioethics
antibiotic resistance
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
12.2: Transformation
15.4: Gene Guns
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
antibiotics
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
antigen production
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
antisense technology
15.6: Antisense Technology
applied science
2.4: Two Types of Science
archaea
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
artificial intelligence
11.1: Computer Generated Models
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
asexual reproduction
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
Asian citrus psyllid
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
atomic number
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
atoms
3: Chemistry of Life
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
3.2: Chemical Bonds
ATP
3.9.4.1: ATP
9: Metabolism
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
9.6: Protein Catabolism
ATP production
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
ATP synthase
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
ATP yield
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
autoimmune disorders
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
automation
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals

B

Bacillus thuringiensis
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
bacteria
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
12.2: Transformation
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
14.2: Biofuels
15.1: Fermentation
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
bacterial
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
bacterial biotechnology
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
basic science
2.4: Two Types of Science
basic unit of life
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
basicity
3.6: Acids and Bases
beta oxidation
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
bidirectional replication
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
binary fission
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
biochemical mechanisms
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
biochemical pathway
9.1.1: Glycolysis

biochemistry
9: Metabolism
biocompatibility
11.4: Bioprinting
13.4: Nanomedicine
biodiversity
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
bioethics
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
16: Bioethics
16.6: Bioethics in Action
biofuels
14: Environmental Biotechnology
14.2: Biofuels
bioinformatics
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
bioink
11.4: Bioprinting
biolistics
15.4: Gene Guns
biologic medicines
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.2: Biopharmacy
biological
3.5: Water
biological catalysts
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
biological compounds
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
biological macromolecules
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
biological molecules
3.3: Carbon
3.9.3: Proteins
biological pesticide
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
biological processes
2.4: Two Types of Science
3: Chemistry of Life
5.2: Genes
biological systems
11: Systems Biotechnology
3.2: Chemical Bonds
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
biological threats
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
biologists
2.3: The Scientific Method
biology
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
2: Biology as a Science
2.1: Biology as a Science
3: Chemistry of Life
3.9: Macromolecules
biomanufacturing
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
biomaterials
11.4: Bioprinting
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
biomedical research
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
10.1: Transgenic Animals
11.2: Cell Culture
16.6: Bioethics in Action
biopharmaceuticals
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
13.2: Biopharmacy
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
biopharmacy
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.2: Biopharmacy
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
bioprinting
11.4: Bioprinting
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
bioprocess development
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
bioprocessing
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
bioremediation
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
biosafety guidelines
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
biosensors
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
13.4: Nanomedicine
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
biosynthesis
3.9.4.1: ATP
9.6: Protein Catabolism
biotechnology
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
10.1: Transgenic Animals
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
11.1: Computer Generated Models
11.2: Cell Culture
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
12.2: Transformation
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.2: Biopharmacy
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
13.4: Nanomedicine
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
14.2: Biofuels
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
16: Bioethics
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
2: Biology as a Science
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
3.9.4.1: ATP
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
5.1: Genomes
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
Introduction to Biotechnology - Lecture
biotechnology careers
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
biotechnology jobs
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
bioterrorism
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
Bt
15.7: Genetic Pesticides

C

cancer
5.3: Epigenome
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
cancer research
16.6: Bioethics in Action
cancer therapy
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
cancer treatment
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
13.4: Nanomedicine
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
carbohydrates
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
3.9: Macromolecules
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
carbon
3.3: Carbon
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules

carbon dioxide
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
carbon monoxide
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
carboxylic acids
3.3: Carbon
catabolism
9: Metabolism
9.6: Protein Catabolism
cell
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
cell biology
5.2: Genes
cell culture
11.2: Cell Culture
cell cycle
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
cell division
8: Cell Reproduction
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
cell lines
11.2: Cell Culture
cell membranes
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
cell organization
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
cell reproduction
8: Cell Reproduction
cell structure
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
cell theory
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
cell therapies
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
cell therapy
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
cell types
5.3: Epigenome
cells
4.1: Shared Features
cellular
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
cellular differentiation
11.3: Cloning
cellular metabolism
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
cellular processes
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
cellular respiration
3.7: Redox Reactions
9: Metabolism
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.4: Fermentation
cellular work
3.9.4.1: ATP
chemical bonds
3: Chemistry of Life
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
3.2: Chemical Bonds
chemical composition
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
chemical properties
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
chemical reactions
3.9.3: Proteins
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
chemistry
14: Environmental Biotechnology
3: Chemistry of Life
3.5: Water
chemotherapy
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
chloroplasts
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
chromosomal separation
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
chromosome number
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
chromosomes
5.1: Genomes
citric acid cycle
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
citrus greening disease
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
climate change
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
clinical genomics
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
clinical microbiology
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
clinical trials
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
cloning
11.3: Cloning
Clostridium autoethanogenum
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
coding
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
codons
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
coenzyme
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
cofactors
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
comparative genomics
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
competent cells
12.2: Transformation
complementary base pairing
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
compliance
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
compounds
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
computational technology
11.1: Computer Generated Models
confidentiality
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
conservation efforts
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
consumer safety
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
contamination detection
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
controlled release
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
controls
2.3: The Scientific Method
covalent bonds
3.2: Chemical Bonds
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
CRISPR
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
CRISPR gene editing
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
crop biotechnology
15.8: Edible Vaccines
crop improvement
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
15.4: Gene Guns
crop performance
15.6: Antisense Technology
crop plants
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
cytoplasm
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells

D

data collection
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
daughter cells
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
dehydration reactions
3.9: Macromolecules
dehydration synthesis
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
development
8: Cell Reproduction
diagnostic biotechnology
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
diagnostics
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
13.4: Nanomedicine
diffusion
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
Digestion
9.6: Protein Catabolism

digital simulations
11.1: Computer Generated Models
diploid
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
disaccharides
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
disease prevention
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
disease research
11.2: Cell Culture
disease resistance
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
disease treatment
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
2: Biology as a Science
DNA
12.2: Transformation
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
4.1: Shared Features
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
5.1: Genomes
5.2: Genes
5.3: Epigenome
6.1: DNA Replication
7: DNA to Protein
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
DNA extraction
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
DNA ligase
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
DNA methylation
5.3: Epigenome
DNA polymerase
6.1: DNA Replication
DNA replication
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
Dolly the sheep
11.3: Cloning
downstream processing
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
drug delivery
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
13.4: Nanomedicine
drug development
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
11.2: Cell Culture
drug discovery
11.1: Computer Generated Models
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
13.2: Biopharmacy
drug metabolism
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
drug response
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
dynamic modeling
11: Systems Biotechnology

E

early detection
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
ecological impact
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
Ecology
14: Environmental Biotechnology
ecosystem restoration
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
ecosystem studies
2: Biology as a Science
ecosystems
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
eggs
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
electron acceptor
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
electron carriers
3.7: Redox Reactions
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
electron transport chain
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
electronegativity
3.2: Chemical Bonds
electrons
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
elements
3: Chemistry of Life
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
embryonic development
5.3: Epigenome
endoplasmic reticulum
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
energy
9.6: Protein Catabolism
energy conversion
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
energy currency
3.9.4.1: ATP
energy efficiency
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
energy extraction
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
energy metabolism
3.7: Redox Reactions
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
energy production
3.7: Redox Reactions
9: Metabolism
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
energy storage
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
3.9.2: Lipids
engineering
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
14: Environmental Biotechnology
environmental biotechnology
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
14: Environmental Biotechnology
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
environmental challenges
16: Bioethics
environmental consulting
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
environmental limits
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
environmental management
2.4: Two Types of Science
environmental monitoring
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
environmental protection
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
environmental science
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
environmental sustainability
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
enzyme
3.9.3: Proteins
enzyme activity
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
enzyme systems
9.6: Protein Catabolism
enzymes
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
9: Metabolism
epigenetic regulation
5.3: Epigenome
epigenome
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
5.3: Epigenome
erythropoietin
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
Escherichia coli
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
esters
3.3: Carbon
ethanol
14.2: Biofuels
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
ethanol production
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
ethers
3.3: Carbon
ethical
16: Bioethics
ethical behavior
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
ethical practice
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed

ethical questions
11.3: Cloning
ethical responsibility
16.6: Bioethics in Action
ethical standards
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
ethics
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
eukaryotic
4.1: Shared Features
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
5.1: Genomes
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
eukaryotic cell reproduction
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
eukaryotic cells
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
7: DNA to Protein
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
evidence
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
evolution
5.2: Genes
8: Cell Reproduction
evolutionary success
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
experimentation
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
2.3: The Scientific Method
expression vectors
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
Exxon Valdez
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action

F

facilitated diffusion
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
FADH2
3.7: Redox Reactions
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
fatty acids
3.9.2: Lipids
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
fermentation
14.2: Biofuels
15.1: Fermentation
9: Metabolism
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
fertilization
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
Flavr Savr tomato
15.6: Antisense Technology
flux balance analysis
11: Systems Biotechnology
food authenticity
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
food biotechnology
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
15.1: Fermentation
food fraud
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
food preservation
15.1: Fermentation
food processing
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
food production
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
16: Bioethics
food quality
15.6: Antisense Technology
food safety
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
2: Biology as a Science
Food Security
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
food waste
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
foodborne pathogens
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
foreign DNA
15.4: Gene Guns
formulation
13.2: Biopharmacy
functional groups
3.3: Carbon
fusion proteins
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems

G

gametes
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
gas fermentation
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
gene
5.1: Genomes
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
gene cloning
11.3: Cloning
gene delivery
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
gene editing
10.1: Transgenic Animals
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
16: Bioethics
gene expression
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
15.6: Antisense Technology
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
5.1: Genomes
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
5.2.2: Gene Expression
5.3: Epigenome
7: DNA to Protein
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
gene function
10.1: Transgenic Animals
gene guns
15.4: Gene Guns
gene organization
7: DNA to Protein
gene regulation
5.2.2: Gene Expression
gene silencing
15.6: Antisense Technology
gene structure
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
gene therapies
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
gene therapy
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
gene transfer
15.4: Gene Guns
genes
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
5.2: Genes
genetic code
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
genetic consistency
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
genetic disorders
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
genetic diversity
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
genetic engineering
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
14.2: Biofuels
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
15.6: Antisense Technology
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
15.8: Edible Vaccines
2: Biology as a Science
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
genetic flexibility
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
genetic information
16: Bioethics
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
8: Cell Reproduction
genetic manipulation
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems

genetic material
10.1: Transgenic Animals
12.2: Transformation
genetic modification
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
10.1: Transgenic Animals
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
genetic pesticides
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
genetic privacy
16.6: Bioethics in Action
genetic stability
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
genetic testing
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
genetic variation
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
genetically modified crops
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
genetically modified organism
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
genetically modified organisms
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
genetically modified plants
15.8: Edible Vaccines
genetics
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
11.3: Cloning
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
5.1: Genomes
5.2: Genes
genome
5.1: Genomes
5.3: Epigenome
genome sequencing
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
genomes
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
genomic sequencing
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
genomic variation
5.1: Genomes
genomics
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
global food security
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
glucose
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
glucose breakdown
9.4: Fermentation
glycolysis
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
glycosidic bond
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
GMO
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
GMOs
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
Golden Rice
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
Golgi apparatus
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
Good Manufacturing Practices
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
growth
4.1: Shared Features
8: Cell Reproduction
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis

H

haploid
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
health
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
healthcare
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
2: Biology as a Science
2.4: Two Types of Science
healthcare providers
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
healthy citrus trees
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
HeLa cells
16.6: Bioethics in Action
helicase
6.1: DNA Replication
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
hematopoietic stem cells
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
Henrietta Lacks
16.6: Bioethics in Action
herbicide resistance
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
herbicide tolerance
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
heredity
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
5.2: Genes
histone modification
5.3: Epigenome
holoenzyme
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
homeostasis
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
4.1: Shared Features
host cells
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
human antibodies
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
human growth hormone
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
human health
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
16: Bioethics
hydration reactions
3.9: Macromolecules
hydrochloric acid
3.6: Acids and Bases
hydrogen
14.2: Biofuels
hydrogen bonds
3.2: Chemical Bonds
3.5: Water
hydrogen ions
3.6: Acids and Bases
hydrophobic
3.9.2: Lipids
hypothesis
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.3: The Scientific Method

I

imaging techniques
13.4: Nanomedicine
immortal cell line
16.6: Bioethics in Action
immortalized cells
11.2: Cell Culture
immune cells
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
immune response
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
immune system
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
immunology
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
immunotherapy
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
inducible operons
5.2.2: Gene Expression
industrial bioreactors
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
industrial effluents
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
industrial enzyme production
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
industrial fermentation
15.1: Fermentation
infectious diseases
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
informed consent
16.6: Bioethics in Action
inherited disorders
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
inherited traits
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome

inhibition
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
inorganic compounds
3: Chemistry of Life
inorganic molecules
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
inquiry
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
insect control
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
insect resistance
15.4: Gene Guns
insecticidal protein
15.7: Genetic Pesticides
insulin
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
ionic bonds
3.2: Chemical Bonds

K

ketones
3.3: Carbon
Keytruda
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
knowledge expansion
2.4: Two Types of Science

L

laboratory methods
12.2: Transformation
laboratory safety
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
lactic acid
15.1: Fermentation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
lactic acid fermentation
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
lagging strand
6.1: DNA Replication
leading strand
6.1: DNA Replication
life
3.5: Water
ligase
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
lipid catabolism
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
lipids
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
3.9: Macromolecules
3.9.2: Lipids
liposomes
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
litmus paper
3.6: Acids and Bases
livestock enhancement
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
living cells
11.4: Bioprinting
living organisms
8: Cell Reproduction
logical reasoning
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
lysosomes
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells

M

machine learning
11: Systems Biotechnology
macromolecules
3.9: Macromolecules
3.9.2: Lipids
maintenance
8: Cell Reproduction
maize
15.4: Gene Guns
manufacturing
13.2: Biopharmacy
marine ecology
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
matter
3: Chemistry of Life
medical applications
2: Biology as a Science
medical biotechnology
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
medical ethics
16.6: Bioethics in Action
medical imaging
11.4: Bioprinting
medical tests
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
medicine
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
5.2: Genes
meiosis
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
melanoma
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
membrane
4.1: Shared Features
membrane structure
3.9.2: Lipids
messenger RNA
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
metabolic demands
3.9.4.1: ATP
metabolic diversity
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
metabolic engineering
11: Systems Biotechnology
metabolic pathways
3.7: Redox Reactions
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.6: Protein Catabolism
metabolic process
9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation
metabolism
3.5: Water
4.1: Shared Features
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
9: Metabolism
microbial enzymes
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
microbial fermentation
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
microbial genomics
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
microbial monitoring
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
microbial physiology
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
microbial proteins
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
microbiology
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
14: Environmental Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
microorganisms
12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP)
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
15.1: Fermentation
Mitochondria
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
9.1: Aerobic Respiration
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
mitochondrial membrane
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
mitosis
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
model diseases
10.1: Transgenic Animals
model organisms
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
Moderna
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
molecular biology
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
14: Environmental Biotechnology
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
molecular cloning
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
molecular detection
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
molecular farming
15.8: Edible Vaccines
molecular modeling
11.1: Computer Generated Models
molecular structure
3.2: Chemical Bonds
molecular techniques
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats

molecules
3: Chemistry of Life
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
3.5: Water
monoclonal antibodies
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
monomers
3.9: Macromolecules
monosaccharides
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
mRNA
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
mRNA vaccine
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
MRSA
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
multicellular organisms
8: Cell Reproduction
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
mutations
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability

N

NAD
9.4: Fermentation
NAD+
3.7: Redox Reactions
9.1.1: Glycolysis
NADH
3.7: Redox Reactions
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
nanomedicine
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.4: Nanomedicine
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
natural world
2.4: Two Types of Science
neutrons
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
new antibiotics
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
nitrogenous bases
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
nonpolar molecules
3.2: Chemical Bonds
nucleic acids
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
3.9: Macromolecules
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
nucleotides
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
6.1: DNA Replication
nucleus
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
4.3: Eukaryotic Plant Cells
nutrients
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
nutritional content
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
nutritional enhancement
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
nutritional value
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
15.1: Fermentation

O

observation
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
2.3: The Scientific Method
offspring
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
oil cleanup
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
oil degradation
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
oil spill
14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action
operon
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
operons
5.2.2: Gene Expression
organic compounds
3: Chemistry of Life
organic matter
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
organic molecules
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
osmosis
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
oxidation
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
oxidation reduction
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
oxidative phosphorylation
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
9.5: Lipid Catabolism
oxidative reduction
3.7: Redox Reactions

P

passive transport
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
pathogen identification
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
patient privacy
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
patient safety
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
PCR
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
peptide bond
3.9.3: Proteins
personalized cancer treatment
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
personalized medicine
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
personalized therapy
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
pest resistance
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
pH
3.6: Acids and Bases
pH scale
3.6: Acids and Bases
pharmaceutical compounds
15.8: Edible Vaccines
pharmaceutical production
10.1: Transgenic Animals
pharmaceutical science
13.2: Biopharmacy
pharmaceuticals
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
pharmacogenomics
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
pharmacology
13.2: Biopharmacy
Phase 2 clinical trial
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
phenotype
12.2: Transformation
phospholipids
3.9.2: Lipids
phosphorylation
3.9.4.1: ATP
physiology
10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology
plant biotechnology
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
15.4: Gene Guns
15.6: Antisense Technology
15.8: Edible Vaccines
plant cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
plant genetics
15.8: Edible Vaccines
plant growth
2.3: The Scientific Method
plant immunity
15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action
Plant Science
15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology
Plants
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation
plasma
4.1: Shared Features
plasma membrane
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
polar molecules
3.2: Chemical Bonds
polarity
3.5: Water
pollution
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
pollution reduction
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology

polycistronic mRNA
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
polymerase
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
polymerase chain reaction
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
polymers
3.9: Macromolecules
polysaccharides
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
population growth
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
precision medicine
13.3: Pharmacogenomics
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
prediction
2.3: The Scientific Method
predictive modeling
11.1: Computer Generated Models
primary cells
11.2: Cell Culture
problem solving
2.4: Two Types of Science
product development
12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology
product quality
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
production processes
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
professional standards
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
prokaryotes
9.3: Anaerobic Respiration
prokaryotic
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
4.1: Shared Features
5.1: Genomes
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
prokaryotic cells
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
7: DNA to Protein
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
9.1.1: Glycolysis
9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences
prokaryotic gene regulation
5.2.2: Gene Expression
prokaryotic reproduction
8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction
promoter
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
5.2.2: Gene Expression
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
promoters
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
properties
3.5: Water
protein
5.2: Genes
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
9.6: Protein Catabolism
protein complexes
9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain
protein denaturation
3.9.3: Proteins
protein drugs
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
protein expression
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
protein folding
3.9.3: Proteins
protein production
12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
protein structure
3.9.3: Proteins
protein synthesis
3.9.3: Proteins
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
9.6: Protein Catabolism
proteins
3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules
3.9: Macromolecules
3.9.3: Proteins
4.1: Shared Features
7: DNA to Protein
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
proteomics
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
proton gradient
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
proton motive force
9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation
protons
3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds
public health
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement
public policy
16: Bioethics
purification
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
pyruvate
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
9.4: Fermentation
9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation

Q

quality assurance
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals
quality control
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
13.2: Biopharmacy
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
quantitative models
11: Systems Biotechnology

R

rapid reproduction
12: Bacteria in Biotechnology
reasoning
2.1: Biology as a Science
recombinant DNA
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
recombinant DNA technology
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
recombinant plasmids
12.2: Transformation
recombinant vaccines
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
redox reactions
3.7: Redox Reactions
9: Metabolism
regenerative medicine
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology
regulation
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability
regulations
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
regulatory standards
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
renewable energy
14: Environmental Biotechnology
14.2: Biofuels
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
renewable fuels
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
renewable products
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
repair
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
replication
6.1: DNA Replication
replication fork
6.1: DNA Replication
repressible operons
5.2.2: Gene Expression
reproduction
8: Cell Reproduction
reproductive cloning
11.3: Cloning
research
2.1: Biology as a Science
respiration
9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle
ribosomes
4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation

RNA
3.9.4: Nucleic Acids
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
7: DNA to Protein
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
RNA interference
15.6: Antisense Technology
RNA polymerase
5.2.2: Gene Expression
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
RNA primer
6.1: DNA Replication
RNA processing
7: DNA to Protein
robotics
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
Roundup Ready soybeans
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods

S

safety
16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards
safety protocols
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
safety standards
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
safety testing
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
Salmonella
15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety
saturated fatty acids
3.9.2: Lipids
science
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science
scientific integrity
16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed
scientific method
2.1: Biology as a Science
2.3: The Scientific Method
scientific questions
11.3: Cloning
scientific research
2.4: Two Types of Science
selective permeability
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
semiconservative replication
6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell
sewage treatment
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
sexual reproduction
8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
sigma factor
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
sodium hydroxide
3.6: Acids and Bases
solvent
3.5: Water
somatic cells
8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis
sperm
8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis
splicing
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
stability
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
Staphylococcus aureus
11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action
4.4: Prokaryotic Cells
starch
3.9.1: Carbohydrates
stem cells
11.2: Cell Culture
Stéphane Bancel
13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action
strong acids
3.6: Acids and Bases
structure and function
4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells
structures
4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells
substrate specificity
3.9.3.1: Enzymes
sustainability
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
2: Biology as a Science
sustainable alternatives
14.2: Biofuels
sustainable aviation fuel
12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action
sustainable farming
15: Agricultural Biotechnology
sustainable technologies
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
synthetic
12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology
synthetic biology
11: Systems Biotechnology
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
14.2: Biofuels
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
systems biology
11: Systems Biotechnology
11.1: Computer Generated Models
systems biotechnology
11: Systems Biotechnology
11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology

T

Taq DNA polymerase
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
targeted delivery
13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability
targeted drug delivery
13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology
targeted therapy
13.4: Nanomedicine
technology
2.4: Two Types of Science
testing hypothesis
2.3: The Scientific Method
theories
2.1: Biology as a Science
therapeutic antibodies
15.8: Edible Vaccines
therapeutic cloning
11.3: Cloning
therapeutic genes
13.1.3: Gene Therapies
therapeutic proteins
13: Medical Biotechnology
13.1: Biopharmaceuticals
13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins
5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome
therapeutic treatments
10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals
thermophilic bacteria
12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools
tissue culture
11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology
tissue engineering
11.2: Cell Culture
11.4: Bioprinting
tissue repair
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
topoisomerase
6.1: DNA Replication
traceability
15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology
transcription
5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization
7: DNA to Protein
7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
transcription factors
5.2.2: Gene Expression
7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription
transcriptional regulation
5.2.2: Gene Expression
transfer RNA
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
transformation
12.2: Transformation
transgenic animals
10.1: Transgenic Animals
transgenic plants
15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods
translation
7: DNA to Protein
7.3: Eukaryotic Translation
7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation
transparent reporting
16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards
transport
3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
treatment options
13.1.4: Cell Therapies
treatments
16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential
triglycerides
3.9.2: Lipids
9.5: Lipid Catabolism

U

unsaturated fatty acids
3.9.2: Lipids

upstream processing
13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals

V

vaccine design
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
vaccine production
15.8: Edible Vaccines
vaccine safety
13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines
vaccines
1: Introduction to Biotechnology
variables
2.3: The Scientific Method
virtual clinical trials
11.1: Computer Generated Models
vitamin A deficiency
15.2: Nutritional Enhancement

W

waste management
14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy
wastewater treatment
14: Environmental Biotechnology
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
water
3.5: Water
water quality analysis
14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology
water scarcity
14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology
weak acids
3.6: Acids and Bases

Y

yeast
15.1: Fermentation

This page titled Index is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

This page titled Glossary is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: Introduction to Biotechnology - Lecture

Webpages: 140

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC 4.0: 100% (140 pages)

By Page

- Introduction to Biotechnology - Lecture - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 1: Introduction to Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 2: Biology as a Science - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 2.1: Biology as a Science - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 2.2: Curiosity, Reasoning, and the Practice of Science - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 2.3: The Scientific Method - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 2.4: Two Types of Science - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 3: Chemistry of Life - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.1: Atoms, Elements and Compounds - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.2: Chemical Bonds - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.3: Carbon - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.4: Organic and Inorganic Molecules - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.5: Water - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.6: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.7: Redox Reactions - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 3.9: Macromolecules - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 3.9.1: Carbohydrates - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 3.9.2: Lipids - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 3.9.3: Proteins - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
        - 3.9.3.1: Enzymes - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 3.9.4: Nucleic Acids - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
        - 3.9.4.1: ATP - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 4: Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 4.1: Shared Features - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 4.2: Eukaryotic Animal Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 4.3: Eukaroytic Plant Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 4.4: Prokaryotic Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 4.5: Simalarities and Differences - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 5: Genes, Genomes and the Epigenome - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 5.1: Genomes - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 5.2: Genes - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 5.2.1: Gene Structure and Organization - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 5.2.2: Gene Expression - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 5.3: Epigenome - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 6: DNA Replication - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 6.1: DNA Replication - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 6.2: DNA Replication in Prokaryotic vs. Eukaryotic Cell - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 7: DNA to Protein - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.1: Prokaryotic Transcription - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.2: Eukatroyotc Transcription - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.3: Eukaryotic Translation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.4: Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Translation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.5: Transcription Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 7.6: Translation Differences between Eukaryotic and Prokaryotic Cells - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 8: Cell Reproduction - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 8.1: Prokaryotic Cell Reproduction - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 8.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 8.2.1: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Mitosis - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 8.2.2: Eukaryotic Cell Reproduction- Meiosis - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 8.3: Cell Division Regulation and Genetic Stability - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 9: Metabolism - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - 9.1: Aerobic Respiration - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 9.1.1: Glycolysis - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
      - 9.1.2: Oxidation of Pyruvate and the Citric Acid Cycle - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

- 9.1.3: Electron Transport Chain - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.1.4: Oxidative Phosphorylation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.1.5: Aerobic Respiration in Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes- Similarities and Differences - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.2: Cellular Energy - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.3: Anaerobic Respiration - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.4: Fermentation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 9.4.1: Prokaryotic Fermntation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 9.4.2: Eukaryotic Fermentation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.5: Lipid Catabolism - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.6: Protein Catabolism - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 9.7: Respiration Summary - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

10: Common Animal Models in Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 10.1: Transgenic Animals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 10.2: Producing Human Antibodies in Animals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

11: Systems Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.1: Computer Generated Models - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.2: Cell Culture - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.3: Cloning - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.4: Bioprinting - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.5: BioBricks - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.6: The Future of Systems Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.7: Careers in Systems Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 11.8: Systems Biotechnology in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

12: Bacteria in Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.1: Bacterial enzymes as Tools - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.2: Transformation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.3: Bacterial Protein Expression and Reporter Systems - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.4: Microbial Genome Program (MGP) - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.5: Detection and Surveillance of Biological Threats - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.6: The Future of Bacterial Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.7: Careers in Bacterial Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 12.8: Bacterial Biotechnology in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

13: Medical Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.1: Biopharmaceuticals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.1.1: Therapeutic Proteins - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.1.2: Recombinant Vaccines - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.1.3: Gene Therapies - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.1.4: Cell Therapies - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.2: Biopharmacy - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.2.1: Production of Biopharmaceuticals - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 13.2.2: Drug Delivery and Stability - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.3: Pharmacogenomics - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.4: Nanomedicine - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.5: The Future of Medical Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.6: Careers in Medical Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 13.7: Medical Biotechnology in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

14: Environmental Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 14.1: Wastewater Treatment and Renewable Energy - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 14.2: Biofuels - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 14.3: The Future of Environmental Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 14.4: Careers in Environmental Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 14.5: Environmental Biotechnology in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

15: Agricultural Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.1: Fermentation - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.2: Nutritional Enhancement - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.3: Biotechnology Applications in Food Safety - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.4: Gene Guns - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.5: Genetically Modified Crops and Foods - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.6: Antisense Technology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.7: Genetic Pesticides - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.8: Edible Vaccines - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.9: The Future of Agricultural Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.10: Careers in Agriculture Biotechnology - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 15.11: Agricultural Biotechnology in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

16: Bioethics - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.1: Ethics, Regulation, and Professional Standards - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.2: Why Ethical Practice Is Essential - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.3: How Biotechnologists Uphold Ethical Standards - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.4: What Happens When Ethics Are Not Followed - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.5: Careers in Bioethics - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 16.6: Bioethics in Action - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

17: About this Book - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 17.1: About the Author - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 17.2: How to Use this Book - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- 17.3: References and Disclosures - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

Back Matter - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- Index - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- Glossary - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

- Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
- Detailed Licensing (1) - *CC BY-NC 4.0*

This page titled Introduction to Biotechnology - Lecture is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Emalee MacKenzie.

This page titled Detailed Licensing (1) is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.